IRON CORROSION

LOUIS E. ANDÉS

IRON CORROSION

ANTI-FOULING

AND

ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS

BY

LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS

AUTHOR OF "ANIMAL FATS AND OILS," "VEGETABLE FATS AND OILS," ETC.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN BY

CHARLES SALTER

The Publishers wish it to be distinctly understood that this series of books is supplied on such terms as prohibit their being sold below the published price.

LONDON
SCOTT, GREENWOOD AND CO.
Publishers of "The Oil and Colourman's Journal"
19 LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
1900

IRON CORROSION

ANTI-FOULING

AND

ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS

BY

LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS

AUTHOR OF "ANIMAL FATS AND OILS," "VEGETABLE FATS AND OILS," ETC.

TRANSLATED FROM THE GERMAN BY

CHARLES SALTER

WITH SIXTY-TWO ILLUSTRATIONS

LONDON
SCOTT, GREENWOOD AND CO.
Publishers of "The Oil and Colourman's Journal"
19 LUDGATE HILL, E.C.
1900

ABERDEEN UNIVERSITY PRESS

PREFACE.

SINCE the great extension that has taken place in the employment of iron for all structural purposes, and in particular as the exclusive material for bridges over which enormous loads have to be transported in a very short space of time, increased attention has been bestowed on the preservation of these structures, and the more so because of the great tendency to oxidise exhibited by this metal under the influence of air, moisture and fluctuations of temperature. The iron oxide, "rust," formed by combination with oxygen assisted by the conjoint action of carbon dioxide and water, is a very dangerous as well as an unwelcome enemy to all iron structures; since, where it has once gained a footing, it is difficult if not impossible of eradication, and its formation in places inaccessible to periodical examination may, by the corrosion of screws and rivets, readily endanger the safety and strength of the structure. Owing to the desirability of suitably preserving ironwork from corrosion, by reducing the formation of rust to a minimum, and thereby obviating the danger aforesaid, there has appeared—practice having determined that the best protection is afforded by oil paint—a large number of *soi-disant* positively infallible anti-corrosive paints claiming to ensure illimitable durability, though the experience gained by their use in many critical instances has been the reverse of favourable. The same fate has attended the use of ordinary oil paints, because, despite the teachings of experience, it has been the custom to look upon painting—especially laying on the first coat—as a merely formal matter, and to attempt to "economise," both in material and workmanship, by buying the cheapest paint and entrusting the work to day labourers.

The International Congress for the unification of methods of testing building and other structural materials has been the means of again raising the question of iron corrosion, and afforded the author, who had long been collecting data on the subject, an opportunity of occupying himself thoroughly with the question.

The illustrations of the rusting of iron given in the following pages were prepared in the course of a series of personal experiments on the formation of rust, the results of which are now embodied with the experience gained in reference to anti-corrosive paints, so that I may hope to have presented in the present work a fresh contribution towards the solution of this important problem.

LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

IRON-CORROSION.

IRON RUST AND ITS FORMATION.

LIKE all the inorganic and organic materials employed by man, the metals iron, lead, copper, zinc, etc., as well as the noble metals gold and silver, so extensively used in the industrial arts, are subjected to atmospheric influences in consequence of which the surface of the various utensils into which these metals are formed undergoes alteration. The least susceptible to such influences are gold, silver and platinum, these metals merely becoming dimmed on the surface and being restored to their pristine brightness when simply rubbed over thoroughly with a leather or cloth, provided no other agency has been at work, *e.g.*, sulphur or sulphuretted hydrogen in the case of silver. On the other hand the baser metals such as iron, copper, lead, zinc, etc., under the influence of atmospheric oxygen, carbonic acid and other agencies, acquire a superficial coating, resulting from the combination of the metal with oxygen or carbonic acid, which imparts a different appearance to the metal, which is generally thereby rendered lustreless and dull. The highly lustrous metal lead clothes itself with a dull grey sheet of oxide; zinc is covered with a dim grey film. Copper turns reddish brown and afterwards green, becoming coated with the green mould—*ærugo nobilis, patina*—which so greatly distinguishes ancient monuments and memorials from those of modern origin. This mould was formed by the action of a purer atmosphere—unimpregnated with the fumes of coal—and, like the thin film of oxide on lead and zinc, constitutes a protective coating against the further encroachments of the air, since it neither increases in extent underneath nor develops further externally. Objects covered with this layer of oxide will withstand for centuries the onslaughts of rain, snow and changes of temperature, and they are also fairly insusceptible to the action of weak acids.

On the other hand, iron, the metal most extensively used at the present day—because most plentifully met with—is not endowed with this advantageous property of the other metals. If a bright piece of iron be exposed for even only a few minutes to the action of water and the latter be then allowed to evaporate at a moderate temperature, the clean metal becomes covered with a more or less thick, coherent red coating, and although this can be easily rubbed off again when dry, it does not leave the surface of the iron in its original condition. Under the conjoint agency of the atmosphere and the water a combination of iron and oxygen—iron rust—has been formed and the iron is "rusted". This oxidation occurs on bright surfaces of the metal, such as polished iron or steel, as well as on cast iron or sheet iron; it can be observed on all iron objects, large or small, rough or smooth, and will inevitably be produced unless the iron be protected by a suitable covering.

Moreover rust is formed not only on iron articles exposed to the influence of atmospheric air and moisture, but also on iron that is set in brickwork, or under water, or in the ground and so forth; in fact it goes on everywhere and is the result of various causes, though water (moisture) is always the principal rust-forming agency. Iron girders enclosed or embedded in or between layers of brickwork or masonry, iron structures or pipes laid underground or in water, all rust, and under certain circumstances the layers of rust may attain considerable proportions. Everything made of iron or steel is liable to oxidation. Keys carried in the pocket and kept bright by mutual friction will get rusty when exposed to moisture, a damp hand being often sufficient cause; pocket knives become oxidised in the pocket, and table knives will do the same if not cleaned and polished regularly. Nails driven into boxes or other woodwork are rusted by the moisture in the wood; in fact all the numerous tools daily employed by man get rusty, whether in use or lying by, and thereby lose both in outward appearance and strength. Iron stove pipes and flues are speedily rusted by the action of gaseous acids formed during the combustion of fuel, and after prolonged use are gradually converted entirely into layers of rust, so that they either fall to pieces of their own accord or can be broken with ease.

Wherever rust has once formed, its further occurrence is a natural sequence, and its prevention becomes impossible by any known means unless the affected places are perfectly freed from all traces of the oxide. So far from being a solid, coherent mass, rust is loose and porous, absorbing and persistently retaining water, and, with the conjunction of atmospheric air, assists in the conversion of such portions of the iron as have hitherto remained intact. This is the reason why sheet iron, under conditions favouring rust formation, is finally converted entirely into rust, and though retaining its form as a pipe, no longer consists of iron but of a compound which breaks in pieces under very slight pressure. To this continuous development of rust is also due the complete corrosion of rivets and screws in iron structures, and the circumstance that iron pipes of several millimetres in thickness laid in the earth are entirely converted into rust and break in pieces or crumble away when brought to the daylight again.

The thicker the substance of the iron, the longer it will take for the rust to corrode it sufficiently to impair the strength of the article. For example, if a piece of ordinary sheet iron 1 mm. ($\frac{1}{25}$ in.), and a bar of cast iron 5 to 6 mm. (about $\frac{1}{5}$ in.) be left to rust under identical conditions, the former will be entirely converted into oxide long before any diminution of strength can be detected in the cast iron. The latter will have acquired a thick coating of rust but will still exhibit a considerable core of metal, so that probably the usefulness of the bar is *apparently* undiminished, whereas as a matter of fact it has really suffered depreciation; since a mass of iron originally 5 to 6 mm. thick, but now covered on each side with a 1 mm. layer of rust, having lost altogether 2 mm. of its substance, cannot possibly have retained its primary strength. Moreover, in addition to attacking the surface, the rust may also, as the result of irregularities in the material, have penetrated, in places, right through the mass of the metal, and consequently have diminished its powers of resistance considerably. Hence in the case of cast iron the progress of rusting is apparently more gradual than in the thinner sheet metal, because its extent does not come into evidence so prominently as in the latter.

Rust is everywhere formed where moisture and atmospheric air come into action; it is visible on the shafting, machinery, etc., in large workshops, and on water wheels that are not continually under water. It develops on iron firearms when carried during wet or merely damp weather; and also in the interior of the barrel when the weapon is discharged, in consequence of the hygroscopicity of the residual compounds left behind therein from the combustion of the powder. All hygroscopic salts, especially sodium chloride (common salt) and the chlorides of potassium, magnesium and ammonium, facilitate the formation of rust when acting in conjunction with atmospheric air; whereas caustic alkalis when dissolved in water have no injurious effect on iron so long as it remains immersed in the solution. If, however, pieces of iron be stored above such liquid alkalis, or partly immersed therein, leaving one end projecting, then rust will make its appearance in quantity. Dilute acids are the most active assistants in the development of rust, and even such weak organic acids as malic acid are capable of rusting iron or steel in a very short time. Pieces of iron embedded in the earth soon become rusted, the rapidity of the operation being in direct ratio to the amount of rust-favouring constituents therein present. Thus, iron (gas and water) pipes laid below the level of the streets in towns, and especially when the pavement consists of a permeable material—such, for example, as granite setts embedded in sand—will rust much earlier than if situated in arable soil, because they are exposed to the action of the salts contained in the urine of horses and in street mud. Iron in the neighbourhood of manure heaps, or stall-drainage pits, rusts sooner than that in or upon ordinary earth, since the salts and volatile ammonia formed in such deposits contribute to the formation of rust. Whether, as has been assumed, iron embedded in earth becomes covered with a protective coating of iron silicate or carbonate has not yet been definitely proved, and it is evident that the formation of such compounds would depend on the character of the soil, *i.e.*, there must exist ready-formed a sufficiency of silicates or carbonates in a form suitable for their combination with the metal before such combination could take place.

We have now to consider as *rust formers*—

1. Atmospheric air.
2. Water—in the form of rain, snow, water of condensation (*e.g.*, dew), and mere moisture, the latter implying quantities so minute that they are evaporated as soon as deposited on the metal.
3. All organic and inorganic acids, even the weakest.
4. All chlorine compounds of the metals, alkalis and alkaline earths, and all salts rich in, or absorptive of, water.

The process of rust formation has hitherto received but slight attention from the scientific side; at least there is little to be found on the subject in accessible literary sources of information. In practice, however, the conditions—or rather influences—under which rust is developed are well known, and sufficient knowledge of the progress of rust on a surface once attacked thereby has been acquired for the justification of the axiom that when rust has attained a certain degree of development the arrest of its further progress becomes impossible, and all (known) means, of whatever kind, are unavailing.

It is generally assumed that—apart from the chemical agents, acids and salts—water and oxygen are the primary causes of rust, a certain contributory influence being, however, ascribed to atmospheric carbon dioxide (carbonic acid). Below are given a few of the opinions recently expressed on the subject of rust formation.

Spennrath says with regard to rust and its origin:—

"Chemistry shows us that rust is a hydrated oxide of iron, a compound of the metal iron with oxygen and water, 100 parts of dry iron rust containing 52·3 of iron, 22·4 of oxygen, and 25·7 grains of water. The water is here—and this should be carefully noted—in a state of chemical combination, and not present as a mere mechanical adjunct in the form of moisture. It is therefore by no means contradictory to speak of *dry* iron rust as containing 25 per cent. of *water*. Iron rust being, then, a compound of iron, oxygen and water, it follows that iron can rust only when and where it is brought into contact with oxygen and water, and that if one of these two essentials is lacking, the formation of rust becomes impossible, and the iron will remain unattacked. Consequently, iron exposed to the air cannot rust in the absence of water, and iron immersed in water must remain free from rust if access of oxygen is debarred. These statements are proved by facts. Thus, for example, if iron or steel articles are stored over calcium chloride in an enclosed space, they will remain free from rust for an indefinite period, owing to the absorption, by the calcium chloride, of every trace of water in the air of the chamber, and the incapacity of oxygen by itself to attack iron at the ordinary temperature. In this manner a convenient method of protecting surgical or other fine steel instruments from rust is afforded, in that a vessel—preferably of glass—closed by an air-tight lid is employed, on the bottom of which is strewn a layer of calcium chloride, whilst the instruments, etc., to be stored are placed on a perforated false bottom made of cardboard or wood. It is advisable to dip the instruments in strong alcohol, to free them from all adherent traces of moisture, before putting them into the case.

"Steam boilers, when out of use, can be prevented from rusting on the inside by placing trays, containing calcium chloride, in the interior, and then making the boiler air-tight. In this case also the calcium chloride abstracts the moisture from the air, and renders the latter incapable of forming rust.

"If iron be laid in ordinary spring, well, or rain water, it soon gets rusty. If, however, the water has been previously boiled for some time and allowed to cool with exclusion of air, then no rusting occurs, the oxygen present in the water having, like any other gas, been driven off during the boiling, leaving the water free from air; and, provided care be taken to prevent any subsequent absorption of oxygen by the water, iron stored therein will keep free from rust. This explains why boilers do not rust on the inside while in use, the continuous boiling of the water driving out the oxygen present in solution. Since, however, the feed water is continually introducing fresh quantities of air into the boiler, it follows that the steam chest of the boiler always contains small quantities of oxygen in association with the steam, and hence it comes that rust may form at the water line.

The upper layer of water, being in direct contact with the recently liberated oxygen, tends to re-dissolve the same, and thereby to act as a rust former. It will also be noticed that the iron hot-water pipes of heating installations do not rust internally, the water circulating through the pipes having been freed from air and oxygen by the continuous application of heat.

"The *rust-forming agency is a solution of oxygen in water.* This constitutes the whole secret of the production of rust. 1,000 parts of water at a temperature of 0° C. can take up 49 parts of oxygen gas into solution; but as the temperature rises, the solvent power of the water for this gas, as for all others, decreases, so that at 10° C. only 38 parts are dissolved per $^{\circ}/_{\circ\circ}$; at 21° C. only 31 parts; at 50° C. only 21 parts, and so on.

"The effective rust-producing energy of the water increases in direct ratio with the amount of oxygen present in solution. Hence it follows that, other conditions being equal, cold water must be more active than hot in this respect; and this also explains a circumstance that probably every one has observed, *viz.*, that iron rusts much more strongly when the contact with water is only intermittent than in cases of permanent immersion. A piece of iron, one end of which dips into fluctuating water, leaving the other projecting into the air, will exhibit the most pronounced area of rust at the part between the extremes of the alteration in the water level. Moreover a short shower of rain causes a greater formation of rust on iron than would a whole day's complete immersion in water.

"The elucidation of these phenomena is very simple. The thin stratum of water left adherent when iron is wetted is in constant contact with the air and is therefore always saturated with oxygen, that consumed in the formation of rust being immediately replaced from the atmosphere. On the other hand deeper layers of water do not become saturated with oxygen, and the loss cannot be so quickly made good; whereas raindrops, again, have had the opportunity to absorb, in their fall, the maximum quantity of air they can take up, and consequently when they come in contact with iron constitute actually a saturated solution of oxygen.

"Iron articles stored in a room regarded as 'dry,' in the ordinary sense, do not rust. If, however, a closed, air-tight case with a little water in the bottom be placed in such a room, and the iron articles be placed in the case without coming into contact with the water, they will be found to have rusted considerably within a very short time.

"This difference in behaviour is highly instructive, though easy of explanation. The air of a living- or work room, like everywhere else, contains water. Here, however, the water is in the gaseous form of water vapour, which is incapable of forming rust even when mixed with oxygen. In the closed case, on the other hand, the air becomes rapidly saturated with water vapour, taking up as much as it can hold at the prevailing temperature; consequently, on the slightest reduction of the temperature a deposition of liquid water takes place on the walls of the case and on the iron articles contained therein, and as this water at the same time absorbs oxygen from the surrounding air the possibility and obligation of the formation of rust is attained.

"Generally the air of a room is in a condition far removed from saturation with water vapour; consequently a considerable fall in temperature would be necessary for attaining the dew-point of such air, with its concomitant deposition of liquid moisture, and so long as this point is not reached the formation of rust is impossible.

"The opinion extensively prevails that the carbon dioxide present in the air plays an active part in the formation of rust, and it has even been asserted that the action of this oxide is an essential factor in the process. As a matter of fact this view is erroneous. In the first place, gaseous carbon dioxide is of itself quite inert towards iron. Water containing the gas in solution is, however, capable of attacking iron, forming iron carbonate which decomposes—as may have been noticed many times in the case of ferruginous waters—in contact with air, ferric hydrate, *i.e.*, rust, being then formed. That carbon dioxide is not essential to the formation of rust is evidenced by the fact that iron plates stored, in closed vessels, above the surface of water containing in solution caustic potash, caustic soda, or slaked lime, exhibit in every case extensive incrustations of rust. As solutions of the aforesaid caustic alkalis, *e.g.*, caustic potash, are endowed with a great affinity for carbon dioxide, it is therefore clear that the air in such vessels must very soon be entirely freed from that gas.

"A behaviour similar to that of an aqueous solution of carbon dioxide, but generally more strongly developed, is exhibited by other dilute acids in presence of iron. So long as the metal remains in the dilute acid liquid it will be dissolved thereby and the corresponding iron salt will continue to be formed; but when the oxygen of the air is concurrently admitted the case is altered. If metallic iron be moistened with any dilute acid and then exposed to the air a thick coating of rust will very quickly form; and this explains why it is necessary, in cleaning rusty iron by the aid of dilute sulphuric acid, to place the iron in lime water immediately on removing it from the acid bath, in order to prevent an immediate renewal of the rusting. The action of the lime water is to neutralise the acid and render it inert. Moreover, the solutions of various salts, especially the chlorine compounds, exert a rusting influence similar to that of the dilute acids. Solutions of common salt, sal ammoniac, magnesium chloride, etc., in particular, are regarded as highly active rust formers. It is true that these compounds favour the development of rust, but, nevertheless, even here the admission of oxygen is a *sine qua non.* That the presence of dissolved salts is no bar to the absorption of oxygen by water can be seen best in sea water, which contains an average of 3·5 per cent. of the above-named salts, without the dissolved oxygen being any smaller in quantity than in fresh water. Indeed, were it not for this solubility of oxygen in sea water the existence of marine animals would be an impossibility.

"The action of rust-forming salts on iron is thus similar to that of dilute acids. In any event the production of rust can only ensue when water and oxygen are both present and active simultaneously."

Simon expresses himself as follows with regard to the *Origin of Rust*:—

"For rust to be formed, it is—under ordinary atmospheric influences—a necessity for the surface of the metal to be exposed, and that water in the liquid condition—containing dissolved (?) oxygen (air) and carbon dioxide—should act thereon. When these factors are not concurrently in action, no formation of rust takes place so long as no other chemical reagents—sulphuretted hydrogen, chlorine, hydrochloric acid (and other volatile acids) in the gaseous state or dissolved in water as chlorides of the alkalis or earthy metals—strongly favour its production. Thus, iron in an atmosphere containing oxygen, carbon dioxide and water vapour is unattacked provided the vapour is not deposited in the liquid form upon the surface of the metal. Consequently in boilers and steam pipes, where these conditions are fulfilled by the steam being super-heated and dry, no production of rust is possible. On the other hand iron is unattacked at the ordinary temperature by water that is free from air, *i.e.*, oxygen and carbon dioxide, whereas at a high temperature—red heat—the iron becomes rapidly coated with an adherent crust of magnetic oxide, which acts as a protection against rust, and on this account the phenomenon has been utilised in the elaboration of a process for preventing iron from rusting. At moderate temperatures pure oxygen is inert towards iron, but under the influence of heat forms with it magnetic iron oxide. The same also applies to carbon dioxide, which has no action on iron in the cold, but at red heat converts it into magnetic iron oxide and is itself simultaneously reduced to carbon monoxide. Even water containing oxygen alone, but no carbon dioxide, exerts no action on iron at the ordinary temperature, wherefore iron that is immersed in water containing air, but to which a little alkali or lime has been added in order to fix the carbon dioxide, will remain free from rust so long as any free alkali or alkaline earth is present in the water.

"As soon, however, as free carbon dioxide makes its appearance the iron is easily attacked at the ordinary temperature, and iron carbonate is produced, which is converted into the soluble form of bicarbonate by the excess of carbon dioxide. In this reaction hydrogen is liberated and will combine, to form water, with any free oxygen present. Given a sufficiency of oxygen and carbon dioxide, the whole of the iron will pass completely into solution, whilst in the event of a deficiency of these reagents the iron bicarbonate will be precipitated as iron carbonate, and carbon dioxide will be liberated. In presence of oxygen the carbonate is converted into the hydrated oxide, or true rust, and carbon dioxide escapes. The formation of bog iron ore—which has attained to such importance in the gas industry—is attributable to this process.

"The fact that in the formation of rust there is a continual evolution of carbon dioxide, which again exerts a destructive action on the iron, provided the other conditions —presence of air and moisture—obtain, explains to some extent the circumstance that, wherever a speck of rust is found, it continues to extend deeper whilst a nodule of rust appears on the surface. The principal reason for this development towards the interior of the mass is attributable to the circumstance that rust, like carbon and humous bodies, possesses the property of condensing gases, by superficial attraction, in which condition they may be regarded as nearly liquefied. Under these circumstances the gaseous elements: oxygen, hydrogen, and nitrogen, are endowed with considerable molecular mobility, directly encouraging chemical displacement and combination. The aforesaid property also accounts for the excellent purifying effect exerted on illuminating gas by bog iron ore, an effect which is not merely confined to the chemical process of modifying the sulphur compounds in the gas by means of the iron hydroxide in the ore, but extends also to the abstraction of carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, and nitrogen from the gas.

"According to the preceding arguments the formation of rust is divisible into two stages :—

"1. Formation of soluble ferro-bicarbonate.

"2. Conversion of this product into white ferro-carbonate and progressively into iron hydroxide (hydrate), whilst, so long as oxygen is present, the liberated carbon dioxide continues to attack the iron.

"Of course the process is carried on in other ways whenever other chemical agencies come into operation. Thus when sodium chloride, calcium chloride, potassium chloride, ammonium chloride, or magnesium chloride is present, though even in but minute amount, a very considerable rusting naturally ensues, provided sufficient atmospheric moisture is available. The process is greatly accelerated when the air contains sulphuretted hydrogen, ammonium sulphide, sulphur dioxide, hydrochloric acid, acetic acid, etc."

Schulte objects to the explanation of rust formation brought forward by Spennrath, by arguing, in the first place, that the rust formed on iron cannot be at once assumed as being accurately defined by the formula—

$$Fe_2(HO)_6 = Fe_2O_3 + 3H_2O,$$

although it is customary so to do, for the sake of simplicity. He considers that, since the formation of rust is a progressive operation, the mass to which that term is applied cannot exhibit a uniform composition, because the conjoint action of carbon dioxide in the process gives rise to compounds which afterwards gradually, and as a result of further changes, pass over into the form of the hydrated oxide.

Again, Simon explains that alkalis absorb carbon dioxide only when the air containing it is passed through the reagent and agitated, so that at most only the stratum of air in contact with the liquid can be freed from its carbon dioxide thereby.

"It is an actual fact that the co-operation of carbon dioxide can be traced wherever rust is formed, and Spennrath is greatly in error in denying this co-operation. However, the question whether carbon dioxide is or is not absolutely necessary is of no practical importance."

According to Mulder, iron is a metal which, under the influence of an acid, decomposes water at the ordinary temperature, the hydrogen being liberated, and the oxygen (as well as that of the air) combining with the metal. This applies also to carbon dioxide; and, of late, ozone, traces of nitric acid and other bodies have been included.

It now becomes of interest to determine the conditions favouring the progressive development of an existing incrustation of iron rust.

On this point Spennrath states that "most metals when exposed to the air soon assume a coating, originating in a manner similar to iron rust; lead and zinc, for example, rapidly becoming tarnished. Every one knows, however, that lead and zinc can be left in contact with the air for any length of time without any artificial protection. The aforesaid coating, when once formed, constitutes a fine skin which is perfectly impervious and completely shields the underlying metal from the atmosphere, and consequently from further attack. Should this skin be damaged or removed by scraping or other forcible means, it is quickly replaced, the constituents of the air soon causing a fresh film to form on the surface of the metal.

"The behaviour of iron, or iron rust, is, however, very different, the latter forming a porous mass instead of a coherent coating. This porous structure can be readily demonstrated by wetting a dry layer of rust with a drop of oil or petroleum, the liquid quickly making its way into and extending through the mass. On this circumstance is based the well-known procedure of saturating rust with petroleum before scraping it off.

"All porous bodies, without exception, are endowed with the property of condensing, or occluding, gases in their capillaries, and iron rust does this too. Consequently we must assume the presence of condensed oxygen in the rust pores. Moreover, being a porous body, rust has the power of absorbing and retaining water, and since this water dissolves the condensed oxygen present in the pores, we must thus regard the liquid retained by iron rust as a concentrated aqueous solution of oxygen. Hence it is evident that the rust-forming power of the liquid is increased, and that a rapid progression of the rusting must necessarily follow.

"From this point of view it is correct to say that rust produces rust. It should, however, be borne in mind that the rust itself is not the actual chemical agency, but merely acts as a carrier, and loses its efficacy as soon as it is freed from water. It is therefore erroneous to reject iron oxide as a pigment for iron on the ground that it produces rust, since when suspended in oil, whether in the liquid or resinified state, the oxide cannot condense oxygen nor can it absorb water.

"If iron rust, instead of being porous, formed a compact coating, it would protect the iron just as well as the corresponding films do in the case of lead, zinc, etc. This is evident from the fact that so-called 'browned' iron does not rust, the coating produced by the browning treatment being nothing but rust, and only differing from the ordinary form in that it is compact.

"Both the anhydrous and hydrated oxide of iron are generally regarded as carriers of oxygen. It is assumed that, in contact with organic bodies, they give up a portion of their oxygen, and replace this loss by re-absorption from the atmosphere. The proof brought forward in support of this opinion is, however, unconvincing. It is that when heated to redness with combustible substances, iron oxide readily yields its oxygen to them, in consequence of which this oxide may be employed for incinerating the more incombustible organic bodies. This behaviour, however, is not confined to iron alone, nor is it important. The combustion of organic matters always results in the formation of free carbon, and on the other hand the generality of metallic oxides are reduced when calcined along with carbon, *i.e.*, they part with some, if not the whole, of their oxygen. Many of them do this with greater readiness than iron oxide, the oxides of lead, copper, and zinc being easily converted into the corresponding metal by heating with carbon.

"If iron rust be boiled in a solution of grape sugar the former yields up a portion of its oxygen, a circumstance cited in favour of the action of rust as a carrier of oxygen.

"As a matter of fact, however, grape sugar abstracts oxygen much more readily from other metals.

"Moreover, even if iron rust were actually able to attack organic bodies by ceding its oxygen to them, it would not be conclusive evidence that the same action is exercised towards metallic iron. Lead oxide, for instance, parts with its oxygen much more easily than iron does; nevertheless we know that though a clean surface of metallic lead is rapidly coated over with a film of oxide, this layer does not increase in thickness, and consequently there is no transference of oxygen to the underlying metal."

Ebelin makes the following appropriate remarks on the subject under consideration:—

"It is true that a scientific explanation of the phenomenon has been proffered, but a subsidiary (or is it a main?) question has been left entirely out of consideration, namely, that some iron rusts readily, others only with difficulty, whilst some do not rust at all. For example, the unpainted iron chains on a fishing hut that came under observation were entirely free from rust notwithstanding their extensive exposure to both water and oxygen. Other iron articles become rusty without having been in the rain. How is this? If we examine an iron rod we find that it is mainly the parts uncovered by scale which rust. Is not this the point to which the lever should be applied? Should not attention be directed to preparing a kind of iron that will not rust, at least under paint?

"Furthermore we see in iron structures that, wherever iron chafes against iron, the rust regularly sprouts out. Perhaps this defect also could be obviated in the manufacture. It is a remarkable thing that a speck of rust will strike through a coat of paint like a smoke stain will through distemper on a ceiling. This is most plainly visible when a white paint is used. At first the stain is concealed by the paint, but as this dries it is seen that the rust has turned the paint yellow. Is the oil to blame, by dissolving the rust, or is it due to the small percentage of water present in every oil paint?"

The alterations to which iron is subjected in the earth were shown by a case where two lives were sacrificed through the breaking of a gas pipe, the rupture of which was effected by simple subsidence of the ground. The pipe was found to have been broken off clean, and exhibited, both externally and internally, a thick incrustation of rust, the sound core of metal being not more than $\frac{1}{25}$-$\frac{1}{12}$ inch in thickness.

Fig. 1 (natural size).—Rust on rolled sheet iron, scoured with pumice; produced by falling drops of water constantly evaporated.

Another peculiar instance of the decomposition of iron was carefully investigated by Otto Herting. Here an old iron rail, a T-shaped girder, was found at Cape Breton in a mine which had been abandoned for about twenty years. The metal had a specific gravity of only 2·053, was greyish-brown in colour, could be cut and shaved with a knife, and powdered in a mortar, the powder being magnetic. Analysis furnished the following interesting result:—

Silicon	14·20
Carbon (graphitic)	24·10
Phosphorus	5·85
Sulphur	1·00
Manganese	1·93
Iron	31·50

It is thus evident that the film of iron silicate, known to be first formed when iron is left to lie in the ground, was incapable of preventing the destruction of the rail in question, and therefore cannot be regarded as an efficient protective coating for this metal.

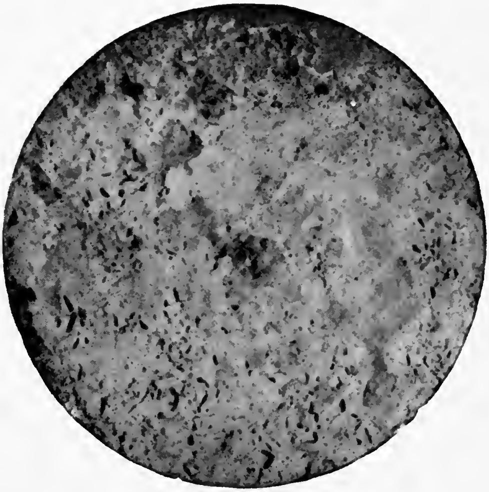


FIG. 2 (magnified).—Rust on rolled sheet iron, scoured with pumice; produced by falling drops of water constantly evaporated.

As Professor L. von Tetmayr has adequately shown, the influence of smoke fumes on iron has not been sufficiently regarded up to the present time, for we can see every day articles or objects that have, from the outset, been exposed to a strong acid corrosion without being protected from premature destruction by any smoke shield or the application of some suitable paint. Through a better appreciation of the state of affairs the system of construction employed in unfavourable cases in Bavaria of late is such that the ironwork is almost entirely enclosed in cement concrete, which alone should afford an extremely durable, acid-resisting coating. How great is the damage done to ironwork by sulphurous smoke gases is shown by numerous examples, a few of which are cited below:—

FIG. 3 (natural size).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate in twelve hours by moistening with water and leaving it to dry.

"In June, 1893, there was found in a corner of the abutment of the Swiss National Railway bridge where this line crosses the busy Aran track of the Swiss North-east Railway, a steel chisel which had evidently been left there by one of the fitters sixteen years before. This tool was examined by me (von Tetmayr) and found to be completely rusted away. With the exception of the under side on which it had lain and which was rusted only to the depth of about $\frac{1}{16}$ inch ($1\frac{1}{2}$ mm.), the chisel was covered on all sides with a layer of $\frac{1}{4}$ inch (6 mm.) and more of rust. Such an extensive corrosion of steel in the air could only have been brought about by the action of water impregnated with sulphurous or sulphuric acid, produced during the brisk traffic on the Aran line and deposited, with atmospheric moisture, on the acid-proof painted surfaces of the bridge, whence it dropped on to the tool in question."

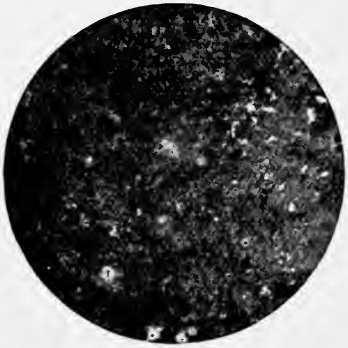


Fig. 4 (natural size).—Iron plate with rust spots caused by water.

Among the plentiful instances of the rusting of iron stuctures by the action of smoke fumes, reference may be made to that recorded in the *Revue Générale des Chemins de Fer*, June, 1893, p. 366.

Again, there are various street bridges on the Swiss railways which at present exhibit severe damage due to rust corrosion.

District Engineer Ebert, of the Bavarian State Railways, reports the subjoined interesting case:—

"The bridge in the Central Station at Munich and the Cöppinger Strasse bridge at the Augsburg Station were both erected about the end of the sixties. The maintenance was of the usual kind, the ordinary oil paint being renewed from time to time. No special care was exercised in the selection of the paint or of the painters employed to lay it on, the injurious influence of the gases and vapour given off from the locomotives being then unknown. As in general, and especially in the seventies, very little consideration was bestowed on the question whether the use of iron for bridge building is not only cheap but also advisable, in view of the special conditions of maintenance exacted by the situation and method of construction, so there was little fear expressed that the smoke and steam given off by the engines would be likely to cause such an extent of damage as was actually found to exist, in the Cöppinger bridge in particular. Even

FIG. 5 (natural size).—Rust on rolled iron plate, produced in twelve hours by pouring water on to the plate and leaving it to dry. Rust flakes on clean metal.

in recent years when the question was posed at the invitation of the Bavarian State Railways, most of the railway managers denied having encountered similar unfavourable experiences. Nowadays the opinion then expressed by the Bavarian State Railway officials is universally held ; this is particularly shown by the experience gained in America and published in the technical press. To resume the consideration of the question at issue, it must be observed that the maintenance and supervision of these two bridges was formerly, without doubt, carried on in a perfunctory manner. The traffic—especially that of shunting engines — passing under the bridges precluded the employment of the ordinary painters' cradles, and the men were obliged to work on planks suspended from the longitudinal girders and, of necessity, extending but a short distance below the framework. Here their confined and cramped position, and the great personal inconvenience caused by the smoke and steam from the engines passing underneath, led them to get through the

FIG. 6 (natural size).—Rust on rolled iron plate, produced by a single application of water left to dry on.

work with the utmost despatch without much regard to thoroughness or the prescribed regulations. The removal of the soot and rust on the ironwork would certainly be very inefficiently effected, and doubtless the paint was laid on damp places without previously drying them. Consequently a proper degree of hardening of the paint became almost an impossibility, since the steam from the locomotives was greatly retarded in its dissipation by the channels formed by the shape of the girders underneath, and would therefore be condensed on the surface of the iron. Such endangered portions were quickly coated over with a thick deposit of soot, so that in the course of the regular periodical inspection of the bridge the rust actually present was invisible to the eye. When, however, in the year 1889, the thorough detailed examination of the Cöppinger bridge was undertaken, it was found to be so corroded in places as to necessitate immediate extensive repairs. On the removal of the top plates forming the roadway it became apparent that in many places, over the

Fig. 7 (magnified).—Rust on rolled iron plate, produced by a single application of water left to dry on.

line, the cover plates, angle stays, and wall plates had become reduced in strength by as much as 50 per cent.; the angles of the vertical cross frames and the diagonal plates of the horizontal projection were in parts no thicker than a knife; and, in fact, some of these angles were mere stumps.

"In the Hacker bridge both the longitudinal street girders and the corrugated ($\frac{1}{5}$ in.) iron plates were particularly corroded, the latter being quite eaten through in places. The damaged portions still exhibited, in section, the complete structure of the forged iron, and the smoked surfaces had a glossy black appearance. It therefore seems that not only rust formation, but also other and very extensive chemical changes had been produced by the constituents of engine smoke, sulphur dioxide, and so forth. No special investigation was, however, made.

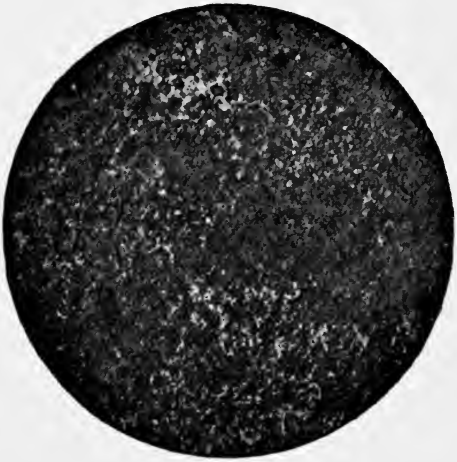


FIG. 8 (natural size).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid for twenty-four hours.

"In order to protect the renovated bridges from these injurious ejecta, a cover plate of galvanised corrugated iron was placed under the Cöppinger bridge in 1890, and the whole of the longitudinal street girders and upper half of the cross girders of the Hacker bridge were encased in concrete, this treatment being pursued on all the street bridges erected during the enlarging of the Munich Central Station. The aforesaid corrugated plates after being in position for three and a half years were found to be completely eaten through in places over the sidings, but otherwise had fulfilled their purpose, *viz.*, the protection of the actual structure of the bridge. So far as the parts of the ironwork that were coated with concrete are concerned no unfavourable reports have as yet been received." With regard to the action of lime, gypsum and cement on ironwork set in fresh masonry, such as girders, ties, etc., the following particulars are supplied by experts :—

FIG. 9 (natural size).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid for twenty-four hours.

Ironwork embedded in fresh mortar soon becomes attacked to a large extent, and especially portions made of wrought or rolled iron, cast iron being less susceptible. The reaction shows itself first in the production of a strong coating of rust, which, moreover, is not confined to the surface alone but quickly extends towards the interior. Thus rust forms, in conjunction with the adjacent particles of mortar, regular scales, which are very brittle and chip off on bending or exposure to the slightest shock. In addition to this they greedily absorb water from the surrounding mass of mortar, thus contributing to the progressive destruction of the iron, a circumstance which explains why the dissociation proceeds with such rapidity that thin portions of the metal are entirely converted into rust within a comparatively short space of time. Moreover, the residual core of iron has undergone a notable alteration in its properties, the change being evidenced in particular by reduced strength as well as by brittleness and shortness of fracture, the surface of which also often reveals a decided crystalline structure.

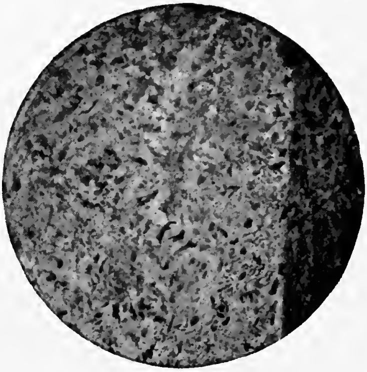


Fig. 10 (natural size).—Rust on rolled iron plate with defective surface, produced in five minutes by the action of dilute hydrochloric acid.

It is worthy of note that the iron increases in volume concurrently with the progress of the rust formation, a circumstance that may become a source of danger to the structure, on account of the very considerable pressure accompanying such expansion. Thus, for example, it has been observed that blocks of hewn stone fitted in a defective manner with iron dowels and clamps, and set in mortar, have become forced asunder owing to the cause in question, and required resetting.

FIG. 11 (natural size).

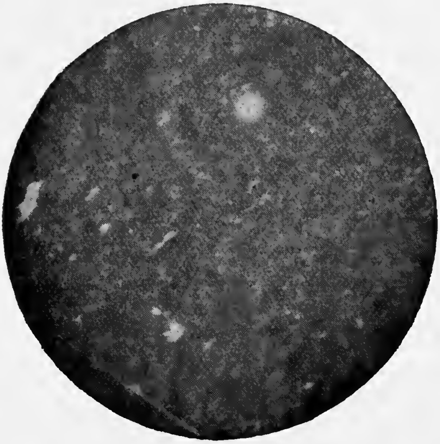


FIG. 12 (magnified).—Rust produced in five minutes on rolled iron plate, with damaged surface, by dilute hydrochloric acid, washed off with water and dried in the warm.

It is probably less generally known that gypsum exerts a similar though slighter effect on iron, manifested more particularly when the two materials are employed in positions where they are directly exposed to the influence of moisture, or used in rooms filled with very damp air. The degree of force exerted during the expansion will be evident from the following instance: In hanging a wooden yard gate three hinge staples were driven into the red sandstone gate posts on either side, two of them—the top and bottom staples—being set in lead whilst the middle one was plastered in, probably after the gate had been hung. After a time it was found that a conchoid fragment of stone was chipping off on the inner side of one of the posts, without any apparent cause. This fracture left the plastered hinge staple exposed and showed the metal to be in an advanced stage of destruction, scales of rust $\frac{1}{5}$ of an inch thick peeling off easily. The gypsum also exhibited a characteristic red-brown appearance. As, on inspection, the door was found not to have exerted any pressure on this middle staple, the only remaining explanation possible of the splitting of the otherwise

FIG. 13 (natural size).—Rust produced on iron plate by hydrochloric acid and ferric chloride.

perfectly sound and veinless stone was the assumption that it was caused by the expansion of the metal in rusting.

On the other hand, pure cement has proved itself an excellent preventive of rust, iron set in pure cement remaining unrusted even when kept under water. Painting ironwork over with a thin gruel of cement also answers very well, and this coating, being at the same time cheaper, may be preferred to red lead (minium) paint.

The rusting of iron under atmospheric influences in general, and under normal conditions, has hitherto received as little thorough attention as that produced by the action of smoke fumes, weak acid gases, dilute liquid alkalis, etc. When iron is left in the open air, and thus exposed to the influence of depositions and condensations of water, rain and snow, brought about by fluctuations of temperature, it rusts, *i.e.*, the iron—whether wrought or cast, rolled iron or steel—acquires a red incrustation, pulverulent when dry,

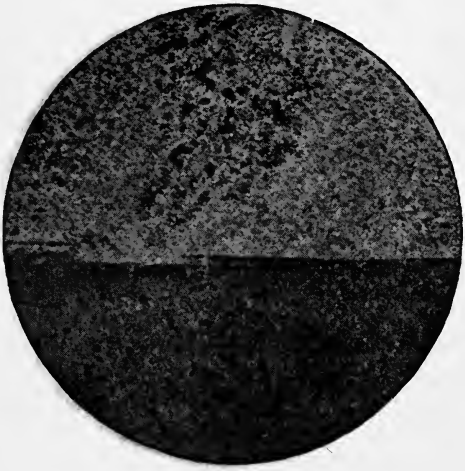


FIG. 14 (natural size).—Rolled iron plate with damaged surface scoured with pumice and rusted by the action of hydrochloric acid during two hours. The lower half was rubbed dry and consequently is less rusty.

easily rubbed off, and leaving a clean surface underneath provided the reaction has not occurred more than once and for only a short time. If, however, the deposition of water or moisture be repeated and prolonged, then the red layers increase in thickness, and when rubbed off leave behind them red and roughened patches, necessitating the employment of sharp instruments, forcibly applied, before the clean surface of the metal can again be laid bare. By still longer exposure to the reaction, thick incrustations of rust are finally developed, and when these are removed the surface of the iron is found pitted with hollows of greater or smaller depth, the cleaning of the metal being then a matter of greater difficulty than ever. The author has examined a number of cast-iron gaspipes which had been left in the open for several months, and found that the formation of rust had proceeded far from uniformly, although the pipes were all exposed to precisely the same atmospheric conditions. Many of the pipes had acquired only a slight film of rust, whilst others were almost free from rust on the upper side—the one most exposed to the rain—though the sides were covered with coherent, but thin, layers of incrustation. Even in one and the same pipe some

Fig. 15 (natural size).—Rust produced by dilute hydrochloric acid on iron plate with almost undamaged surface. The dark patch in the middle is where the rust has chipped off; and the dark line underneath shows where the layer of rust is peeling.

portions were quite free from rust, whilst others, close to, bore a fairly thick crust. It was in many instances easy to see where a raindrop had fallen, by the rusty patch, from which a long thin film of rust extended downwards along the surface of the pipe. The greatest development of rust was found, on the average, at the ends of the pipes; and projecting portions of the castings, as well as cracks and faulty places, were more extensively rusted than the plain surface. The degree of incrustation was relatively greater inside the pipes, indicating that the rust-forming capacity of moisture is greater than that of water in the liquid condition. The question why these cast-iron pipes gave such different results under identical conditions of atmospheric influence seems to be somewhat difficult to answer. It may be that the difference is attributable to the material itself. That this is the correct solution of the problem the author will not take upon himself to assert, but one is almost compelled to take this view in order to explain why some parts of the metal were free from rust, whilst others were much corroded. Perhaps the susceptibility to rusting is dependent on variations in the rate of cooling, and consequently in the density, of the castings. The author

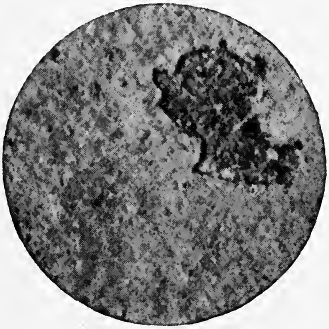


Fig. 16 (magnified).—Rust produced by dilute hydrochloric acid on an almost undamaged surface of iron plate. The large patch shows where the rust has flaked off.

confesses himself unable to find a suitable explanation, the conditions of action of the atmospheric influences having been precisely the same in all cases, *i.e.*, the whole of the tubes, several hundreds in number, were exposed under absolutely identical circumstances and for exactly the same period of time.

The formation of rust under the action of atmospheric influences proceeds at a fairly rapid rate, though not so quickly as when the air is more or less contaminated with smoke fumes, acid vapours, and the like. In such air rusting will take place, even without the access of water—whether as condensed moisture or as rain—at a much quicker rate than in a purer atmosphere, and its progress is still further accelerated by moisture, owing to the precipitation by the latter, on the metal, of all the injurious vapours and gases floating about in the air.

FIG. 17 (natural size).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by the application of a solution of common salt left to dry on. The dark portion to the left was coated with linseed varnish.

It is a well-known fact that ironwork in the vicinity of factories employing coal as fuel suffers greatly from rust, and that in the neighbourhood of chemical works, where gaseous acids are discharged into the air, all articles made of cast, wrought, or rolled iron are so rapidly attacked by rust that in a very short time thin sheet iron is completely eaten away. This is easy to understand, for if even a weak acid be allowed to react continuously on thin sheet iron, the latter will, in a comparatively short time, become brittle through the formation of rust, and finally corroded into holes.

FIG. 18 (magnified).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by the application of a solution of common salt left to dry on.

The condensation of moisture on iron objects is also quite sufficient to produce rust and favour its progressive development. The author examined an iron pipe which was kept through the winter in a perfectly dry place, and found that the moisture obtaining access to the room in the course of diurnal ventilation, floor cleaning, and respiration, sufficed to develop on the surface, before spring, a fairly uniform rough coating of rust. It is also well known that polished articles of steel or iron can be rusted by merely handling them once, the thin film thus produced increasing progressively as the articles are more frequently used, and finally forming a dense stratum of rust.

That the action of water, acids, common salt in solution, and other rust formers does not produce a uniform effect on iron plate, the author has ascertained by a series of experiments. Under identical conditions and on different parts of the same piece of metal some places were found spotted with rust, whilst others were free therefrom, without any difference in the quality of the metal being discernible. Moreover, the rust flakes themselves were far from uniform in intensity and shape, so that, here also, much still remains to be elucidated, and a thorough investigation of the governing conditions is necessary.

FIG. 19 (natural size).—Rust produced by common salt solution on rolled iron plate.

From the practical point of view the actual cause of rusting is a matter of indifference, and it is likewise immaterial whether carbon dioxide plays any part therein or not; we know that rust will form on iron, and we also know that rust, in whatever form it appears, is a dangerous foe to the metal.

It was once said by a practical man that "sooner or later every iron bridge must fall into the water," and even if this statement is not to be accepted literally, it nevertheless shows a full appreciation of the dangers incurred by iron structures, especially bridges subjected to heavy loads, if the formation of rust be not prevented by every possible means. On the occasion of the last great bridge accident (at Mönchenstein, near Basle), an expert stated that "it appears certain the bridge was not kept in proper condition, but that rust, that foe to all iron structures, had been allowed to gain the upper hand. Under certain conditions the rusting away of a few rivet heads will suffice to dangerously weaken such a structure as this, possessing but a minimum margin of safety."

Fig. 20 (natural size).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by common salt solution.

As a matter of fact it is not by the degree of rusting experienced by the massive constituents of iron bridges—

such as the rolled girders, connecting pieces, stays, ties and such like large and visible portions—that the safety and strength of the entire structure is to be measured; but it rather becomes a question of properly preserving the smallest component parts, present in very large numbers. In all iron structures an important function is discharged by the rivets, which have to unite the individual plates, stays, girders, etc., which in turn are jointed, screwed, etc., together. If rust is allowed to gain a foothold in the rivets and screws the rigidity of the entire structure is imperilled. The rusting of one, two or more rivets in a girder, stay, etc., will not

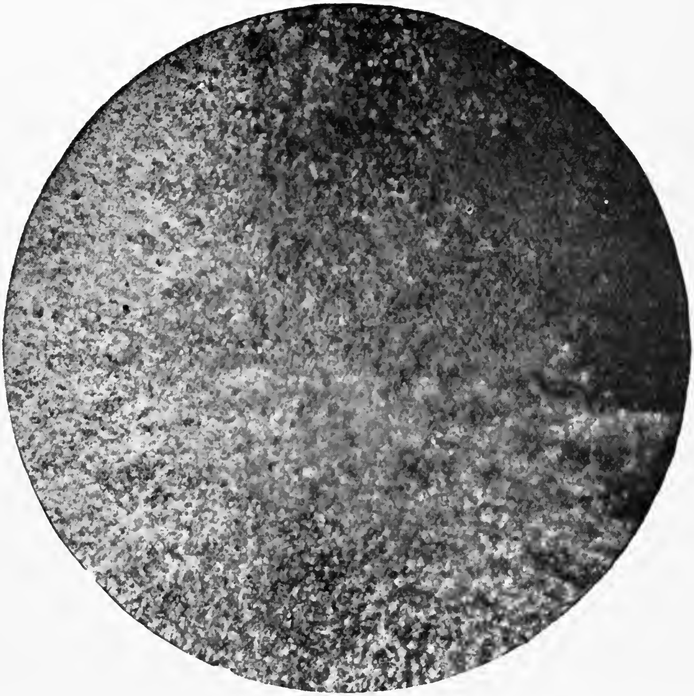


FIG. 21 (natural size).—Rust developed on rolled iron plate by fourteen days' exposure to atmospheric action.

endanger safety, provided there are plenty of others still sound; but, if suitable care be not exercised, the whole of the rivets and screws may become rusted, and then the danger begins. Everybody knows that an invisible crack is often sufficient, if filled with water and then frozen, to cause a large stone to split asunder, and a similar thing occurs in rivets, a probably imperceptible space between the rivet head and the iron plate sufficing to admit water, set up rusting, and facilitate oxidation, so that in the course of years the rivet is entirely eaten away with rust, and thus loses its hold and power of binding the parts together. If, now, the same thing happens in a large number of the rivets, then the stability of the structure is rendered questionable and accidents of the worst kind may ensue.

FIG. 22 (magnified).—Rust produced on rolled iron plate by fourteen days' exposure to atmospheric influences.

Rust is an unwelcome visitor in all iron articles, but in the case of iron structures, and especially bridges, is a dangerous foe, and one that should be combated by every available means. The manner in which this can be most effectually done will be thoroughly discussed in a later section dealing with the prevention of rust by paint.

Already, in preceding pages, a number of photographic reproductions of rusted iron plate and a few other objects will have been noticed, and to these comes a further series requiring but a few words of elucidation. As is well known, red colours, such as that of rust, come out dark when photographed; but, as the result of experiments with various methods of illumination of the iron plates here reproduced, it was found possible to obtain all the rust spots as more or less light tones, so that perfectly white spots indicate a strong formation of rust, darker tones showing less intense rusting, and the clean metal darkest of all. Another important result, however, sprang from these researches, and

FIG. 23 (natural size).—Rust produced on iron plate through ordinary wear and condensed moisture.

that is, that by means of the method of illumination and reproduction employed it becomes possible to reveal specks of rust undiscernible by the naked eye, or even by the aid of a hand glass, a circumstance which may find still further practical utilisation.

When the forms in which rust makes its appearance are examined they will be recognised as varying in character Thus, if a drop of water be placed on an iron plate (Fig. 1) the rust spot left behind on the evaporation of the water corresponds in shape and dimensions to those of the drop. The colour is a rusty brown-red, with darker patches indicating that even in the case of a single drop of water the oxidation is by no means uniform. This is also evident from the variations in the thickness of the rust film, which, moreover, is interspersed with rust-free specks through which the clean surface of the unaltered metal is visible. When

FIG. 24 (natural size).—Rust developed on sheet iron in ordinary use as a stove pipe.

magnified (Fig. 2) these rust spots, although so thin, already exhibit signs of flaking off.

On leaving a stratum of water on the surface of an iron plate for twelve hours, and then removing the water by evaporation, a stronger development of rust will be found, which—towards the edges of the plate especially—is already comparable to a crust. In this case, peculiarly enough, the centre of the plate (Fig. 3) seems to have remained almost free from rust, only a few islets having formed. Peeling off is apparent on a more decided scale than in the previous experiment.

FIG. 25 (natural size).—Sheet of iron perforated by rust; the white patches are the holes, and the dark lines show the flakes of rust in the act of peeling off.

By pouring water once over an iron plate so as to thoroughly cover the entire surface (Figs. 3 to 6) and then leaving it to dry, only a very slight film of rust is produced, the colour of which is uniform, though a number of spots are left clean and unrusted. This test results in nothing remarkable and similar effects can be seen daily.

The application of concentrated hydrochloric acid, allowed to react during twenty-four hours (Fig. 8), causes the iron to dissolve as ferric chloride (Fig. 13). On lightly washing the solution off with water and leaving the iron to dry in the air, a coating of rust, containing numerous contiguous rusty excrescences on a clean-etched surface of metal, is seen, these warty lumps being in places so closely packed as to simulate a crust. The colour varies from ordinary rust-red to dark brown.

The reaction of concentrated hydrochloric acid for twelve hours (Fig. 9) produces a coherent crust, of fairly regular depth, which has already begun to peel off. Below this incrustation is a secondary formation of rust, so that when the upper crust falls off or is dissolved, a new layer will be found, which, however, takes much longer to arrive at the peeling-off stage.

FIG. 26 (natural size).—Thoroughly corroded iron plate: atmospheric action.

When dilute hydrochloric acid is left to act for only a short time (Figs. 10 and 11) there is formed a coherent layer of rust of a fairly uniform dark rust-brown colour. Only in a few patches, where the surface produced by rolling has been damaged, is the uncorroded metal to be seen. No loosening of the rust coating can be detected, a proof that it is relatively very thin.

In two hours dilute hydrochloric acid produces thicker incrustations of rust (Fig. 14) rather browner in colour. In this case also there is no indication of rust warts, neither has the peeling, shown in Fig. 15, yet commenced.

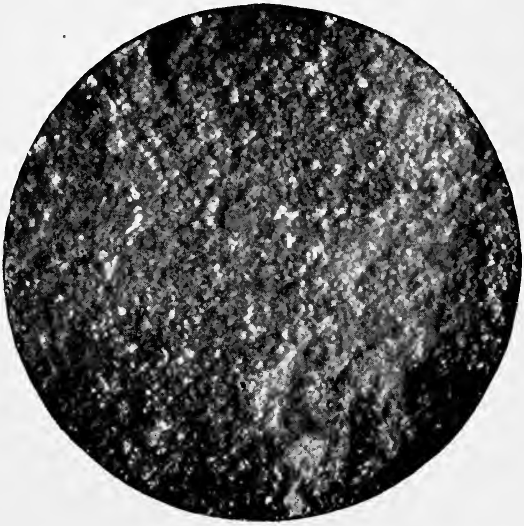


Fig. 27 (magnified).—Thoroughly corroded iron plate: atmospheric action.

The highly energetic action of common salt as a rust former is evident from Figs. 17 and 19, almost the entire surface of the iron in both cases being covered with a relatively thick crust, requiring but a very short time for its development. There occurs both a uniform surface of rust, and individual rust warts; and in this case also the peculiar phenomenon of a thicker incrustation round the edges than in the middle is noticeable.

In all the preceding experiments, wherein the artificial production of rust was effected in order to obtain an insight into the action of the different agencies, scarcely any further progression of the rusting has been observed, owing to the fact that the conditions of such development were lacking, the samples having been stored in a dry place. Only after the lapse of months could any alteration of the layers of rust be detected at all.

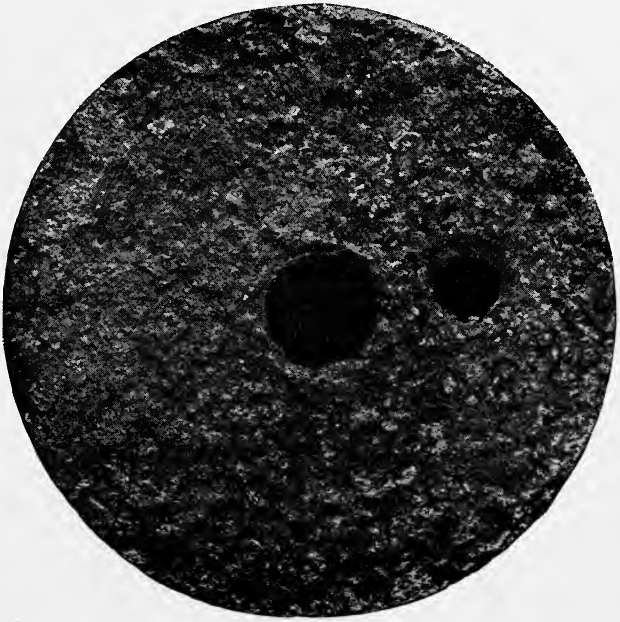


FIG. 28 (natural size).—Thick incrustation of rust developed on a wrought-iron disc by exposure in the open air.

This extension makes itself evident in various ways. In all cases where the rust was caused by the action of water the increase was scarcely, if at all, appreciable after three months' storage in paper, this latter material being, as is well known, an excellent protection against rust. When rephotographed the plates exhibited no alteration and the rust had therefore made no further progress. In the case also of the rust produced by salt solution, the photographic picture taken after three months showed no alteration. Possibly the superficial crystalline layer of sodium chloride may have contributed to this result. The behaviour of the plates treated with hydrochloric acid was, however, different. Here the storage period of three months, even in a perfectly dry state, suffices not only for the complete separation of the upper layer of rust in the form of a coherent sheet as thin as paper, but also for the formation of a new thick underlying stratum, which, although still adherent to the surface of the iron, will, in turn, peel off after the lapse of several months, the metal thus undergoing further corrosion. A decided progression of the rusting was also exhibited by the samples treated with dilute hydrochloric acid for a short period only; even the application of a coat of linseed varnish—which was immediately absorbed by the layer of rust and thereby spread out in the latter—proved incapable of preventing peeling, the crust in that portion being coherent and removable in a single piece.

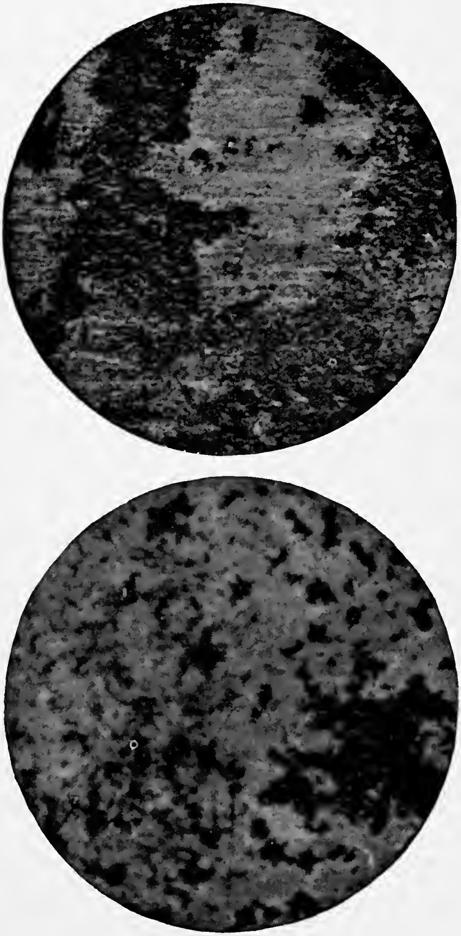
With regard to the magnified views, it will be seen that in each of the "natural size" reproductions there is marked a light ring, which indicates the part magnified: hence the differences revealed by magnification can be readily seen by comparison with the original. In all instances the lightest

FIG. 29.—Wrought-iron pipe corroded in the soil.

patches indicate the lightest-coloured portions of rust, the deeper tones the darker-coloured pieces, and only the black masses represent the still clean, unattacked metal.

Figs. 30 and 31.—Rust pittings in tinned sheet iron stored for ten years in a cellar. The black patches are the rust, the lighter portions indicating the clean metal.

Fig. 21 shows rust produced in the natural way, the iron plate having been exposed to atmospheric influences for fourteen days and nights in succession. Here again the phenomenon already referred to was observed, the metal being completely rusted over in some places, while in others only spots about the size of a needle point could be observed. In the first-named patches the formation exhibited the decided characteristics of rust in general, especially in view of the relative shortness of the exposure, and the incrustation was more



FIGS. 32 and 33—Rust pittings in tinned sheet iron after ten years' storage in a cellar.

intense than that exhibited by the twenty-four hours' reaction of hydrochloric acid. A number of somewhat considerable rust warts of varying colour and thickness were formed. In this case in particular the photographs afford a decided proof of the damage that may be occasioned to iron by the action of atmospheric influences, and it is really incomprehensible that iron articles should be—as they frequently are—left lying exposed to the open air for weeks and months without any protection.

Fig. 34 (natural size).—Rolled sheet iron scoured with pumice and exposed for five minutes to the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The holes have been eaten away by rust.

The progressive development of rusting naturally leads to much more pernicious consequences in the comparatively thin sheet iron than in more massive castings. The former, indeed, when once actually attacked by rust, is entirely corroded in a comparatively short space of time, *i.e.*, the rust continues to extend and attacks fresh, hitherto sound, portions of the metal, which finally is so far permeated thereby that it becomes brittle, falls in holes, and at last crumbles away altogether. An advanced stage of rusting is shown in Fig. 23. The rust forms thick layers—removable in the form of rust-brown powder when scraped with a knife—on the surface of the iron, which still retains some of its strength, though it will break if bent several times in the one place. Surfaces laid bare by scraping away the rust show either clean metal or rust pittings, the rust has partly gone off-coloured and has become yellowish red, and flakes off in thick scales.

Fig. 35 (magnified).—Rolled sheet iron scoured with pumice and exposed for five minutes to the action of concentrated hydrochloric acid. The holes have been eaten away by rust.

At a still more advanced stage of rusting, portions of the corroded plate break away of themselves—as shown in Figs. 24, 25—when touched, and holes are formed. Hence the cohesion of the mass—which, with the exception of a few unaffected patches, now consists entirely of rust—is destroyed. In the present case the rust is nearly black-brown in colour, interspersed with a few light patches, and it appears as though a few individual fragments of iron are still present in the mass, these being, however, in a somewhat decomposed condition. The corrosion of sheet iron to such an extent as to form small, almost imperceptible holes, is almost invariably due to the action of acids; corrosion of this kind is mostly encountered in tinplate (Figs. 30, 31), and the author has noticed it on tinplate bottles in which spirit or spirit varnish has been stored for some years, the tin coating being first loosened and the iron afterwards corroded in holes by rusting.

A destructive action on sheet iron is exerted by the smoke fumes from coal fires, these causing the metal to fall prematurely into ruin. The causes have already been detailed, and it is only necessary now to give a reproduction of a sample of such plate showing clearly the condition to which it attains.

An example of the complete corrosion of sheet iron is also shown in Fig. 24, wherein a considerable number of rusty excrescences, resting on a stratum of rust already in the peeling stage, are to be seen, portions of the underlying metal being also visible.

As will be evident from Fig. 28, no difference in form between the rust developing on cast and wrought iron respectively can be discerned, rust warts and peeling off being also met with in the former case; neither is any difference apparent in the incipient stage of rust formation.

Rust, as we have seen, makes its appearance as a thicker or thinner incrustation at individual points, and also in groups of rust flakes which, by increasing in thickness, become rust warts. The thickness of the layers varies according to the kind and duration of the rust-forming influences at work, often attaining to the dimensions of a millimetre ($\frac{1}{25}$ inch) or more, and frequently manifesting a tendency to peel off as already mentioned. This peeling occurs in thin as well as in thick layers of rust, and appears to be independent of any definite condition of thickness.

The *colour* of rust is somewhat variable, being mostly a rather bright yellowish red when newly formed, and passing, with age and increasing thickness, into dark red-brown and even blackish brown, though paler patches may still appear amid the dark layers. Very old rust is mostly blackish brown and exhibits a more or less lustrous, almost crystalline appearance. When converted into powder the colour of rust is bright yellow-red, like that of the fresh product and the natural oxides of iron. Owing to the porous character of rust it readily absorbs water and considerably retards the evaporation of that liquid. It also easily takes up fatty substances, and these, on passing into the interior of the mass of rust, soften it and facilitate its removal by scraping. A similar effect is produced by petroleum, and it is on this property that the method of cleaning rusty iron by moistening it with petroleum, and then scrubbing with sharp sand, pumice, glass paper or emery paper, is based.

FIG. 36 (natural size).—Rolled sheet iron with apparently uninjured surface. No development of rust occurred after exposure to concentrated hydrochloric acid for five minutes.

Having now become acquainted with the circumstances under which rust is produced, and also recognised its injurious effect on iron, we turn to the question, How can rusting be prevented, and what means should be employed to this end?

In principle one might reply that the best remedy is to preclude all the circumstances capable of aiding in the formation of rust, *i.e.*, to keep out air (oxygen, carbon dioxide), water (in whatever form), acids, caustic alkalis, chlorides, and so on. To accomplish this is, however, impossible, since, in view of the multifarious uses to which iron and steel are put, neither air nor any of the other agencies cited can be permanently excluded in all cases, even though the greatest precautions be adopted. There remains, therefore, no other course open but to enclose or coat the iron over with such substances as will keep the air and moisture away from the metal, a matter of less difficulty than would perhaps appear at first sight, though the exclusion of acids, salts, etc., is harder, if not impossible, to accomplish. If we can surround the metal with some substance or material which will prevent the access of air and moisture, and which at the same time is so thin that it leaves the form and outward appearance of the iron unaltered, then the problem is solved. Substances fulfilling these requirements do exist and have long been known; and if, this notwithstanding, the permanent banishment of the foe has not been successfully accomplished, the reason is to be sought in the circumstance that these substances themselves in course of time are subjected to natural wear and tear, and hence can only afford the requisite security for a certain period, their renewal being necessary when that limit is reached.

The protecting or rust-preventing substances in general use may be divided, according to the purpose for which they are destined, into several classes, *viz.* :—

I. Such as afford a permanent preventive remedy against the formation of rust, irrespective of the expense and difficulty of the process of application. This object can be attained by:—

(*a*) Enamelling, *i.e.*, covering with a vitreous coating by the aid of great heat;

(*b*) Coating with other metals but little, if at all, liable to oxidation—zinc, tin, lead, copper;

(*c*) Pickling or browning, *i.e.*, producing a layer of artificial rust on the metal, whereby further rusting is precluded for a long time.

II. Substances that will prevent the formation of rust as long as possible (bearing in mind the dimensions of the pieces to be protected, and the expense and ease of application of the process), and thus prevent the formation of rust even permanently. Enamel withstands the action of alkalis, chlorides, and even of acids, so that we have here at disposal a method capable of protecting iron from such agencies and maintaining it in a rust-free condition. There are, however, two weighty circumstances which restrict the application of both these processes to a certain range of objects: expense, and (in the case of enamel) the impossibility of exceeding a certain maximum in the dimensions of the articles treated. The process of applying metallic coatings is expensive, and enamelling is encountered with difficulties due both to the large size of the parts used in some structures (*e.g.*, bridges) and to the cost.

Hence our interest is necessarily restricted to the categories II. and III., and these will be dealt with in the succeeding sections in the following order and classification:—

1. Paints in general for use on iron.
2. Rust-preventing (anti-corrosive) paints; the conditions for their preparation and use.
3. Anti-fouling compositions (paints for ships' bottoms).

4. Other methods of rust prevention :—

(*a*) Rubbing over with fats, oils, or compositions based thereon.

(*b*) Various processes for obtaining protective coatings against rust.

To this class belong—

Coating with liquid or semi-fluid substances endowed with the property of drying hard, so as to form a solid integument preventing the access of air and moisture; painting with oil and other paints; coating with lacquers, varnishes, and tar or tarry bodies.

III. The protection of iron during transport or storage, up to the time it is to be put into use, whereupon the coating can be easily removed. This is effected by—

(*a*) Coating or rubbing over with solid and liquid fats or such compositions as can be readily rubbed or washed off when the iron is to be used, and therefore exhibit but a very low coefficient of adherence to the metal.

(*b*) Graphite.

Spennrath divides the usual coatings applied to prevent rust on iron into such as are prepared by—

(*a*) Painting with oil paint.
(*b*) Covering with solid or liquid fats.
(*c*) Painting over with tar or asphalt.
(*d*) Rubbing with graphite.
(*e*) Covering with other metals.
(*f*) Pickling.

The classification previously mentioned is preferred by the author as affording a more correct representation of the various feasible processes for protecting iron from rusting.

The methods referred to under I. (*a*) and (*b*), *viz.*, enamelling and coating with other metals, will, so experience teaches, give the most favourable and certain results, because they actually do completely exclude the metal from contact with air, oxygen, carbon dioxide, and water.

THE PROTECTION OF IRON FROM RUSTING BY THE APPLICATION OF VARNISHES, LACQUERS, AND OIL PAINTS, TAR AND TARRY SUBSTANCES.

As hinted in the preceding section, we are taking as our starting-point the idea of protecting iron from rust as long as is possible, consistent with the size of the objects, reasonable cost, and facility of performance of the process; and this end is attained by "coating the iron with liquid or semi-fluid substances endowed with the property of drying hard, so as to form a solid integument preventing the access of air and moisture".

When it is merely a question of simply protecting iron from rust, without regard to permanence, the object in view can be attained in a very simple manner by painting the article over with a quick-drying solution of resin, a spirit varnish (lacquer), or a solution of celluloid. This method is easy of performance; the varnish dries quickly, and the iron—when not exposed to the weather—will be protected from rust for a reasonably long time. Lacquers of this kind are largely used for protecting iron and steel ware and utensils of various kinds, and in this connection yield valuable service.

What we have now in view, however, and will now proceed to consider, is the protection of larger objects made of iron—iron structures such as bridges, other iron buildings, etc. For this purpose a simple coating of lacquer which dries quickly and exhibits no sufficient powers of resistance is inadequate.

Ever since the application of iron to constructive purposes of all kinds, including shipbuilding, has attained such enormous proportions, attention has been directed to the provision of a sufficiently resistant covering for the metal. This has been found in oil paint, a mechanical mixture of some pigment with linseed oil or linseed varnish, which, when laid in a thin layer on the surface of the iron, dries under the influence of oxygen, as a cohesive skin adhering to the metal. The solidity of the coating varies according to the pigment employed; and for a certain time the rust-forming influences are excluded from the metal, which thus remains rust-free.

In the course of time, after a lapse of months or years, according to the pigment and the quality of the linseed oil or varnish, sundry changes in the constitution of the paint skin are induced by the influence of air and rain; its original elasticity is impaired and gradually gives place to brittleness, the mass finally attaining a condition in which, though still hard, it can be easily removed by scraping. Subsequently the residual mass becomes still further decomposed, the combination between the pigment and its vehicle, the varnish, is destroyed, and the former is gradually removed by the action of rain, wind, and the scouring effect of the dust raised by the latter, so that the iron is exposed and will naturally begin to rust under the usual influences.

The causes of this final destruction of the paint reside in the chemical alterations completed in the linseed oil or varnish, and which are attributed to the conversion of the elastic and cohesive linoxic acid into brittle linoxin. It is not the author's intention to enter more minutely into the extremely delicate question of the chemical changes occurring in linseed oil, varnish and paint; and, in view of the divided opinions prevailing on this point, he will confine himself to confirming the fact that all such coatings, whether of linseed oil, varnish or paint, inevitably come to destruction, and that consequently no permanent protection, such as is afforded by enamelling, can possibly be attained. Moreover, no such permanence is exacted in practice, a durability of two to five years as the maximum being held sufficient for a paint composed of good materials and well laid on. Mention should not be omitted that it would be possible to prolong the life of a paint by drying at a higher temperature (50° to 60° C.) than usual, this treatment rendering the coating unusually hard, resistant and more durable than when left to dry in the air. Such a process is, however, beset with difficulties on the score of expense and inconvenience in application; and, moreover, could not be employed in the case of iron structures already erected, it being practically impossible to enclose an iron bridge, for example, in such a manner as to form around it a hot-air space for drying the applied paint. Consequently the idea must be given up, and the painting carried on in the ordinary way.

Like every other substance, whether of an organic or inorganic nature, even the best oil paint finally undergoes decomposition, and we are therefore restricted to the endeavour to elucidate the factors which will enable us to produce an anti-corrosive paint of the highest attainable durability.

The attempts made to attain this end are coeval with the employment of iron for building purposes; but it must be said that, on the one hand, requirements were exacted by consumers which it is impossible to fulfil, and that, on the other, statements were made and claims put forward by paint manufacturers, on behalf of their products, which the latter neither did, nor could, possess. Thus, for example, it is just as ridiculous to claim for a paint that it will prevent the further extension of any existing rust on iron as it is to expect a paint to permanently withstand the attacks of acid vapours or strong alkalis. No one acquainted with the composition of oil paints would ever expect them to be fireproof, because he would be aware that every organic substance—and oil certainly belongs to this category—is combustible, and will therefore be destroyed on the attainment of a certain temperature. It is consequently unreasonable to exact of a paint requirements it cannot possibly fulfil.

In the present condition of the question of protecting iron from rusting, the use of an oil paint, made from good materials, properly laid on and renewed in good time, is still the best means available for this purpose on iron structures. Moreover, the author is convinced that this will long continue to be the case, for he cannot conceive any other coating endowed with the same qualities and so easy both to apply and renew. The question as regards iron is just as difficult as it is easy in the case of wood, and that for the simple reason that two entirely different bodies are under consideration, one of which is able to absorb the oil or varnish of the paint and thereby to render the subsequent coatings adherent; whilst the other, iron, is impenetrable, and therefore the paint merely sticks to the surface. Consequently paints for iron must be of highly adhesive character in order that they may not be liable to dislodgment, since this would defeat their aim. Another important factor is the condition of the iron previous to the application of the first coating. The weight and dimensions of iron structures in general frequently precludes the possibility of keeping them under cover and sheltering them carefully from atmospheric influences; and it is undoubtedly the case that this affords the first opportunity for rusting to occur. This primary formation of rust then rapidly spreads and extends, and as we have seen that a single drop of water, let fall on iron and then left to evaporate, is sufficient to produce a spot of rust, it is not surprising to find that rolled or cast iron is considerably rusted after a very short period of storage. This rust is, from the outset, the most powerful antagonistic influence to the resistant capacity of the succeeding paint, unless it is entirely removed before the latter is applied. Other contributory influences are also at work, of which may be mentioned the electrical tensions due to rust, and referred to by Mulder in the following terms :—

“ Like all other chemical reactions, rusting is accompanied by electrical tensions set up in the affected objects. An iron article may remain bright for a long time, but whenever any portion is attacked by rust the latter will very quickly spread over the entire surface. It is therefore essential, for the proper upkeep of the article, that all rust spots, whatever their nature, should be, as early as possible, prevented from spreading ; and to this end they ought to be painted over again at once, without waiting for all the old paint to disappear before laying on an entirely fresh coat all over.

“ Then follows the method of protecting one metal by means of another, *viz.*, by bringing the metal to be protected into such a condition that it is less susceptible to attack. Thus strips of zinc or iron laid on the copper sheathing of a ship preserve the latter metal (Sir H. Davy’s discovery), and steel knives and other articles can be also protected from rusting by strips of zinc.

“ Such an application of zinc strips to large iron articles, whereby an intimate metallic contact is produced, cannot prove otherwise than advantageous. A galvanic action is set up between the zinc and the iron, in consequence of which the former metal is more readily oxidised than the latter, and the iron is thereby protected from rust. A galvanic appliance of this kind must be laid on the bare iron, and the zinc must not be painted, though all the iron is coated over. A piece of zinc here and there will be sufficient, and they can be attached in out-of-sight positions, so that the appearance of the article is not spoiled.

“ This leads me to the consideration of the places of maximum corrosion in large iron structures, *viz.*, wherever two pieces of iron are attached together. If two strips of platinum be cut from the same plate, immersed in the same liquid, and connected to the opposite ends of the wire of a galvanometer, a current will at once pass. Exactly the same effect is produced between two pieces of cast iron from the same foundry, and even from the same furnace charge, and the result is the greater in proportion to the difference in composition between the two pieces of iron involved. Screws, nails (rivets), form points of departure for the commencement and spread of rusting; and it is therefore chiefly the points of attachment that must be protected in large iron structures. I am of opinion that, in general, far too little attention is bestowed on the accurate fitting of the connections, and that it is believed that an external covering, to be obtained by repeated coatings with paint, is sufficient. What I mean is this: that it is much better, for the attainment of durability, to cover the connections well and not paint the large pieces all over than to adopt the converse plan. Galvanic action always goes on between an iron screw-bolt and its iron nut; nevertheless atmospheric moisture is sure to find its way in between, even though the screw seems to fit quite tight. The first and principal care must therefore be bestowed on the fitting together of the sections. If on joining up two masses of iron end for end the latter are rusted, the rust must first be cleared away; and the same applies to rivet holes, rivets, bolts and nuts, such parts of the surfaces of all these as are to come together and cannot afterwards be reached by the brush from the outside being next coated carefully over with a protective medium capable of lasting as long as the surfaces are to remain in contact. The coating must also be thick enough to fill up all open intermediate spaces, a matter of no great difficulty in the case of bolts, nuts, and rivets, but one that requires specially suitable means in order to render the adjacent surfaces air- and water-tight where large pieces are in question."

Although this utterance of Mulder has brought us into a different stage of the question, we will revert to the point that all rust must be carefully removed from iron before painting. This object can be attained in several ways :—

1. By scrubbing or scouring with some hard substance, such as pumice, emery, sand, coke, etc.
2. Scrubbing with wire brushes.
3. Pickling with acid.

The first and second of these methods can be employed without the least risk of exposing the iron to any further injury, the rust being removed by mechanical means, and nothing left behind to subsequently damage the paint in any way. The operation is often facilitated by the employment of substances able to penetrate the rust, which is thereby softened, as it were, and rendered more easy of removal.

To this class of substances belong the fats and oils, petroleum being especially preferred and used for this purpose. There is nothing objectionable in the practice, only it is necessary to take care that, after the rust has been got rid of, the surface of the iron is properly cleansed from any adherent fat, oil or petroleum; since the merest film of oily matter will prevent the paint from sticking on the metal, and will moreover give rise to bubbles or retard drying. Oil and petroleum may therefore be used in order to facilitate the removal of rust from iron, provided the oil or petroleum be subsequently eliminated completely. Nothing is more inimical to the durability of paint on iron than an insecure adherence of the first coat to the metal.

The pickling operation with dilute acids (mostly hydrochloric acid) referred to under 3 affords a fair guarantee for the exclusion of rust, but is, however, attended with inconveniences of another kind. It may, for example, easily happen that the acid is not completely washed off, in which event the residual traces not only prevent the adhesion of the paint to the metal, but also give rise to the formation of rust underneath the paint and thus render the latter of no avail.

The instructions issued by railway companies with regard to the painting of ironwork frequently contain paragraphs to the effect that the pieces must be washed over with or placed in a bath of dilute hydrochloric acid, which is followed by a bath of milk of lime; they are then to be laid in hot water, and when removed will dry readily by reason of the temperature thus attained by the metal. Now experience teaches that such operations are not performed with the care indispensable to success, and it is therefore very easy—and probably of frequent occurrence—for the rust flakes to retain some of the acid liquor, which not only exerts an oxidising action upon the iron but also prevents the due adhesion of the paint. Pickling is a well-known operation, and there is no lack of opinions, favourable and adverse, on this subject. Here again reference may be made to Mulder's insufficiently known and still less properly appreciated work on *Drying Oils*.

Mulder also denounces the method of cleaning iron by immersion in an acid bath, and says: "The layer of suboxide on the surface of both cast and hot-rolled iron plate should on no account be removed from large objects which are exposed to wind and weather and are intended to be painted. On this account I must decry the method wherein iron castings are cleaned by immersion in a bath of dilute hydrochloric or sulphuric acid, and then treated with milk of lime and warm water to wash the acid away again. Cast iron is never entirely perfect, the surface always containing small channels and depressions wherein the acid water lodges, so that complete neutralisation by milk of lime cannot afterwards be attained. Consequently the acid will sooner or later make its presence known by the reaction set up. It brings the iron into a constant state of susceptibility to rust, and increases its electrical power. If one end of a piece of bright iron be dipped in dilute sulphuric acid the portion left exposed to the air will rust very quickly, whereas another piece of similar iron in an adjacent situation will remain bright. Since, therefore, it is the acids which so greatly tend to favour the production of rust, I hold that iron should be kept apart from them as far as possible." All iron that is intended to be painted must be absolutely dry, because no paint will stick on a damp surface, especially when that surface is of iron. A distinction is here drawn between *damp* and *wet*, for it is absolutely impossible to apply a coat of paint to a wet surface of iron, *i.e.*, one covered with a layer—be it never so thin—of water, the paint simply refusing to adhere. On the other hand one *can* lay paint on a damp iron surface; only, when dry, the coat of paint does not stick, and therefore has no stability, but flakes or peels off.

It is highly probable that this cause is at the bottom of many failures, since the labourers generally entrusted with the painting of ironwork can hardly be expected to understand the meaning of absolute dryness. Another factor influencing the moisture on iron is the difference in temperature between the metal and the surrounding air. In the case of painting ironwork out of doors, especially sheet-iron roofing, the condensed atmospheric moisture plays an important part. It may readily happen that with a cloudless sky the temperature of the iron may—by reason of its property of radiating heat—fall below that of the air. In consequence of this tendency, outdoor painting on iron in the early morning of a spring day is attended with particular difficulty, owing either to the metal being already coated with moisture or becoming so as the sun rises. The same thing occurs in the evening at sunset, at which time a fresh deposition of moisture occurs—especially when a rapid fall in temperature takes place—and covers the fresh paint with water, which tends to counteract the adhesion of the paint to the metal. Consequently, since work must be commenced late and the coat must be dry early, it becomes necessary to employ very fluid and quick-drying paint; and this must also be applied as thinly and uniformly as possible, otherwise rapid drying will not result. Painting should not be begun until there is no longer any risk of the condensation of moisture on the metal; and the paint must be so far dry before evening that it sticks to the iron and cannot be wiped off, *i.e.*, the formation of a deposit of moisture between the paint and the metal is precluded. Apart from the essential freedom from rust, care is therefore necessary to see that all rebates, rivet heads, grooves, and rivets are thoroughly painted, since it is in these that water is most apt to collect and cause the rusting of the already painted iron. To prevent the grooves, rivets, etc., themselves from rusting, they should be painted over before being put into position, in order to ensure that no portion of the metallic surface liable to be rusted by moisture remains exposed.

The conclusion to be drawn from these premises is that only perfectly dry iron, free from rust and all traces of adherent acid, should be painted, if it is desired that the first coat shall possess that degree of adherence necessary to ensure the proper and durable union between the subsequent coats of paint and the metal. When the first coat does not stick to the iron the following coats cannot do so, however well they may adhere to the primary one; and consequently the entire layer will necessarily become loose.

The nature of the surface of iron is varied, that of sheet iron, and the rolled plate principally employed for bridges and other iron structures, being smooth, though frequently exhibiting a pitted appearance through defects in the outer skin produced by rolling. Cast iron is more or less rough, according to the method of casting and the grain of the sand used in making the moulds; and a rough surface presenting a large number of points of contact affords better opportunities for paint to adhere than a perfectly smooth one. The question then arises whether paint does really stick better on cast iron than on sheet or rolled iron; and Mulder has also devoted attention to the query, Which kind of surface on iron is the best for painting—a polished and lustrous or a rough one? According to this authority the question must be examined from different sides.

"Since the paint cannot penetrate the metal, a rough surface ensures adhesion. By 'rough' I imply unevenness, not uncleanliness. Such a rough surface consists of projections and depressions, the latter of which are filled by the paint, the points of contact, and consequently the adhesion, being increased just in the same manner as wood is held more firmly by a screw than by a nail. More than a clean rough surface cannot be desired for iron that is to be painted and then exposed to wind and weather, and upon which not only chemical but also mechanical influence will be at work. A coat of paint on rough iron will bend and contract when exposed to alternations of heat and cold, in just the same manner as paint on a smooth surface. The desired state of roughness is mostly met with in cast iron, and this form of the metal I consider excellently adapted for painting on. However, thick plates and bars of rolled iron are now used for large structures, and these goods instead of being rough have smooth surfaces. They are nevertheless covered with a superficial blue layer which scales off on bending, and can easily be removed by scraping. This layer, which I term simply 'sub-oxide,' is produced during hot rolling and is really a mixture of iron with ferro-ferric oxide. It is useful in resisting the tendency to rust, but diminishes the adhesion of the paint. In the case of cast iron the sub-oxide is no longer pure but mixed with small particles of loam from the moulds, so that castings often exhibit a sandy appearance on the surface, and the question arises whether this also does not tend to decrease the adhesion of the paint. It is true that everything that can be removed from the surface of cast iron by scrubbing with wire brushes must be got rid of before painting; but whatever remains unloosened by this treatment has a greater degree of cohesion with the iron than any paint can possibly attain. The sub-oxide layer on rolled iron merits closer attention. Whether it should be removed or not before painting is a point on which opinions differ. I myself have eliminated this blue coating from the surface of iron by means of sulphuric acid, and found it a by no means easy task, requiring a good deal of labour and much acid. On washing the cleaned iron with a copious supply of water and drying it in the air, it will quickly acquire a thick coating of rust, whilst the untreated plates of the same iron remain perfectly free from rust. So far, therefore, the treatment with sulphuric acid is certainly disadvantageous, for the reasons already given. Finally the question of the advisability of removing the sub-oxide on rolled iron resolves itself into the following query: 'Does this protective layer become loosened after some time has elapsed?' If this be the case it must certainly be considered injurious, though one is not therefore necessarily compelled to resort to acid. As a matter of fact it does break away in the thicker parts when the iron is bent, and also comes off after a while even when bending has not been practised. Since, however, all that loosens can be removed beforehand by scraping and scrubbing with wire brushes, I am of opinion that the use of acid should be discarded because of its undoubted highly injurious action."

BOTTOMING OR GROUNDING THE IRON.

Having now elucidated the conditions under which the preliminary preparation of iron for painting should and ought to be carried out, we will now bestow our attention to the grounding or application of the first coat of paint on the metal. We are here confronted by the question: "How, in view of the circumstance that the union of the paint and the substratum depends entirely on adhesion, is the operation to be performed?"

Originally and for a long period red lead (minium) alone was employed for this purpose, and even now the use of this pigment is frequently enjoined. The experience gained in the course of time with the substance in question has been very differently judged by different observers, and it is impossible to display the whole question clearly. The reason for this confusion is mainly due to the fact that the various observations on the durability of red lead grounding were not carried out with the necessary degree of accuracy, and that comparative experiments with this and other grounding paints are lacking. The following are some of the opinions that have been expressed with regard to the matter under consideration:—

Simon states that "red lead has been used for this purpose for many years, and has generally given satisfaction. In gasworks, however, and wherever sulphur compounds, whether in the gaseous condition or in aqueous solution, occur, the employment of red lead, or of any other lead paint, is naturally precluded. Instances are also known where red lead paint has failed to answer, but they are somewhat rare, and the rusting or corrosion of the iron is, for the most part, attributable to other causes: defective preparation and cleansing of the surface, bad linseed varnish, etc. Opponents of red lead ascribe its alleged injurious action to electrical excitation, such as occurs in the union of lead with iron; but it is not proved that such a galvanic current can be induced when, instead of metallic lead, only the peroxide of this metal comes into contact with iron. If an abundant formation of rust did really occur under these circumstances, many thousands of instances of such destruction must have been recorded during the many years' practical experience that have been gained on this subject, and, in such event, the last word would certainly have long since been spoken on the matter."

The corrosion of iron observed by Jouvin is attributable not to red lead but to mercury oxide and mercury sulphate. These compounds were employed as an admixture to paint for ships' bottoms (anti-fouling composition) in order to prevent the development of the usual incrustations of *mollusca*, but their effect was to set up an electrochemical reaction, in consequence of which iron passed into solution and a crystalline deposit of lead was formed on the surface of the metal. The parts of the red lead paint that did not come into contact with sea-water remained perfectly intact.

With reference to the corrosion of iron by red lead, instances occurring on the keels of warships are mentioned by Jouvin in the following terms:—

In the case of red lead paints, either simple or in admixture with mercury oxide or mercury sulphate, the surface of warships, below the water line, becomes almost entirely covered with pustules of hydrated iron oxide. The pustules are shaped like a boil or tear, and occasionally blisters are formed resembling those developing in paint exposed to a hot sun.

On pricking these blisters they are found to contain either air (?) or a liquid, the latter having a sour and astringent taste (iron chloride), and the bare surface of the iron is covered over with lustrous crystals of lead. Each blister has induced the formation of a lead tree, and is become a nest of crystallisation. Jouvin finds the liquid contained in the blisters to consist of a very acid chloride of iron, and he attributes the reduction of the lead oxide by iron to electrical action.

Simon originally formed the opinion that the mercury compounds present in many anti-corrosive paints set up an electrochemical reaction, but subsequently found the same development of blisters in paints containing pure red lead only. He placed a number of iron plates, coated with different kinds of paint, in an accumulator case, where they were immersed in a weak solution of ammonium chloride (sal ammoniac). The plates were also connected, by means of wires forming a closed circuit, with a few large Leclanché cells. At the end of a few days there developed on the plate painted with red lead a number of blisters, which, at first small, continued to increase in size, some of them hanging like tear-drops; in short, exhibiting precisely the same appearance as those observed by Jouvin on the keels of certain warships. The contents of these blisters also consisted of exceedingly acid iron (ferrous) chloride, and the surface of the iron was covered with beautiful lead crystals. This observation demonstrates that the corrosion of iron in this way is undoubtedly ascribable to electrical excitation. Hence the assumption that sundry phenomena displayed in the case of paints on iron surfaces are due to electrical action would appear to be not altogether wide of the mark. The instance cited shows that on the one hand the pigment in the paint, and electricity on the other, effected the corrosion of the iron. It is nevertheless worthy of note that the red lead paint on the ships in question remained perfectly intact in the parts where it did not come into contact with water.

A. Landolt says:—

"Bottoming coats of paint of red lead or other covering pigment certainly exhibit the advantage of forming a good, quick-drying and hard layer, which adheres closely to the iron and also absorbs and unites with the subsequent finishing coats. Their great covering power, however, is attended with a certain considerable risk, in that defects and imperfections in the constructive material are only too easily concealed. Moreover, no information can be obtained as to whether the surface of the metal was really quite clean and free from rust before the first coat was laid on. The recommendation made by Professor von Tetmayr that, in future, in place of employing red lead or similar covering paints for bottoming, a perfectly transparent paint should be selected and used is exceedingly appropriate and highly advisable. It should be possible—at least so experiments made on this point lead one to hope—to prepare a suitable painting material which will fulfil all the requirements of the case, *viz.*, quick drying, sufficiently tough and elastic, adhering well to the iron, able to absorb and unite with succeeding layers of paint, and exerting no injurious influence on the metal."

Two principal defects are alleged against red lead as a bottoming paint: (1) That, in consequence of an insufficiency of oil or varnish, it rapidly dries up and becomes hard, the result being that the paint is quickly destroyed unless protected from rust-forming influences by a second superimposed coat of paint; (2) that it exerts a certain influence both on the underlying metal and on the subsequent layers of paint as well.

It is perfectly true that, of all the pigments hitherto known and used, red lead requires the smallest proportion of oil or varnish in order to form a distributable and well covering paint. A matter less generally known, however, even to those most interested, is that the sole protection afforded by the pigment is dependent on the properties of the linseed oil or varnish, and on the use of a pigment incapable of acting on the same, *i.e.*, inert and unalterable. This question will be more thoroughly discussed later on, and all that will be said at the present juncture is that the foregoing axiom should form the fundamental principle in all paints for iron. Hence, no protective or rust-preventing properties—rust-destroying does not come into consideration, being an impossibility—can be ascribed to the pigments themselves.

We know that red lead forms a paint that strongly adheres to and hardens on iron, which it preserves from rusting; and we also know that the same paint is very durable when covered over by subsequent coatings of good paint. On the other hand red lead paint by itself must, by reason of its small proportion of oil, soon perish under atmospheric influences, and is therefore unsuitable for use as a finishing paint. Now there is another point of great importance in connection with painting on iron, namely, the teaching of experience that although a paint rich in oil or varnish may be applied over a paint containing a high proportion of pigment to varnish, yet the converse practice must not be pursued; and this is the reason why the idea of painting with red lead was originally hit upon. This experience primarily applied only to wood, but it seems also to have held good for iron. The words "it seems" are used advisedly, since no reliable experience to the contrary appears to have been gained, or at any rate published.

For the most part the first coating with red lead is applied to the iron before it leaves the constructor's works, and this is frequently stipulated for in contracts. It has, however, been found that under this first coat, whatever the paint employed, rust may be present, though concealed and only making itself evident at a later stage, when so extensively developed as to show through the paint. Consequently, in order to enable these rusty places to be detected on taking delivery of the ironwork, it has been proposed to replace such covering paints by a coating of some transparent material which would allow the rust to show through clearly. Before proceeding, however, to the consideration of this proposal, we will deal with the manner in which bottoming iron with a first coat of red lead paint is generally performed.

In most cases, though not always, iron structures receive a first coat of iron or red lead oil paint in the works when completed, *i.e.*, when the individual girders, stays, etc., have been riveted and brought into the most suitable condition for delivery. Nobody, however, troubles about whether the girders have been riveted out of doors—where they are exposed to the air and, more especially, to the deposition of moisture brought about by fluctuations of temperature—or under cover; and still less is any thought bestowed on the painting of the rivet holes, the stems of the rivets or the underside of the rivet heads. In many works the paint is laid on by day labourers who simply daub it on, often without suitable brushes, and the work is regarded as properly done if the metal is outwardly covered over with paint. Now the author readily admits that painting the rivet holes, and the rivets themselves, is a very tedious and often expensive task, and that very often there is insufficient space available for the rivets to dry after painting. Nevertheless, he holds that when it is a question of properly painting ironwork so as to fulfil the requirement that all parts of the metal shall be thoroughly covered, and that the connections, in particular, shall be so carefully painted as to prevent the incursion of water, then all these considerations of reducing the cost of production to a minimum must be put into the background.

It may readily happen in the case of iron structures that the saving of a few farthings per square yard in labour results in inferior workmanship, causing the object of the whole to be defeated.

Turning now to the material employed for the paint used in constructors' workshops, here again cheapness in the paint, or in the constituent pigment, and oil or varnish, is looked upon as the main desideratum, and the seller who makes the cheapest offer gets the order, without any regard to the fact that considerable differences may exist in the quality of the materials and that the quality is made to fit in with the price obtained, not the price with the purity and suitability of the material.

For bottoming ironwork, either red lead or iron oxide (colcothar) is prescribed, according to the opinion held by those in authority; which pigment is really the best, there are no reliable data available to show. Both vary considerably in quality, red lead being adulterated with heavy spar, brick dust, etc., whereby its value, covering power and durability are impaired; whilst commercial iron oxide ranges in percentage of pure oxide from 70 to 98 per cent., its durability and value as a paint depending directly on the proportion of this constituent. Hence the causes of defects in the paints may to some extent be sought in the quality of the pigment employed. Greater influence, however, is exercised by the vehicle or medium—linseed varnish—and here we have nowa-days, unfortunately, to frequently come in contact with varnishes adulterated with resin oils and similar adjuncts, which, on account of their cheapness, are displacing the pure oil varnish. Nevertheless linseed varnish, when pure, still remains unsurpassed as a medium for pigments, not merely for use on iron, but for paints of all kinds. The pure varnish will last for a number of years, and forms a solid elastic layer, impervious to wet; whereas, if sophisticated with resin oil or other substitutes, it becomes cracked and brittle within a short time after drying, allows water to gain access to the underlying iron, and finally becomes pulverulent and is easily rubbed off.

The very first thing to consider, therefore, in the painting of iron structures is the composition of the paint materials; and the operation should not be performed merely with the idea of covering the object over with a coat of paint which will conceal any defective places, but rather gone about in a manner adapted to ensure the attainment of the object in view. Can the paint, however, be considered as in any way satisfactory when the man entrusted with the work merely stirs up the dry colour with some linseed varnish, in the paint-pot, by means of a brush, ignoring the proportions of the mixture which he then daubs on the iron as "paint"? No one who knows that fine grinding is an essential condition for the preparation of a good paint can possibly regard such perfunctory treatment as satisfactory.

Consequently, the primary consideration in constructors' workshops ought to be to secure good materials for painting on iron; and, secondly, that the painting is done in such a manner as to really afford protection against rust, and not merely comply with the letter of the customer's instructions, that "the iron shall receive a coat of paint". Of course the operation will be rather more expensive, but the expense must be borne in order that the frequency of rusting and its attendant danger to human life may be successfully combated. Some extremely interesting and noteworthy contributions on *The Preservation of the Iron of Iron Structures* have been made by Professor von Tetmayr, though the author does not agree with all the views expressed therein.

"In my opinion," says von Tetmayr, "this matter has not been kept sufficiently abreast with the progressive technological development of the main subject, and reform seems to be necessary, especially since the introduction of forged iron for use in iron structures. A permanent supervision of the cleaning and working up of the iron is impracticable in the workshop, whilst, on the other hand, the employment of forged iron actually necessitates increased care in this respect. Bearing this in mind, contractors supplying such iron structures should be absolved from the necessity of painting the metal in the manner now customary, and instead be obliged to apply a coating of some transparent anti-corrosive composition previous to delivery. This ensures the advantage of the entire structure being accessible to inspection, whereby the quality of the workmanship can be more easily supervised, and rusty or otherwise defective places be cleaned and made good before the coating or covering of paint is put on. These advantages are lost when the iron has been bottomed with rust-coloured oxides, since these conceal accidental shortcomings, patches covered over with putty, and defects in the material, the colour of the pigment impeding the detection of rust, even when the outer coats of paint have been laid on thin and are of the appreciated light grey tint. Nothing should be used for bottoming but a light-coloured, quick-drying varnish of sufficiently elastic toughness, with good powers of adhesion and containing driers (?), the varnish being, moreover, free from added bases and from constituents capable of attacking iron. That iron structures properly varnished in this manner will withstand external influences, at least as well as those bottomed with the usual covering paints, is shown by the new bridge over the Neckar at Heilbronn, which was not painted until after the lapse of a year.

"If the structure has been well bottomed with a good drying oil, and the coating patched after mounting, the second coat can be applied. The paint employed for this purpose should be capable of being laid on thinly, endowed with good covering power and permanent adherent properties, sufficiently tough and able to resist atmospheric influences and the effects of variations of temperature to which it may be exposed on bridges crossing streets or railways, iron structures in busy cities and industrial centres, railway stations, etc., as well as to withstand the action of smoke fumes. The colour of this outer coat should be chosen with a view to facilitating the detection of rusty patches by contrast. If bottomed further in the usual manner, any well covering, readily distributable paint possessing the qualities of indifference towards iron, sufficient degree of toughness, durability, and proper adhesive power, may be used, provided there is no question of exposure to smoke gases. On the other hand, if such gases will come into action, the bottoming paint must, in addition, be endowed with a high capacity of resistance towards the influence of sulphur dioxide or sulphuric acid, and, moreover, be in all cases able to attract to itself, and permanently secure, the adhesion of the upper coat of paint. A sufficient degree of toughness or elasticity, to enable the paint to follow, without injury to itself, the fluctuations in the length of the parts owing to the expansion and stress produced by wind and traffic, is necessary to ensure durability. When full consideration is bestowed on the difficulties in the way of thoroughly cleaning and properly repainting an iron structure already erected and containing a number of more or less inaccessible parts; when, in addition, the troublesome smoke, the influence of weather, and, finally, the moral force of the workman, are borne in mind, it will be convincingly evident that, other conditions being equal, preference ought certainly to be given to the paints exhibiting the greatest durability through the conjoint effect of their resistance to atmospheric agencies, their adhesive power and toughness."

The injurious effects of atmospheric influences and alternations of temperature are already known; they make their appearance in consequence of careless workmanship or of working in damp weather, and occasionally are induced through the defective adherence or by the brittleness of the dried paint—such paints cracking, curling up, and finally peeling off.

In concluding our remarks on this subject it is only necessary to add that there is a certain degree of justification in recommending the substitution of a transparent coating for covering paint on iron structures, previous to official inspection. In addition to red lead, iron oxide is used as a bottoming pigment for iron, and is unobjectionable. It requires a much larger proportion of oil or varnish than red lead does in order to form a distributable paint, and therefore belongs to the richer class of paints.

Bottoming with Linseed Oil or Linseed Varnish.

Tetmayr's proposal to coat iron with a transparent layer of linseed oil or linseed varnish is not a novel idea nor is it claimed as such. The method cannot be denied a certain amount of justification, if only for the reason that it allows rusty places to be readily detectable when delivery is taken of the ironwork. Many practical men, however, object to it on the ground that the coating does not dry hard, at least within a short time; and because they fear that such a coating, covered by a layer of paint, would violate the axiom of experience to the effect that a paint rich in varnish should never be topped by one in which pigment predominates, and would lead to a rapid destruction of the paint by cracking and peeling.

Mulder, also, objects to the painting of iron with linseed oil. He says: " Wood exhibits the great advantage over iron, in painting, in that it absorbs the paint, whereas iron is incapable of so doing. It is therefore advisable to apply a first coating of linseed oil to new wood, since the subsequent coat of paint comes into connection with the substratum; whereas iron, like all other metals, is devoid of this advantage, no penetration of the linseed oil or paint taking place, and the mutual adhesion between the dried coating of paint and the metal being the sole means of connection between them. Hence it follows that the first problem to be solved in the painting of iron is, necessarily, not which paint sticks best on another coat of paint, but which paint adheres most firmly to iron.

"Now this question tends at the same time to cast doubts on the utility of boiled linseed oil as a first coating for iron. Linseed oil penetrates into wood and is therefore useful in this case, but as the same does not happen in the case of iron, the utility of linseed oil is less for the latter material than for wood. Moreover, boiled linseed oil dries at length to a not very hard varnish, and the employment of this oil as a first coating for iron is therefore inimical to the adhesion of the after coats of paint. Hence it follows that iron should be coated with a paint which both adheres firmly to the metal and dries hard, all intermediate layers being avoided. By using a fairly thin paint for the first application the same results as are yielded by linseed oil can be more or less attained. The linseed oil of the thinner paint will penetrate into the pores of the iron [Mulder here is self-contradictory] just as well as pure linseed oil, because thin paint —whereby the ordinary consistency of paints for first coatings is implied—contains an excess of that oil.

" The connection between paint and metal rests solely on adhesion. Hence it is sufficiently evident that the first point at issue is not 'which paint is best adapted to overlay paint?' but rather 'what paints adhere most firmly to iron?' a question which at once casts a doubt upon the utility of boiled linseed oil for this purpose.

"Since boiled linseed oil dries, on wood, to form a not very hard layer of varnish, it cannot be anything else but prejudicial to the adhesion of the subsequent paint, on iron, when the paint is separated from the metal solely by a layer of such linseed varnish, especially since the latter is—according to instructions—applied to the warm iron, a method which, in turn, cannot promote adhesion.

"This meaning will become clear if we imagine what would take place if the iron were coated with copal varnish. It is true that the residual varnish left by the drying of the linseed oil is tougher, and in so far better, than copal varnish; still it is a varnish all the same. Now it is essential that the iron should be coated with a very adhesive paint, which will afterwards dry hard and fast, and that all intermediate layers should be avoided and dispensed with; consequently the use of linseed oil as a first coating for iron is to be discouraged. My own [Mulder's] view is that the use of this varnish for iron was selected on account of its suitability for woodwork, without the respective conditions of the two cases being taken into account, since far from being applicable for metal it is, as already stated, injurious."

As has been previously remarked, no reliable results are available for reference, and no collection of experiences in this matter has yet been made. Since, moreover, it is impossible to complete researches of this kind within a comparatively short time, the author has made a series of experiments with iron plates coated over with boiled, good-drying linseed varnish and afterwards painted with red lead paints, the drying of the plates under the usual conditions being replaced by drying at 60° to 70° C. Notwithstanding that many of the plates received several coats of red lead paint, which very quickly dried hard, none of the samples showed injurious results of any kind, no cracks or fissures could be discerned with the aid of a magnifying glass, and the author therefore believes himself justified in concluding that *the application of a covering of varnish to iron does not exert any unfavourable influence on the subsequent overlying coat of paint*. Of course it must not be forgotten that a thin covering of varnish is no coat of oil paint, and that already on this account no unfavourable action is likely to occur.

On the contrary, he holds that *to cover iron with linseed varnish is highly advantageous when the application is made in a very thin layer*. Such a layer will also quickly set hard, whereas thicker strata remain tacky for a long time; and the former is the more serviceable of the two, since the subsequent coat of paint will adhere just as firmly, with less risk (if any) of cracking.

In this matter of varnishing, the author would go beyond the proposals already made on other sides, and recommends the production of an extremely thin layer of varnish on iron by laying it on hot, since in this condition the varnish is of greater fluidity and is well known to be an excellent means of preserving iron, drying much quicker and forming a much thinner covering than if applied cold. Moreover, greater care is required in laying-on cold varnish, on account of the increased tendency to form layers of irregular thickness; and it may easily happen that the varnish on the vertical surfaces of a structure may be dry a long time before that on the horizontal parts has ceased to be tacky, or even quite wet. It is well known that if linseed varnish be applied to a smooth horizontal surface as thinly as possible, and the article then turned on edge so as to bring that surface into the vertical position, a large part of the varnish will run off and be wasted. This reason alone is sufficient to render the use of a minimum quantity of varnish advisable, and it should really, for the attainment of this object, be applied by rubbing the surface over with a rag dipped in the liquid. Even this slight coating will be sufficient to protect iron from rusting until such time as it is painted. It should also be applied to all bolts and rivets, as well as to the larger parts of the structure, and forms a very cheap method of protecting these small articles.

Thus, if a large number of bolts and rivets be placed in a sieve and then dipped into hot linseed varnish, left to drain, and afterwards dried in a room warmed up to 60° to 70° C., the coating will be thoroughly dry in ½ to 1 hour, and, what is more important, hard. Any further coat of paint will stick on well, and all danger of evil consequences arising during protracted drying is precluded.

In going beyond the recommendations made by others the author would also advise the employment of a temperature of 50° to 60° C. in drying the coating of hot varnish already proposed. He is of opinion that there can be no great difficulties in the way of arranging a hot-air chamber into which the varnished articles could be carried on trucks or rollers, and removed in the same manner on the expiration of the short time requisite for the drying process. By this means the objects aimed at in bottoming iron would be attained, *viz.*, the production of *an elastic and thin, but nevertheless hard and resistant, colourless coating, which facilitates the detection of any rusty patches present, and to which any subsequent coating of paint will firmly and securely adhere.*

FINISHING COATS OF PAINT ON IRON.

The principal part in the painting of iron is the application of the first coat, since, unlike wood, there is no absorption of paint into the pores of the substructure, and the adhesion of the subsequent coats is necessarily restricted to the surface of the paint or varnish already in position ; consequently everything depends on the latter.

Both when iron-, or lead oxide paint, or linseed varnish alone is employed, an opportunity is afforded of making good any defects, in the application of the second coat of paint. These defects are most likely to occur on the parts most difficult of access, and where consequently the carelessness of the workmen has a wider scope. Among such places are, for example, the under and inner sides of girders, bolt heads and nuts, rivets, etc., just precisely where extreme care in painting is necessary to prevent the subsequent incursion of water. A proper check over the workmanship can be secured by choosing paints of different gradations of tone for the several coatings, a step which will enable defective places to be detected.

All coats of paint require a certain time to dry, the exact period ranging from six hours to thirty-six and even forty-eight hours. This does not, however, mean that the paint is hard by that time, though it is dry, *i.e.*, no longer tacky when touched, but still yields to the pressure of the finger, and if the hand be placed on the painted surface for some time an impress will be left behind on withdrawal, owing to the softening of the paint by the warmth of the hand. After a longer or shorter period of time has elapsed, however, this condition disappears and the paint will have become hard. The hardening is effected partly through the absorption of atmospheric oxygen, by which the drying oil is converted into a hard, brittle substance, and partly also on account of the action of the pigment on this dried layer of linseed oil or varnish. Pigments of this kind include all the lead colours, red lead, white lead, etc., which combine with the oil varnish to quickly form a hard mass, the degree of hardness being the greater on account of the preponderance of pigment over oil in the paint.

On the other hand some pigments, such as iron oxide, graphite, zinc white, and many others, require much larger proportions of oil or varnish in order to form a distributable paint, and these pigments have no influence on the hardening of the paint, since they do not enter into combination with the vehicle or medium. The presence of this larger percentage of linseed oil, or linseed varnish, in such paints renders them much more suitable as finishing coats, since the medium is retained in a soft elastic condition for a longer time, and is better able to conform, without injury, to the expansion and contraction set up in iron structures by changes of temperature.

The following opinions of experts on the suitability of different pigments for painting on iron may be cited:—

With regard to *white lead* Dr. A. Landolt says:—

"White lead, used alone and in a pure state, is not a good paint for ironwork. Apart from the fact that the pure white of the pigment will speedily become impaired and dirty, the paint also sets very hard in a short time, the elasticity disappears, and cracks are formed. For this reason white lead is mixed with other substances, in the first place to impart colour to the paint, and furthermore for the purpose of increasing its power of absorbing oil, this latter, or linseed varnish, being the principal agent determining the durability of the coating.

"The more oil required by a pigment in order to produce a distributable paint, the better will it be adapted for use on iron, especially in the open air, provided it satisfies the other conditions, of covering power, neutrality, and capacity of resistance to acids.

"For the same reasons," says Landolt, "as operate in the case of white lead, red lead paint is unsuitable as a finishing coat, particularly where the final or tone coating has to be laid on at once or after a relatively short time has elapsed.

"Red lead paint soon becomes very hard, and cracks under the influence of the air. An old and well-proved rule teaches that bottoming paints in all cases, and especially on iron, must be hard and low in varnish, in order that the following coat of paint, richer in varnish, may be durable. Red lead forms a paint poor in oil, quickly setting hard, and endowed with great adhesive power, on which the subsequent coat of paint will stick fast."

Mulder (the author of the work on drying oils already referred to) expresses himself on *iron oxide* as follows:—

"Iron oxide, when mixed with oil, is a perfectly neutral body, without the least influence on the drying of the oil, whether the latter be raw or boiled, even when the mixture of oil and oxide is heated to 100°C. for two consecutive hours. Consequently, in this respect iron oxide is of very little value as a pigment (?). [This is incorrect; it is only as a drier that the oxide is of no use.] The same also applies to zinc white. On the other hand, white lead and red lead greatly assist the oxidation of linseed oil, the last named in particular acting both by the lead oxide it contains and by an actual surrender of oxygen.

"Practice confirms this [and also that Mulder started with the erroneous assumption that the pigment, to be good, must necessarily exert a drying action]. When boiled oil, whether alone or mixed up as paint along with some neutral substance like iron oxide, zinc oxide, etc., is left or kept in an open vessel, a skin forms on the surface. With white lead or litharge this skin forms sooner and attains a greater thickness; red lead paint sets to a thick mass in the vessel; and, whilst putty made solely from chalk does not become hard even after several months, it very soon hardens if white lead be present, and white lead putty quickly sets as hard as stone, even when kept under water."

With regard to iron oxide Landolt states that this substance "uniting with a much larger proportion of linseed varnish should, when used as a bottoming paint, receive an addition of oil of turpentine; *i.e.*, the first coat should be low in varnish, the final coat richer. The poor results obtained with iron oxide paints may, when bad materials are used, be very often due to the non-observance of this rule."

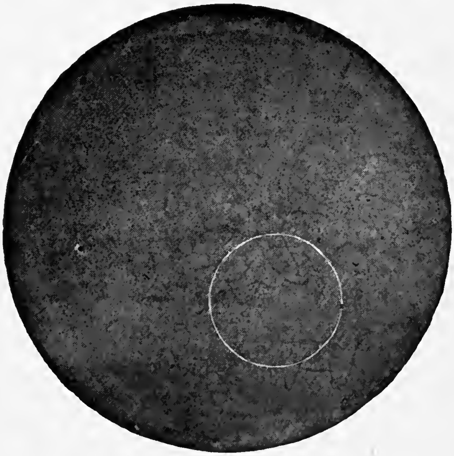


FIG. 37 (natural size).

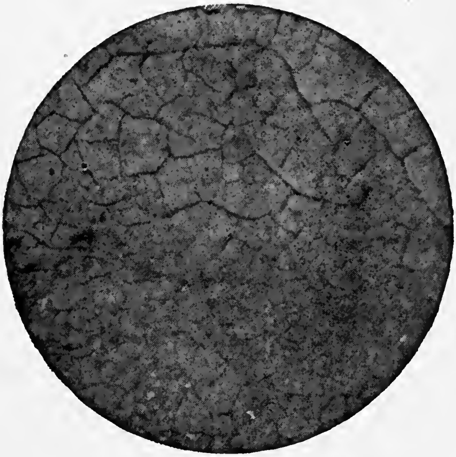


FIG. 38 (magnified).—Fine (hair) cracks in a ten-year-old white lead paint.

Further references to the utility of a large proportion of oil or varnish in paint will be made in the following section on "anti-corrosive paints".

Every oil paint, no matter whether the contained pigment absorbs much or little oil or varnish, in time comes to destruction. The actual period, however, at which this occurs varies, and depends on the amount and quality of the varnish used. All paints perish at some time or other, either as a result of cracking, or in consequence of progressive oxidation, leaving the paint finally in the condition of a powder loosely adherent to the substructure. The cracks are at least quite as prejudicial to the preservation of the iron as the coherent but permeable coat of paint, since they admit moisture to the metal and engender rust, whilst the more or less absorbent paint also takes up and retains water, and may therefore also give rise to the formation of rust. Hence, in order to ensure the preservation of the iron, the formation of cracks

FIG. 39 (natural size).—Blisters, formed by warmth, in a red lead paint poor in varnish, topping a richer bottom coat. The blisters have burst, collapsed, and left the metal bare.

must, as far as possible, be obviated by the selection of paint of a suitable character. When, however, cracks have once commenced to form, a fresh coat of paint must be laid on at once, and this also applies to cases where the paint has perished, a condition easily recognised by the dull earthy appearance of the coat and the ease with which it can be removed. In this respect no difference exists between the two, except that a layer of weathered paint is capable of taking up a good deal of oil or varnish, and the formation of cracks is entirely precluded, whereas in the other case this is always liable to recur.

Fig. 40 (magnified).—Blisters, formed by warmth, in a red lead paint poor in varnish, covering a bottom coat rich in oil.

The time taken by oil paints in drying has already been stated as from six to thirty-six, and even forty-eight hours, and depends on the drying properties of the oil or varnish, the influence exerted by the pigment, and—last, but by no means least—the external conditions of temperature and weather. It may also readily happen that one and the same paint may dry at one time in six hours, but require at another time twelve hours and even longer. For this divergence the warmth and moisture content of the external air are to blame, paint that normally dries in twelve hours drying in six hours under a hot sun and in a good draught, whilst in foggy weather it will still be wet at the end of twenty-four hours. This fact has been demonstrated by innumerable experiments, as has also the drying influence of the pigments themselves. Thus white lead and red lead, when ground up with a linseed varnish drying in six hours, cause it to dry quicker, *e.g.*, in five hours; whilst on the other hand the incorporation of ochre or iron oxide in the same varnish will produce a paint taking twenty-four hours to dry; and there are other pigments, lampblack for example, which will prevent this otherwise fairly quick varnish from drying at all when used as paint. The pigment, as well as the conditions of temperature and moisture, must therefore be taken into account in testing the drying capacity of a paint.

Fig. 41 (natural size).—Cracks in an oil paint, with another, intermediate layer.

With regard to the behaviour of a pigment, its capacity for absorbing linseed oil or linseed varnish, and its influence on the drying and hardening of the latter constituent, the most suitable paint for the preservation of iron structures will be the one that *contains a pigment requiring a large admixture of linseed oil or linseed varnish in order to render it distributable, and which exerts no influence, favourable or the reverse, on the drying and hardening of same.*

In applying paint to either wood or iron the following rule holds good :—

FIG. 42 (magnified).—Cracks in an oil paint, with another, intermediate layer.

Each previous coat of paint must be perfectly dry before the following coat is laid on. If a fresh coat be applied on one that is not yet quite dry, risk is incurred of the paint being drawn, under the influence of heat (the sun), whereby blisters are produced. These may vary in depth, and if they extend to the lowermost coating may leave the surface of the metal exposed underneath the blister, so that when the latter cracks, under mechanical influences or on further drying, the unrestricted admission of moisture to the iron ensues.

Hence rust inevitably follows, and, as it progressively increases, lifts the paint from the iron in many places, and finally causes it to fall off. The way in which this blistering proceeds in paint, by the action of underlying rust, can be seen from Fig. 17, where a simple coat of varnish was laid on a rusted sheet-iron surface. The varnish sank into the comparatively thin layer of rust, which it lifted up so that the surface is covered over with a large number of small bubbles, which can be loosened by touching them and will then leave the rusty surface of the metal exposed. That, as is asserted by the opponents of the practice of bottoming iron with linseed oil or linseed varnish, this treatment contributes to the formation of blisters the author would deny, since he has been unable to detect any such blistering; and he believes rather that it only occurs when the sun has acted direct and continuously, for a fairly long time, upon the paint.

FIG. 43 (natural size).—Effect of water on wet paint, with immediate formation of rust.

Highly inimical to oil paint on iron is the presence of intermediate layers of other paints. It seems hardly likely that any one would apply a coating of size paint over oil paint; nevertheless, such a thing is *possible*, and, owing to the modern tendency to effect economies by the use of cheap materials, is an instance that might occur.

Figs. 41 and 42 illustrate the condition into which a coat of oil paint may fall when a bottom coat of red lead paint has been covered with a layer of size paint, and this again topped by a coat of red lead paint. From considerations of economy wood is frequently painted over with a coating of size paint before the oil colour is laid on.

FIG. 44 (magnified).—Effect of water on wet paint, with immediate formation of rust.

Just as in the case of a first coat on iron, the subsequent layers of paint *must only be laid on when the surface is perfectly free from water and moisture, and must be equally protected from water and rain.* The effect of a layer of water upon a perfectly fresh coat of paint can be seen from Figs. 43 and 44.

Here the fresh surface of the paint was suffused with water, whereupon a portion of the paint collected on the surface of the water and ran off, whilst the rest remained on the iron, but no longer as a coherent stratum, part of the iron surface being laid bare. Partial contraction of the paint also set in.

The action of fine rain-drops is illustrated in Figs. 45 and 46. The paint was not quite wet, but still far from completely dry, when the drops impinged upon it; and their impact partly dispersed the oil colour, thus giving rise to a whole series of depressions, which in the case of horizontal surfaces would afford a more or less permanent lodgment for the water, and facilitate its penetration into the layer of paint.

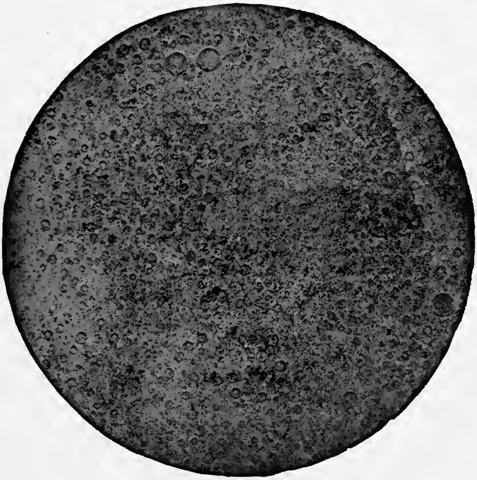


Fig. 45 (natural size).—Effect of fine spray on a wet layer of oil paint.

Applying Paint.

In the case of iron, as in painting on other surfaces, it is also necessary to *lay the paint on as thinly as possible consistent with covering the object, and on no account should the coating be so thick as to form a wrinkled instead of a smooth surface on drying.* If the paint be too thick or too thickly laid on—and very thin paint is liable to run off altogether when applied to vertical surfaces—it will spread evenly, in accordance with its natural tendency, but does not dry in a normal manner. The upper layer skins over before the underneath parts have begun to dry, and when drying does ensue there, the skin contracts and forms wrinkles and folds, which spoil the smoothness of the surface and present an opportunity for the retention of rain water and condensed moisture. In the end these wrinkles and folds easily split, thus enabling the water to gain admission to the inferior strata of the paint, whereby the durability of the coating is imperilled.

FIG. 46 (magnified).—Effect of fine spray (rain) on a wet coat of paint.

The number of coats of paint required to protect the substratum depends on the covering power of the paint. This power implies the quantity of paint necessary, per given unit of surface, to completely mask the colour and superficial characteristics (not form) of the underlying material.

Now the various pigments differ considerably in covering power; but the matter must be regarded from two standpoints, and it is preferable to speak of *absolute* and *relative* covering power. White lead, to take one example, possesses a greater *absolute* covering power than zinc white, but the *relative* covering power of the latter exceeds that of the former; that is to say, where weight is left out of the question, white lead covers better than zinc white. However, when the matter is approached from the point of view of the *weight* of white lead required to cover a given surface, then it is found that the conditions are reversed, *i.e.*, a given super-

FIG. 47 (natural size).

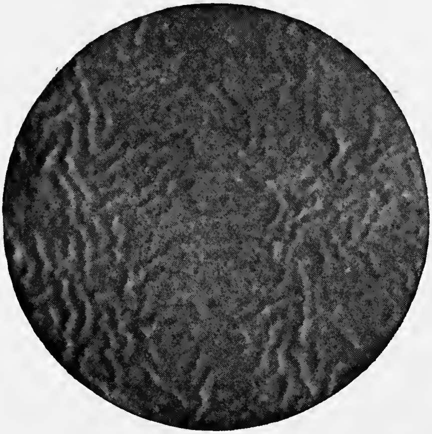


FIG. 48 (magnified).—Wrinkles formed on an over-thick coat of paint.

ficial area requires a relatively greater *weight* of white lead but a greater relative *volume* of zinc white to become thoroughly covered. The covering power does not stand in any fixed ratio to the consumption of oil or varnish by the pigment: nevertheless good covering power is generally accompanied by a high capacity of absorbing oil or varnish.

NUMBER OF COATS OF OIL PAINT.

The question of *how many coats of oil paint must be applied to iron in order to ensure efficient protection against rusting*, and to prevent the passage of water or moisture through the paint itself, has really no connection with the covering power of the latter. For the mere covering of the substratum two coats, in addition to the bottoming coat, will suffice in most cases; or even one will often be enough when the paint covers particularly well, though in such event the desired protection will not be secured. If it be desired to establish a standard number of coats of paint for this purpose, here again preference must undoubtedly be accorded to the paints requiring a large proportion of varnish to become properly workable, since really it is the varnish that has mainly to be considered, the pigment being only taken into account because too many coats would be needed if the varnish were used alone, and because, moreover, it is desired to give the object a different colour to that which it possesses naturally. It may be laid down as a normal standard that—presupposing the use of good paint—one bottoming coat and three subsequent coatings, laid on at suitable intervals, will be required to produce a layer of oil paint of sufficient thickness on iron to keep moisture away from the metal and to protect the latter from rust for a certain time. There is no damage to fear from a larger number of coats, provided a sufficient interval be allowed to elapse after each coat before applying the next, because the individual layers will coalesce properly, and the greater the total thickness the greater the degree of impermeability secured. That a different effect will result from laying the paint on too thickly at a time has already been shown a page or so back. The greater the number of strata of paint the longer will it take before the whole is destroyed and water can gain an entrance, and the longer will the iron remain free from rust. Formerly, in order to prolong the impermeability of the paint and the preservation of the coating, a practice was adopted which is now—probably owing to the expense—discarded, *viz.*, to coat the incipiently decaying paint with a layer of linseed varnish. As we have already seen, the paint in course of time loses its lustre, the resinified linseed varnish continuously undergoes further changes, and the paint becomes absorbent towards liquids. If now a coat of linseed varnish be applied to the paint it is greedily absorbed by the latter, the interstitial spaces are filled up, the paint is impregnated with varnish and is able to resist the further influence of the air for an additional period. Now-a-days it is the custom to wait until the paint has become permeable and rust formation has begun, a fresh coat of paint being then applied, at far greater expense!

Another feature essential to the production of a good paint for preserving iron from rust is that the paint should be finely ground. When this is effected every minute particle of pigment will be thoroughly impregnated with oil or varnish, and the whole will form a perfectly homogeneous mass in which no granules or the like will be found. If, however, the pigment, though in ever so fine a state of division, be merely stirred into the vehicle, without grinding, it will remain granular or gritty, so that the granules will be apparent to the naked eye when the paint has been laid on; and these irregularly-impregnated particles of pigment are able to absorb moisture and facilitate its admission to the surface of the metal.

Paints that have either been insufficiently ground or not ground at all—as is often the case with red lead paints for bottoming—are apt to curdle or separate into the constituent pigment and vehicle, the result being an uneven surface. Similar irregularities of surface are, however, noticeable in the case of many well-ground paints, particularly those containing specular-iron or micaceous-iron pigments, but it is desirable to secure as smooth a surface as possible, not only for the sake of the improved appearance but also as affording fewer points of attack for atmospheric influences.

The circumstances to be considered in the matter of painting on iron have now been elucidated, and a number of conditions stated on which the durability of the paint depends. It has also been mentioned that every paint undergoes continuous alteration through oxidation, *i.e.*, by the absorption of atmospheric oxygen ; and that under certain circumstances the pigment may contribute to this alteration, which it accelerates. That drying is purely a process of oxidation has been demonstrated by Mulder, in his admirable work, in that he determined the increase in weight by direct experiment. This has also been proved of late by Spennrath, in a series of investigations wherein thin sheets of tin plate, 4 in. × 8 in. in size and of known weight, were coated with pure boiled linseed oil, whilst others were painted over with mixtures of linseed oil and various pigments. The whole series of plates were weighed on a chemical balance immediately after painting, and again when the coatings were properly dry ; the increase in weight during drying averaged 13 to 14 per cent. of the weight of oil present. To determine the latter factor with precision the oil and pigment were accurately weighed before mixing ; and, as the paint was laid on immediately after this latter operation had been performed, it is therefore presumable that the ratio of pigment to varnish in the paint was the same as in the paint-pot—an assumption confirmed by the slight divergences (less than 1 per cent.)

in the increase in weight observed. The author does not unconditionally agree, however, with Spennrath's further assertion that the gain in weight of the oil in a paint is a constant factor, and that this is a proof that the oil alone alters in drying, the deduction being that no chemical combination occurs between the oil and the pigment. In the case of lead paints, for instance, the pigment undoubtedly exerts a certain influence on the oil; otherwise the paint would not harden so rapidly as it does, and it could not happen that, *e.g.*, a red lead putty would set "stone hard" in a few days. Were no action on the oil to take place, the putty would necessarily remain as soft and plastic as that prepared from oil and graphite. Inert pigments, of course, have no influence on the oil.

In the course of his experiments in the matter of rust prevention, Spennrath also turned his attention to the capabilities with which oil paints may be endowed of exerting an injurious influence on iron; and he came to the conclusion that in no case can an unfavourable effect be produced, for the simple reason that in all carefully manufactured paint the fine particles of the pigmentary substance are so enveloped with varnish or oil as to prevent their coming into direct contact with the metal. This fact will scarcely be impugned, and so long as the oil or varnish is not completely decomposed, but still remains coherent, there cannot be any question of such action.

Other researches of Spennrath's related to the influences concerning the oil, and for this purpose he selected graphite as the pigment employed, in view of its perfect neutrality. In this connection he reports as follows: "It is not *primâ facie* justifiable to assume, when rust begins to show itself on a painted iron surface, that the paint has suffered damage or destruction through the rust-forming agent. However carefully a paint may have been manufactured, one is never absolutely certain"—the present author denies this—"that the protecting coat is entirely free from sundry microscopic holes, through which the rust-forming agency gains access to the iron. As soon, however, as the smallest particle of rust has formed, the destruction of the coat of paint proceeds rapidly, in that the rust spreads under the covering and causes it to separate from the metal. Moreover, there are certain injurious influences which attack the paint without, however, giving rise to rust. These easily lead one to form erroneous conclusions if the occurrence or absence of rust is regarded as the sole indication of the durability of the paint, as is generally done. It is altogether incorrect to consider the most active rust-forming influences as being always the most destructive to paint. For example, the resisting power of paint is often tested by immersing the painted iron object in a solution of common salt (brine); whereas in reality the test affords no criterion of this property, since, although brine rapidly produces rust, it is almost entirely devoid of influence on oil paint. On the other hand, if the painted iron does not rust under this test, all that is proved is that the paint is impermeable; if, however, the iron were exposed to other influences capable of corroding the paint, it would soon rust, on account of the metal being exposed."

Spennrath prepared a number of paint films by applying on sheet zinc a coating of boiled linseed oil mixed with graphite, and then dissolving away the metal by means of dilute sulphuric acid, which left the films of paint behind uninjured. These he stored for a certain number of months in (1) rain water, (2) sea water, (3) brine, (4) 10 per cent. sal ammoniac (ammonium chloride) solution, (5) 10 per cent. magnesium chloride solution, (6) 5 per cent. sulphuric acid, (7) 5 per cent. hydrochloric acid, (8) 5 per cent. nitric acid, (9) over acetic acid, (10) natural sea water in a closed chamber, (11) over dry calcium chloride, (12) aqueous extract of coal ashes, etc. The conclusions at which he arrived, from the changes induced in the films, are given below:—

1. "All oil paints are destroyed by dilute hydrochloric acid and nitric acid, gaseous hydrochloric acid, nitric acid, sulphurous acid (sulphur dioxide), and acetic acid. Dilute sulphuric acid does not corrode these paints.

2. "Caustic alkalis, alkaline liquids and gases, ammonia, ammonium sulphide, and soda solution quickly destroy any oil paint.

3. "Pure water exerts a more powerful rusting action than the generally dreaded solutions of common salt, sal ammoniac and magnesium chloride, and is even more active than natural sea water. The salt-content reduces the influence of the water, and the destructive effects observed in the case of sea water must be attributed to the mechanical action of the moving water on the coat of paint.

4. "Hot water is more speedily destructive than water at the ordinary temperature, and therefore destroys paint in a short time."

From the foregoing observations it results that none of the paints having a drying oil as a basis is capable of withstanding the continuous and prolonged action of acids, alkaline liquids, or even of water; and of course the same applies to the action of the fumes of coal smoke. Hence in this direction the question of rust prevention still remains far from being solved. This is a well-known fact, and no reliance is to be placed on the assurances of manufacturers that they can supply paint preparations capable of resisting all kinds of influences over a long period.

Spennrath made further experiments, investigating the influence of warmth on the layer of paint, with the following result:—

"If a film of paint be exposed to a temperature of about 100° C., it undergoes considerable alteration in a short time, losing its elasticity and suppleness, and becoming hard and brittle, breaking when folded over, besides losing in weight and shrinking several percentage units. These alterations also occur, though more slowly, at lower temperatures—still above the ordinary limit. At 120° C. the film very soon becomes brittle like glass."

FIG. 49 (natural size).

FIG. 50 (magnified).—Blisters and cracks caused by heating a layer of oil paint.

The conclusion drawn from these results is that: "All paints suffer loss in weight in the warm, and contract, thereby losing their soft caoutchouc-like nature, and becoming stiff and brittle. So long as the film of paint remains attached to its substratum (iron) it cannot shrink, and a certain tension is therefore set up between the paint and the iron. The degree of tension increases with the increase of temperature and duration of exposure—especially in direct sunlight—and as the coating becomes at the same time more and more brittle it must finally tear, the result being the production of so-called air-cracks. These can be seen on all old paint, especially in paints on iron, and they intersect the entire surface like a network, the exposed underlying metal being thereby delivered an easy prey to the action of rain."

This conclusion is just as incorrect as is the approximation to natural wear in the experiment. A great difference exists between exposing to warmth a paint separated from its substratum, and subjecting it to the same conditions whilst still *in sitû*; at least so the author has found, since he has been unable to confirm the alleged contraction and cracking of oil paint on iron through exposure, lasting several weeks, to a temperature up to 80° C. There is, moreover, an important difference between exposing paint to the ordinary maximum summer temperature and to a temperature of 100° C., to say nothing of the great difference in the influence of this last-named temperature on one side of a coat of paint as compared with its effect when exerted on both sides at once. All the deduction that can be drawn from these researches of Spennrath's is that the same effects are produced upon the paint by a temperature of 100° C. as are caused by an exposure to normal conditions over a long term of years, since in the latter case, also, the paint is brittle, hard, and cracked, or may be rubbed off in the state of powder. It accomplishes here in a short time the results otherwise taking years to produce—and no paint will last for ever.

There can be no doubt that in addition to the influences already specified as capable of causing the premature destruction of paint, the influence of the electric current may also give rise to mechanical ruptures of the coating, caused by electrical discharges or shocks brought about in overcoming the resistance experienced by strong induction currents passing through iron structures; and finally, under certain circumstances, by galvanic action. Such ruptures consisting of fine cracks, or a loosening and perforation of the paint, and being aided by the electrolytic decomposition of water, may result in a more rapid formation of rust than usual.

TESTING PAINTS.

In order to gain a closer insight into the influence of electricity on paint, a number of iron plates were coated with various paints, one portion of the plates being thoroughly cleaned, whilst another portion was artificially rusted, before applying the paint.

These plates were then suspended, under perfectly identical conditions, in accumulator boxes, and a strong current was passed through them, the surrounding water being in the one case strongly acidified with hydrochloric acid, and receiving in the other an addition of sal ammoniac. The results and details of these experiments were of a very surprising character, and induced Simon, who performed them, to prepare a paint, the pigment of which—electropositive towards iron—is capable of conducting both electricity and heat.

In the preparation of this paint Simon was led by the idea "that the arrangement of a small number of metallic conductors through the insulating layer of varnish to the iron will facilitate an outward flow of the electricity, whereby all destructive influences will be removed from the insulating and anti-corrosive varnish layer". In this view he was influenced by the theory of Melsens with regard to the production of lightning conductors to not only exert a protective influence, but also prevent spontaneous discharges. On the other hand Simon succeeded in reducing the coefficient of radiation of the paint—which factor is 7·74 in the case of pure oil varnish, and ranges from 5·0 to 4·40 for lead paints—to as low as 0·60, by suitably modifying the composition of the pigment. This is a matter of some moment, especially for gasometers, large iron structures, boilers, steampipes and vacuum apparatus. For instance, the condensation of steam on a coating of Simon's conducting paint is about 80 per cent. less than on paints consisting of red lead and white lead. This conductive property was readily discernible on iron plates coated with this paint, when one of a pair of such plates was inserted in a closed circuit of two strong cells and the other joined up to a galvanometer, the passage of a current being indicated by the latter instrument in a very short time. The experiment succeeded equally well whether the plates were surrounded by dry air, excluded from air, or suspended in water containing hydrochloric acid or sal ammoniac.

Quite recently H. Lœsner devoted attention to the testing of oil paints, and expressed himself on the subject as follows: "Just as in the testing of building materials the greatest value is placed on tensile strength, resistance to compression, etc., and the chemical constitution is rather of merely theoretical interest, so in the case of paints for ironwork the chief stress should be laid upon impermeability towards water and gases. Since, according to Simon, every paint is more or less porous, the first condition to be exacted of a good oil paint is that, when dry, instead of forming a porous layer it shall be perfectly homogeneous. When plates of sheet iron are coated with paint, rust forms—as is well known—on the surface of the metal after a short time.

Owing, however, to the slowness of the reaction, immersion in water does not afford a suitable means for determining the durability of paint, whereas, on the other hand, steam places a very convenient method at our disposal for this purpose. With this object, plates of sheet iron are cleaned perfectly bright on one side, by means of emery paper, the clean surfaces—which must not on any account be touched with the fingers—being then coated over with a thin uniform layer of the paint to be tested, and left to dry at the ordinary temperature for four days. The plates are next set, painted side downwards, over a boiling water-bath, so that the surface of the paint is just 2 inches (5 cm.) above the constant level of the water. At the end of fifteen hours the plates are dried for a short time at 100° C. (not higher) and the layers of paint impregnated with aniline applied with a soft brush. Being thus softened they can be removed and the metal is then dried by means of alcohol. For the paint to be classed as good, the metal must have remained perfectly intact, a condition readily recognised by the appearance of the scratches formed on the surface by the emery paper used in the initial cleaning. Many paints will stand this steam test after the painted iron has been heated to 100° to 105° C. for about five hours." Instigated by this report the author made several experiments on the action of steam on paints, and found that a two-months-old layer of red lead paint became somewhat soft, but otherwise remained perfectly intact, no trace of rusting being detectable. Under the influence of steam, a coating of lacquer paint softened and underwent partial contraction, without, however, laying the metal bare. Furthermore, fresh (two days old) layers of oil paint on iron withstood boiling in water for several hours without becoming loosened or otherwise suffering damage; whereas, on the other hand, in the case of a simple coat of varnish, a very short exposure—about fifteen minutes—to the action of steam sufficed to entirely counteract the adhesion of the varnish to the metal, the former being then removable by merely wiping it with the finger. For the present an expression of opinion on this method will be reserved pending the results of a contemplated series of experiments on the matter, and the author will content himself with remarking that anti-corrosive paints are designed for the protection of iron from atmospheric influences and not from the action of steam.

With regard to the formation of rust under paint on iron, Simon has latterly issued the subjoined report. He says: "The doubts previously aroused in my mind as to the inaccuracy of the general assumption that rust on iron is the result of fine hair-like cracks in the paint have been converted into certainty by the peculiar phenomena noticed in the course of my studies on the action of sea water on iron plates coated with various paints.

"Accurately fitting iron plates were placed side by side in accumulator boxes and subjected to the action of sea water, in which they were immersed to the extent of two-thirds their entire area. Old plates—irrespective of the kind of paint with which they were coated—which had been exposed to the influence of sea water for six months[1] exhibited, for a distance of several centimetres above the water line, cracks, blisters, and peeling off on the part of the paint, according as it contained a larger or smaller proportion of varnish. That part of the plates which was under water seemed, to a superficial observer, to be unaltered, save for rust spots, except that the white lead paint showed a readily recognisable amount of destruction and far-reaching decomposition. In the other

---

[1] A series of parallel experiments with fresh water failed to yield any available results, owing to the development of a transparent mucus of mould fungi which, in a short time, produced a visibly destructive effect on the paint.

plates the paint, so far as the part under water was concerned, still appeared to be coherent, though soft and—when dried—dull and somewhat rough. For about 1½ inch (3 to 4 cm.) above the water a distinct alteration in form was noticeable, and the paint was blistered, peeled off, and loosened. This alteration and mechanical destruction of the layer of paint progresses outwards from the interior, as may easily be gathered from an inspection of the various plates. The paint has allowed the sea water to gain access, thus reducing the adhesion between the paint and the metal, and resulting in the occurrence of capillary attraction in the interstitial space, the effect being favoured by the evaporation going on above the water line. Furthermore, evaporation from the interior outwards results in the deposition of saline matter under the paint, which circumstance will naturally go hand in hand with the detaching of the latter. This phenomenon was noticed consistently throughout, irrespective of the kind of oil paint used, and made its appearance in every repetition of the experiment; in fact the results entirely bore out and confirmed my previously expressed opinion that paint behaves exactly like animal epidermis in being, in its distended state, permeable by gases and liquids."

Further investigations were made by Simon in that he prepared coats of paint upon a substratum of glue, afterwards loosening them by simple immersion in water and thereby obtaining films of paint that had not been exposed to any chemical or strong physical influences. The films were supple, pliant and elastic, and did not part with these properties when exposed to dry or moist heat. Simon says, further: "The permeability of the paint films was tested by stretching them over a glass beaker half filled with hot water. When the film assumed a concave form as the water cooled, this afforded evidence of impermeability and the absence of any disruption. On pouring water tinged with aniline dye into the concavity before the water in the beaker had thoroughly cooled down, fine drops could soon be observed to collect on the under side of the film, and these increased in size, while the water in the cavity diminished in volume. The same films were spread over a small dialyser and tested for permeability to variously coloured waters under normal atmospheric pressure, with or without an addition of brine. Whilst during the first twenty-four hours no visible transfusion of the water through the film of paint could be noticed, a rapidly increasing interchange developed after the lapse of that time, and this was still more apparent when brine was employed as the diffusive liquid. The results were similar throughout a number of experiments performed with various films of paint under different conditions, and the penetrability of the films by air, illuminating gas, and sulphur dioxide was also demonstrated." Simon also made further observations in the softening of paint by dew on the ironwork of bridges and by water of condensation in stables, the result being the formation of rust; and he expressed the opinion that "rusting is not attributable to the iron having been insufficiently cleaned before painting, but rather to the deposition of dew, the result of rapid cooling of the metal, the liquid being then absorbed by the paint and brought into contact with the iron, which is thereby rusted".

In discussing Simon's experiments, the author would point out that exposure to sea water for six months is hardly the way to test the durability of paints intended for coating iron exposed to the air; and he would remark that the number of coats of paint given should also be stated. The conditions being apparently unsuitable to the object in view, the results may be neglected and attention chiefly devoted to the permeability of the paint film. There can be no doubt at all but that a coat, or film, of paint will behave quite differently when in position on a solid substratum to what it does when loosened therefrom; and that it is altogether a different thing when a film of paint is stretched over a space containing air in a state of partial (though but slight) rarefaction. A cloak of waterproof material may be quite impervious to water when simply in a suspended position, whereas when stretched out so as to allow an accumulation of water to gather in the hollow thus formed it may probably allow some of the liquid to pass through. In the case of paint, the fatty substance of itself repels water, which is thereby prevented from exerting continuous action, and hence penetration is considerably hindered. In fact, the author maintains that penetration of the paint is quite impossible, provided the work of painting has been done thoroughly and well, and he believes that such can then only ensue when the cohesion of the paint has suffered injury through the prolonged influence of atmospheric agencies. Penetration may perhaps be feasible when the painting has been restricted to one or two coats; and Simon recognises "that the anti-corrosive action of a paint increases in proportion to the quantity of linseed varnish it contains, and with the degree of insusceptibility of the pigment to chemical influences". This fact has already been recognised and emphasised by the author on previous occasions, as well as in the present work, which was completed long before the publication of Simon's article on the subject.

Simon also deals with a fact long previously recognised by the author, in that he states that "the greater the proportion of varnish endowed with good covering and adhesive properties in the paint, the better will it protect iron from rust".

Having now seen how manifold are the influences capable of contributing towards injuring a coating of paint, we may next turn to the question of the length of time that a good coat of oil paint should last, and of the signs whereby incipient damage may be detected.

So great are the fluctuations in the durability of paint, and so dependent on local circumstances, that no definite figure can be laid down. We have become acquainted with the influences that exert action on paint, and it naturally follows that wherever they are present to an increased extent the life of the paint will be shortened, and *vice versâ*. Where large amounts of smoke fumes, acid gases, alkalis, etc., come in contact with the paint, the latter will be ruined much sooner than where a purer atmosphere prevails; and when paint is exposed to the continued action of running or stagnant water it will be much less durable than in dry air. In districts where high winds, accompanied by much sand, prevail the paint will undergo mechanical attrition, which will largely contribute to its destruction. Under normal conditions it may be assumed that a good coat of oil paint will last for five years as a maximum, or for as long as eight years under especially favourable circumstances, before requiring renewal.

The signs by which one can recognise that a paint has ceased to discharge its protective functions have already been touched upon, namely the alterations in outward appearance, and the occurrence of rust spots in the paint itself.

If the paint exhibits cracks, be they never so fine; if it has become dull and crumbling so that the pigment can be wiped off in the form of powder by the hand or with a cloth, the admission of moisture will have become possible, in the former case directly through the cracks, and in the latter instance by absorption and retention in the paint; and the iron must necessarily begin to rust. In such events repainting is an urgent necessity. Rusted places show themselves in the paint, at first by the appearance of yellowish-red patches, sometimes spread over the entire surface of the iron structure, at others only at the rivets and screws. No actual rust is visible as yet, and it would appear as though the moisture had drawn the rust through the absorbent paint; only at a later period does the paint disappear more and more, whilst rust patches and incrustations become apparent; then it becomes high time to think of renewing the coat of paint, and to carry out this operation with as much care as if an entirely new painting were in question.

THE USE OF TAR FOR PAINTING ON IRON.

Although the paints containing linseed oil or its derivative, linseed varnish, have proved themselves the best of all protective media against rusting, it must be admitted that for many purposes oil paints cannot be employed, their cost being too high and out of all proportion to their durability. Among such purposes are: painting on iron pipes to be laid underground; on sheet-iron flues, on which oil paint would be carbonised; on ordinary cast-iron articles, etc.

Nevertheless, it is in many instances undesirable to leave these objects unpainted, and hence use is made of coal tar, or, better still, a solution of coal-tar pitch in benzine or petroleum.

Of course the coal tar used for this purpose must have been purified from all constituents of an acid nature; or else, in place of the desired protection from rust, iron will, on the contrary, be more readily rusted than ever, since even very weak acids give the metal a tendency to oxidisation. For this reason it is preferable to employ coal-tar pitch, the solid, neutral, resinous residue from the distillation of tar, and to convert it into paint by solution in benzine or petroleum; in this case one is certain that the paint has no acid reaction. If this tar or dissolved pitch be carefully applied whilst hot, it forms an excellent and cheap protection against rusting, and at the same time imparts a deep black, and fairly lustrous, colour to the iron.

In respect of this paint Spennrath expresses himself as follows :—

" Tar paints were at one time largely used for the prevention of rust, but their employment has of late fallen into disrepute, the alleged protective action having been shown to be of very doubtful efficacy. It is true that a coating of tar is altogether insusceptible to the chemical influence of the atmosphere and also to acids and alkalis; but, at the same time, the tar itself contains substances capable of causing iron to rust. Crude tar, for instance, always contains moisture, and, in addition to this, acetic acid is present in wood tar, the water and acid quickly causing the iron to rust. Hence it is that sometimes very extensive rusting can be detected—often to a considerable degree—under the tarry coating. Water-free or acid-free tar would not exert such action ; but the purification of the tar from these admixtures is troublesome, and increases the cost of this preparation, so that the advantages, as compared with oil paint, disappear. Finally, tar paints become softened by the sun's rays to such an extent that the mass runs and leaves the iron bare. Thus no security against rusting can ever be obtained by the use of tar paints.

" In point of resistance to external atmospheric influences, acids and alkalis, asphalt stands on the same footing as tar. True asphalt is, however, expensive, and has to be dissolved in a volatile medium before it can be used as paint. One preparation of this kind is the iron lacquer used more particularly for painting iron utensils for lavatory purposes. Being dear, and forming only a very thin protective coating, it cannot be employed for large surfaces and structures of iron.

" In the cold, asphalt is brittle, in consequence of which it easily cracks off and is speedily removed by the mechanical action of the dust carried about by air currents; and rain and snow produce the same effect. I have found it impossible to preserve from rusting—even for six months—iron plates that have been painted with this material and left in the open air. Moreover, ordinary iron lacquer for the most part contains no true asphalt, but only hard tar, *i.e.*, tar pitch, which has the disadvantage of softening and running when exposed to the sun.

" Cast-iron water pipes and gas pipes are coated with tar or asphalt by dipping them hot in the hot liquid material. This gives a staunch, strongly adherent coating, which, by reason of the high temperature at which it is produced, is also free from water. The pipes, laid in the ground, are protected from the action of warmth, and, moreover, cast iron rusts far more slowly and with greater difficulty than wrought iron; in addition to which circumstances the rust itself—at the depth at which the pipes are laid underground—combines with silica and carbonic acid to form a protective cover. For example, the gas mains of the town of Aachen (Aix) when taken up, after lying in the ground for half a century, were found to be incrusted with a thick layer of siliceous rust, but in no case had any of the pipes become unfit for use; on the other hand, the house-service pipes of wrought iron were extensively corroded by rust in the upper portion. At present they are laid in asphalt, and I have myself examined such a pipe after five years' sojourn in its asphalt bed, and found it entirely free from rust."

Mulder makes the following observations on the use of tar as a protection against rust:—

"Tar is highly suitable for filling in the interstices of screws, nuts and rivets, and will neither contribute to nor allow the formation of rust. Good varnishes prepared from constituents of coal tar are very slowly oxidised by the air, prevent oxidation by the empyreumatic oils they contain, and leave behind, on the volatilisation of these oils, a resinous layer, forming an efficient cover and precluding access of air.

"One condition is, however, essential in such a varnish, *viz.*, it should never become quite hard. It will then never crack off under the influence of expansion produced by changes of temperature and the resulting friction of the surfaces of the connections, neither will it peel off through cold.

"In the case of large iron structures it is customary to connect adjoining surfaces by hot riveting, an operation which precludes the use of oil paint for the rivets. The same does not, however, apply to coal tar, which can here be used to advantage for coating the (previously cleaned) surfaces to be joined; and if the rivet holes be also brushed over with coal tar before the hot rivets are put in, no damage is done by the momentary charring of the tar, the residual matters between the plates and under the rivet heads being resin and carbon.

"Owing to the circumstance that oil paint will not stick properly on coal tar (and *vice versâ*) the objects to be afterwards painted must be freed from tar by scraping around the surfaces in contact before applying the permanent coat of paint, which must, however, be laid on with care in order that no openings for the admission of air or moisture may be left."

ANTI-CORROSIVE (RUST-PREVENTING) PAINTS.

Conditions of Preparation and Application.—Anti-corrosive or rust-preventing paints, as the paints designed for preserving iron from rust and preventing the premature destruction of the metal are now called, have attained to a position of great importance; and it is easy to understand that the industry concerned with the manufacture of such paints has greatly increased, and is in a position to supply large quantities of such materials to railway companies and other large consumers. In order to increase sales and do a large trade many of such paints are alleged to possess properties with which it is impossible for them to be endowed, simply because the conditions conferring these properties can never be present in paint. When, for example, we read in a manufacturer's circular that he has invented and prepared a paint that is capable of destroying pre-existing rust, and thereby of preserving rusted iron from any further encroachment, it is evident, from what we have seen in the previous sections of this work, that such a claim is an impossibility. If another maker avers that his product possesses magnetic or electrical properties, this is an absurdity, because any pigment ground up in, and therefore surrounded by, linseed oil or linseed varnish is thereby rendered altogether inert. Another manufacturer claims as an advantage for his paint that the pigment he uses, unlike those of others, does not undergo saponification with the oil in the varnish (!!) and therefore must be much more durable! Now it is well known that no saponification occurs in paint, and that the durability of a paint may be reduced by the action of an oxidising pigment (red lead, white lead) on the oil or varnish, whereas an inert body exerts no action. Furthermore, in many instances totally unjustifiable claims are put forward on behalf of certain paints containing a pigment—iron oxide or graphite—in the form of scales or flakes quite visible to the naked eye. It is asserted that in these paints the individual flakes are completely enveloped in varnish and lay one above another in numerous strata so as to actually form a number of coats of paint in one. If, however, the scales be examined through a magnifying glass they will be apparent as a coarse, scaly powder; but on calling the microscope in aid it will be found that the scales have for the most part disappeared, the field being occupied by coarse, angular fragments interspersed with a few lustrous plates. Now the author is convinced that, although these scales may, like finely pulverised pigments, be surrounded by the varnish with which they have been ground, it is altogether out of the question for there to be any superposition of scales—like fish scales—as alleged, since the paint is just like other paints when laid on, except that it forms a coating in which a magnifying glass shows the presence of a number of raised points representing the coarser particles of the pigment. He would, however, go still further, and say that if such scales actually do form the strata with which they are accredited, the same effect must be produced in still greater degree by the more finely powdered pigments, because the granules of the latter, being smaller, must lie closer together and form a larger number of protective strata than the coarser particles can do. He therefore retains his previously expressed opinion that the scaly form exhibits no advantages over the finer powder of the pigments generally used, both of them taking a similar position in the paint, and the particles of both remaining enveloped in varnish or oil when the paint dries. The more intimate, however, the connection between pigment and varnish, and the finer the condition of the paint, the longer will the latter discharge its functions. Nevertheless, the author has no desire to criticise the varnish as well as the pigment in the paints already referred to, and for that reason has not mentioned the articles by name.

Other advantages claimed for certain paints are power of resisting acid and insusceptibility to attack by alkalis.

Now any oil paint, no matter what pigment it contains, will resist the action of dilute acid provided the exposure be merely a short one ; otherwise it would be impossible to prepare a sample film of paint to demonstrate the acid-resisting properties of the same. This is done by coating a thin sheet of zinc with the paint, and, after the coating is dry, dissolving the zinc by immersion in (hydrochloric) acid, thus leaving behind the film of paint, which thereby proves itself capable of resisting acid.

To be "acid-resisting," however, means capable of withstanding the continued influence of liquid or gaseous acids during several months, and this is an impossibility. Even a 5 per cent. solution of hydrochloric acid will appreciably corrode a film of paint within three months, whilst 5 per cent. nitric acid destroys it at once and leaves merely an imponderable residue. Moreover, no paint will resist the action of the smoky fumes evolved from coal fires, and it is therefore, as yet, impossible—all promises to the contrary notwithstanding—to provide an efficient protection for iron bridges and other structures exposed to such influences.

Alkalis exert a similar destructive action on paints, and none of the latter can withstand continuous exposure thereto. It is true that one can wash paint over with a weak, or even a strong, solution of alkali without injury, provided the surface be immediately rinsed with clean water ; but continuous action—even only for a few hours in the case of strong solutions—is certain to mean the complete destruction of the paint.

The influence of water alone has already been considered. Paints cannot long withstand this when the immersion is continuous ; and for this special purpose solutions of resin are far superior.

The effect of heat or fire on oil paints is in all cases injurious. This is a matter, however, that does not concern paints for iron structures, and is only now referred to for the sake of completeness. No paint can withstand the direct action of flame, even old paints being first carbonised and then ignited, their destruction being thereby ensured.

The influence of temperatures between 70° and 100° C. on oil paint applied to iron is manifested in various ways, the paint either turning brown and finally black, though remaining otherwise intact; or else it becomes blistered, the blisters carbonising if the exposure be prolonged. Blistering always ensues when the paint is suddenly exposed to strong heat (see Figs. 39 and 40). On the other hand a different effect is produced when the freshly applied paint is subjected to a moderate and progressively increasing degree of heat. Such paint becomes unusually hard and firm, and will stand even higher temperatures, up to 100° C. That paints of this kind constitute an ideal means for the preservation of ironwork has already been mentioned.

Hand in hand with the unhappily increasing tendency to load the market with paints ostensibly endowed with impossible properties—with the object of making what is generally but a fleeting increase of business, lasting only until buyers have for the tenth time discovered that the new invention does not fulfil expectations — goes the sale of inferior grades of paint made from adulterated oil or pigment, or both. In the present age of reckless competition, where, as a general thing, cheapness is the first consideration —reliance being placed on the vendor's assurance that the paint is good—these adulterations are more frequent than is usually assumed; and, in despite of experience, it is difficult, if not impossible, to abolish the practice of placing orders with the seller making the lowest tender. Apparently no thought is bestowed on the consideration that the contractor offering the lowest tender cannot go below a certain limit of price, being obliged, like any other, to purchase his materials (if pure) at a certain defined rate; and having to cover his expenses, which are far from small, must make up his deficit by employing adjuncts. The lowest offer secures the order, and it is only after subsequent unsatisfactory experiences that the conclusion is arrived at that cheapness, in many and even in most cases, is synonymous with nastiness.

It is only in recent years that Railway Companies and Government and Municipal Departments, influenced by the unfavourable results obtained with bad paints and the dangers ensuing from the rusting of iron structures, have become keener, and now endeavour to secure none but good paint by specifying normal standards for methods of testing the protective value against rust of paints on ironwork. These endeavours are worthy of all recognition and praise, and will certainly be productive of good, provided it be determined concurrently, as a fundamental rule, not to give the order to the contractor making the lowest tender; since he, knowing that the paint will be tested, will simply send in a few deliveries of good quality and then supply inferior stuff. As we shall see later on, the methods of testing—especially for the oils used in paints—entail considerable difficulty and expense, so that it seems improbable to the author that every cask of the paint supplied can possibly be examined to see whether it is up to the standard. It appears to him that a better course is to confide the orders to firms of known good standing, who can be relied on to adhere to the standards laid down and have nothing to be afraid of if their products are put to the test; since, despite all precautions in the matter of testing, the unscrupulous maker will be sure to find a back door, and the consumer to have an unfavourable experience notwithstanding all his care.

Professor von Tetmayr of Zürich, President of the International Conference for the Establishment of Uniform Methods of Testing Building and Constructive Materials, made the following communication to the sub-committee appointed to deal with the testing of paints:—

"In order to obtain a basis for the establishment of a method of testing paints as preservatives of iron structures, it seemed necessary to review the current methods of testing anti-corrosive paints, and in particular to collect the requirements laid down in this respect in different countries.

"The results of the labours undertaken in this matter are, in one direction, of merely subordinate value for the simple reason that, notwithstanding the unfavourable experiences gained, the technology of the preservation of iron in iron structures has not received the consideration and attention required by the nature of the case. The great majority of technical men who have to deal with iron structures are more or less indifferent to the question of the means of preventing rust, frequently having no opinion on the matter; and up to the present scarcely any one—in this age of copious advertisement—is able to distinguish the inferior from the really good article, or to make a correct selection of paint suitable for the purpose and local conditions in view. Good results obtained with individual paints are mostly a happy chance, and seldom the result of deliberation, or the exercise of a ripened expert judgment. The methods of testing the properties of paints have not yet emerged from their primitive condition; and where any examination is made at all it is confined to a few practical tests which generally extend no further than the determination of the drying power, the adhesive properties, toughness and covering power. Experiments on a large scale are not lacking; and, indeed, are continually being repeated—in view of the prevailing uncertainty in the judging of the value claimed for new paints—as an endeavour to replace existing kinds by better ones. The results obtained are not, however, as a rule made public, but remain the property of the officials concerned.

"The specified requirements exacted of rust-preventing paints in different quarters vary considerably in important particulars, as do also the results obtained with one and the same paint material. This divergence in results is by no means strange when the differences in the methods of treatment, and the external local influences, are considered; and they merely offer a fresh confirmation of the old-established fact that nothing is universally good. Often causes and effects are confounded, as the decisions expressed on the suitability of red lead and iron oxide for bottoming paints clearly evidence. Thus, while in several countries, *e.g.*, France, Austria, etc., red lead alone is permitted, it is altogether banned in others. In the case of one of the principal Swiss railways, instead of employing red lead for bottoming, as was originally intended, the use of iron oxide was prescribed: presumably on account of an experience gained somewhere or other to the effect that rusted iron had been found under red lead paint. On the basis of this circumstance the dubious hypothesis of a surrender of oxygen by red lead to iron was concocted, and consequently iron oxide was recommended. Moreover, it is well known that one and the same paint will vary in its behaviour in different places; in one, for example, it lasts for six years and longer, whilst in another it requires renewal after only two or three years' service. To the expert there is nothing surprising in this variation; it will at most lead him to consider that, in the selection of the paint, no regard was paid to the adaptability of its chemico-physical properties to the local conditions; and that the event could have been foretold had a proper examination and appreciation of the prevailing conditions been made.

"As an additional experience may be cited the observation that similar paints may attain to different ages in one and the same situation, *i.e.*, under identical external conditions. Here it is evident that a variation in the composition of the constituent materials is in question; and in our opinion it is the task of a testing method to provide ways and means to facilitate the qualitative and quantitative detection of any substances present that may be capable of prejudicially influencing the durability of the paint."

Composition of Anti-corrosive Paints.

All paints for use on iron consist of a drying oil and one or more pigmentary substances, the whole being incorporated so as to form a workable paint. This is the fundamental principle in every paint—even those with high-sounding special titles—and the principal *rôle* in all cases is played by the drying oil employed as the vehicle. The chief oil coming under consideration is linseed oil, a vehicle which has been proved for many years; is cheap and obtainable everywhere; dries well (when properly prepared); and—when thoroughly dry—is unsurpassed in durability by any other drying oil. So far as general consumption is concerned neither poppy oil, nut oil, hemp oil, nor Bankul nut oil (all drying oils) is of any importance, being restricted to purely local use. Of late an addition to the ranks of the drying oils employed in paint making has been made by the introduction of Chinese wood oil (Varnish Tree oil), and it is not impossible that when its properties—and in particular its durability—have been thoroughly investigated, this oil may come to play a part in the prevention of rust. Its capacity for drying uniformly throughout appears to render it suitable for this purpose. On a later page a résumé of what is known at present concerning this oil will be given.

Landolt acknowledges good pigment and good oil as the principal conditions governing the quality of a paint; and if these conditions are fulfilled a good result can be counted upon, provided the paint be properly applied.

Spennrath regards the oil paints as the most efficient preservatives against rust, but falls into error in assuming that the pigments employed have no influence on the durability of the vehicle. On the other hand, he is correct in his view that the pigmentary constituent of an oil paint may be selected in such a manner as to preclude the destruction of the paint from this cause. Concerning the injurious influences capable of attacking the vehicle, this authority asserts them to be incurable, and in this opinion also he is correct.

The following report on the practical tests carried out on the under side of a bridge in the Rue Lafayette, Paris, which is exposed in a special degree to the influence of smoke from locomotives, is furnished by Chief-engineer Balat:—

The special paints were placed at disposal by their inventors or makers, whilst the ordinary paints used were prepared from chemically pure materials (red lead, white lead). The ten samples were applied, side by side, on the same sheets of metal, set at right angles over the railway track, so that each paint was exposed to the corrosive influence of the engine smoke under perfectly identical conditions. At the end of nine months the following results were obtained:—

Sample 1. One coating of linseed oil, one of red lead, two coats of grey, white-lead oil paint. This behaved well, the iron not being found exposed anywhere. Nevertheless, the presence of very small warty excrescences induces the supposition that the linseed oil coat had blistered, thus preventing the adherence of the red lead to the iron.

Sample 2. A coating of Anderghem iron-oxide paint and two coats of grey, white-lead oil paint stood the exposure well, and was found to be quite unaltered.

Sample 3. A double layer of a French "Panzerschuppen" (scale-armour) paint behaved well in the parts not directly exposed to the action of the smoke; but in the centre the paint had suffered considerable corrosion.

Sample 4. A double coating with a blackish grey composite paint of German origin was somewhat extensively corroded at the edges and in the centre.

Sample 5. A single coat of the last-named paint, covered by a layer of greyish white paint from the same maker, was somewhat less affected than the preceding sample.

Sample 6. A single coat of a German blackish grey composition paint, covered by a layer of brown varnish, was found to be greatly corroded over nearly the whole surface.

Sample 7. One coat of red lead, with a topping of tar and turpentine oil. This was found to have suffered greatly all over.

Sample 8. A single layer of red lead, and one of tar and turpentine oil. Highly corroded over the entire surface.

Sample 9. One coat of red lead and one of a French enamel paint. The latter had almost completely disappeared, leaving the red lead behind in fairly good condition.

Sample 10. A double coating with enamel paint. The paint had disappeared almost entirely. Extensive oxidation of the metal.

The deduction to be drawn from the foregoing results is that none of the new special paints possessed the properties claimed for them by the inventors. The tar paint is also useless; whilst the old paints, with a basis of red lead and white lead, still remain the best. It should, however, be remarked that red lead, which has been used by the railway company for the past few years, seems to be inferior in point of utility to iron oxide. This result is undoubtedly attributable to the linseed oil, with which the iron was first coated, having prevented the red lead from adhering properly.

Wiederhold expresses himself with regard to iron paints as follows:—

"By far the greater number of the compositions intended for preserving iron from rust are notoriously valueless, not a few being even injurious; and, in fact, up to the present, no substance has been discovered capable of adhering so firmly to iron under various atmospheric influences—and especially extensive fluctuations of temperature—as a good oil paint. Even in the comparatively limited number of instances where coating the iron with other metals less susceptible to oxidation could be advantageously effected, oil paint still remains the final resource whenever the metallic film (as in tinned and galvanised iron) disappears in the course of time. At the same time the present mode of coating iron with oil paints is not without its defects, and attention was recently drawn by Fairbairn—as the result of very unpleasant experience—to the fact that this means does not afford sufficient protection of the iron against atmospheric influences. This is especially the case where the metal is employed in the construction of ships and bridges, and where consequently its preservation is of the highest importance; and it is consequently imperative that strenuous endeavours should be made to discover a more durable protective covering for iron."

Toltz experimented with pure asphalt varnish, cheap grades of the same, lampblack, iron oxide, and graphite paints as coatings for iron, the tests extending to their resistance against heat and moisture. He proposes that "structures of iron, steel and other metals should be carefully cleaned and then painted over with boiled linseed oil, or, better still, with a mixture of this oil and 10 per cent. of lampblack, asphalt varnish being also advisable as a first coating. They should be laid on thick and left for at least ten days to dry, a month being preferable. The best material for the second coating is graphite paint, which should contain at least 33 per cent. of pure graphite, but no turpentine oil, benzol, or driers. Parts of the structure exposed to vapours and gases should receive a third coating with cheap asphalt varnish, as this will protect the underlying paints for years. Iron oxide paints are not very desirable for the first and second coats, graphite paint being preferable. When asphalt or lampblack paints are used, all trace of moisture should be previously removed, or the efficiency of the paint will be endangered. This precaution is less essential in the case of iron oxide and red lead paints, the linseed oil itself absorbing the moisture."

Against these views the following objections may be urged:—

In the first place, asphalt varnish cannot be used as a first coating for iron, since oil paints will not dry hard on this varnish, even after weeks have elapsed.

Secondly, the application of a thick primary coating is entirely opposed to the experience gained in practice, and is in fact inadmissible for the simple reason that thick layers of paint dry very slowly and wrinkle on the surface, whilst the underlying portions remain soft and are easily displaced.

Thirdly, painting should on no account be done on damp surfaces, and an absorption of moisture by linseed oil is entirely out of the question.

With the object of ascertaining the best means of most effectually preserving iron structures from rust, a North-American engineer, M. G. Huber, subjected a large number of old and new iron and steel bridges to a very careful scrutiny. From his communication it appears that in every instance rust spots were discovered under the paint. In many cases the extension of the spots was but slight, and the smoother the surface the less extensive the rusting, as a general rule; whilst iron plates were found to be less subject to attack than angle irons and girders. Similarly, pieces that had been heated to redness were found less susceptible to rusting, and the same was noticed in respect of all parts that had been oiled in the workshop before being put into position and painted. As the investigations showed that the rust spots in older structures were not appreciably more extensive than in those of more recent date, Huber concludes that corrosion proceeds at a very slow rate. It is especially worthy of note that iron oxide paints appear to afford better protection than those made of red lead, the latter being very liable to peel and also easily detached from the underlying metal.

As the result of practical experience extending over a number of years, the author regards the following conditions as essential to the attainment of a durable anti-corrosive coating of paint on iron:—

1. The paint employed must be prepared in such a manner as to be easy of application, and form, when dry, a coherent layer possessing maximum powers of resistance.

2. In the absence of a better and more durable vehicle it should be prepared solely from pure linseed oil, free from extraneous admixtures, and contain none but practically inert pigments, ground as fine as possible. Pigments which impart any reaction, whether acid or alkaline, to water after digestion for twelve hours therein should be discarded from use. The practice of neutralising the acid reaction of linseed oil before grinding in with the pigmentary substances is of no value, since experience has proved that the acidity reappears during the drying of the paint.

3. The paint should dry sufficiently in twelve hours to withstand any downfall to which it may be exposed.

4. Grinding should be carried so far that no granules of pigment are left, the paint drying with a smooth surface, besides being easily distributable, and on no account liable to run down when applied to perpendicular surfaces.

5. The paint must not contain any turpentine oil, because this, in acting as a diluent, though rendering the paint more workable, reduces the linseed oil ratio in the stratum of paint.

6. The adhesion to the metal must be perfect, and the dried paint must be elastic and remain so for a long time.

Simon lays down the following conditions to be fulfilled by a good paint for iron:—

1. It should afford a protective air-excluding covering over the iron.

2. The materials used in the paint should be free from bodies capable of attacking iron or liable to be decomposed by atmospheric influences.

3. In addition to high adhesive and cohesive properties, the paint must be very elastic and have a coefficient of expansion approximately equal to that of iron.

4. In the selection of the materials regard must be paid to the question of conductivity in respect of heat and electricity. Hitherto these factors have been almost entirely neglected, although both are of importance.

5. The colour of the paint should be such that incipient rusting can be detected, and timely precautions taken to prevent more widespreading corrosion.

All that is necessary to be said with regard to anti-corrosive paints, or the conditions under which they can fulfil their *raison d'être*, having been discussed, attention will now be directed to the description of the component materials. It is sufficiently well known that linseed oil paints afford the best means of protection against rusting; and, in principle, the composition of any oil paint is very simple.

LINSEED VARNISH.

Putting linseed oil itself out of the question as being scarcely ever used as a varnish in practice, owing to its slow rate of drying, linseed varnish, incorporated with a finely divided pigmentary substance, forms the basis of the oil paints. On applying the paint to any surface it is distributed by the brush as a thin layer, which covers the underlying material, and, by absorbing oxygen from the air, dries to form an elastic coating highly adherent to the iron. That, under certain conditions, the pigment may exert a contributory action herein is not impossible; nevertheless it may be assumed in general that such is not the case, and that the pigment has no influence at all on the drying properties, but is merely enveloped in the linseed varnish. In this way the pigment is completely protected from external influences; and even where it is susceptible of decomposition—as is the case with zinc white, for example—destructive influences cannot come into play so long as the skin or cover of varnish remains intact. White lead, also, is decomposable by weak acids; still no one ever thinks of classing white lead among the unstable pigments, for it is just as much protected from external influences by the enveloping varnish as prevented from exercising any effect on the underlying metal, both contingencies being precluded until the varnish has suffered from the corroding hand of time.

Thus we see over and over again that linseed varnish is the principal component of all paints; and in giving this fact due recognition the Conference already mentioned propounded the following questions for discussion:—

1. What are the characteristic properties of a good linseed varnish?

2. What extraneous bodies are contained in the commercial article?

3. What admixtures are injurious and what innocuous, with reference to the employment of the varnish in the preparation of paints for ironwork?

4. In which direction and by what methods should the varnish be examined with reference to the aforesaid object?

Before going more closely into the solution of these problems, it will be necessary to devote a few words to the preparation of the linseed varnish itself.

When linseed oil is heated, at first to a temperature of 130° C. until all the contained moisture—which reveals itself by a copious production of bubbles—has been driven out, and then afterwards to about 270° C. for three or four hours, with an addition of so-called driers (lead and manganese compounds, such as red lead, litharge, sugar of lead, manganese peroxide, manganese borate, etc.), a quick drying but somewhat inspissated varnish is obtained, which in any case is thicker than the original oil, and up to about fifteen years back was the only kind classed as linseed varnish.

If, on the other hand, the oil be raised to a temperature of 130° C. as before, and one of the above-named substances, or an oleate, or resinate of lead or manganese, be then stirred in, an equally well drying but more fluid product will result. Such are most of the commercial linseed varnishes of the present day.

Besides these two kinds, which naturally differ chemically—the presumption being that the greater and more protracted heating to which the former class is exposed causes a more extensive alteration of the constituent substances than when the oil is heated to merely 130° C., though no actual investigations have been made on this point—other linseed varnishes are met with in commerce, and consist of (*a*) linseed oil mixed with driers; or (*b*) linseed oil which by some special process is made so active that it surpasses the best boiled oils in drying properties, and, in addition to being more fluid, is endowed with an excellent lustre. In the author's opinion this product is a linseed oil of unaltered composition, and should be decidedly preferred to all linseed varnishes prepared in any other way.

The question now arises as to which of these four different classes of linseed varnish is the most suitable for ironwork. In this connection it may be stated that, so far as the author is aware, no attempts have been made to subject the four kinds of varnish to a practical test as paint, side by side and under identical conditions, so as to enable a comparison to be made between them. This deficiency is due to the simple reason that, on the one hand, there was no inducement thereto, and that, on the other, the deep-rooted belief that boiled linseed varnish is the sole kind worthy of the name has caused every varnish maker to launch his wares under the title of boiled varnish. The author was himself long an ardent supporter of boiled linseed varnishes, but has become convinced by a series of trials that linseed varnishes prepared at a temperature below 270° C. are at least not inferior to the boiled varnishes in so far as drying is concerned.

It would be of great interest in the solution of the problem now under consideration—namely, the relative value, as a coating for iron, of linseed varnishes prepared respectively by heating to 270° C.; by heating to 130° C.; by mixing with liquid driers, and by rendering active the unaltered oil—to have, in addition to an exhaustive chemical examination of the varnishes by competent persons, a practical test of their efficiency by some railway official. Of course in the latter tests an identicity of pigments and conditions of use would be necessary to the attainment of reliable results. It is only by practical experiments on a large scale that the question can be settled, and not by following the example of Amsel, who, after having long denounced the addition of resinate compounds as an adulteration, all at once came to the surprising conclusion that the unboiled linseed varnishes prepared with metallic resinates are not only equal but superior to the boiled varnishes. The author, not being an analyst, is not in a position to investigate and determine the chemical differences presumably existing between the four classes of linseed varnish; but practical experience has induced the conviction that a linseed oil which has not been exposed to far-reaching dissociation through the influence of high temperatures must be more durable than one that has been so affected, even if only because practical experience teaches that linseed oil is much less rapidly decomposed by atmospheric influences than is the case with linseed varnishes prepared by strong heating.

The amount of driers employed in the manufacture of linseed varnishes varies, amounting to between 2½ and 8 per cent. in the case of lead compounds; 1 to 2½ per cent. of manganese compounds; and 1½ to 5 per cent. of metallic resinates. The temperature and duration of heating also vary—sufficient factors in the author's opinion to induce differences in the durability of various grades of even good and pure linseed varnish.

Now to consider the factors by which the necessary oxygen absorption, causative of drying, is influenced, bearing in mind that it is now recognised that the acceleration of drying is not due to the amount, or oxygen content, of the added driers, but that the object in view is to incorporate with the oil substances capable of absorbing atmospheric oxygen with avidity and rapidly parting with it to the oil.

According to Livache, the main considerations regulating the increased absorption of oxygen by drying oils, such as linseed oil, are:—

1. The degree of purity of the oil itself.
2. The age of the oil.
3. The method of storage.
4. The temperature (heat) employed.
5. The addition of certain substances.

1. *The Purity of the Oil.*—Every oil on issuing from the press is contaminated with water and various impurities, from which it must undoubtedly be freed before an elastic

mass can be produced. This object is attained either in a natural manner by subsidence, or by filtration, or finally by chemical treatment. The latter method, which generally consists in an addition of sulphuric acid, results in the destruction of substances incapable of occluding free oxygen, and therefore having no influence on the drying of the oil. If freshly pressed linseed oil, and oil that has been treated with sulphuric acid, followed by washing until neutral, be exposed to the air, it will be found that the second oil takes up a larger quantity of oxygen than the other.

2. *Age of the Oil.*—Linseed oil stored in such a manner as to exclude air will subsequently absorb oxygen in amounts varying directly with the duration of such storage.

3. *Method of Storage.*—If the oil is stored so that air can gain access, it will be found to have absorbed a certain quantity of oxygen during storage. Experience shows that this is slow to commence absorption, but once initiated it proceeds rapidly, and will therefore be the farther advanced the longer the oil has been exposed to the air.

4. *Influence of Heat.*—The temperature at which an oil is exposed to the action of the air has an influence upon its drying properties. It was demonstrated by Chevreuil that linseed oil at a temperature of 25° to 28° C. dried quicker than one at 15° to 18° C. If crude linseed oil and similar oil that has previously been heated are exposed to the air under identical conditions of temperature, the drying properties differ. Linseed oil that has been heated for three hours to a temperature at which merely a few separate bubbles of gas ascend to the surface, dries more rapidly than unheated oil and takes only half as long to set hard. Fahrion states that by such light boiling in deep vessels, so that access of oxygen is prevented, the modification of the unsaturated fatty acids is accelerated, and products are formed which are capable of rapidly absorbing oxygen. On

the other hand Chevreuil, who heated the oil under similar conditions, found that an oil heated for five hours dried less satisfactorily than one heated for only three hours. It is doubtful whether under the influence of protracted heating a portion of the glycerine is decomposed—as the odour of acrolein would imply—and consequently linolic acid is liberated; but it is known that this acid dries less quickly than linolein. For the same reasons it is also doubtful whether Mulder found linseed oil heated to 60° to 100° C. dry less satisfactorily than raw oil. On this point it may be said that—

(*a*) A moderately high temperature improves the drying power of raw linseed oil; and

(*b*) A linseed oil exposed merely to such a temperature dries less rapidly than one that has been previously subjected to the influence of heat; but only provided the heat employed was not so great as to cause incipient decomposition of the oil accompanied by the formation of a certain quantity of linolic acid.

5. *Addition of Certain Substances.*—It has long been known from experience that the addition of certain substances, such as white lead, litharge, manganese oxide, etc., increases the drying properties of the drying oils.

In certain cases these substances are mixed with the oil in the cold; whilst in others the oil and driers are brought together in a warm condition. To take, in the first place, the lead compounds, which have long been in use, the general practice is to heat the oil with the lead drier, the latter being added at the stage when linolic acid has been liberated through the action of the heat employed. Hereupon the oil becomes oxidised by the oxygen in the lead oxide, and when the operation is terminated a certain amount of metallic lead is found in the residue.

This double reaction is apparently without influence on the resulting effect: in the first place, experience teaches that lead linolate does not impart any actual drying properties, being pulverulent; and, in the second place, linolic acid dries less rapidly than linoxyn. Nevertheless it is indisputable that a linseed oil heated along with lead oxide possesses greater drying powers than a raw oil or one boiled without addition of such oxide. However, when it is remembered that a good linseed oil, exposed to the air, absorbs oxygen to the extent of 16 to 18 per cent. of its own weight in undergoing conversion into a solid mass; and when, moreover, it is recollected that the quantity of lead oxide (red lead, or litharge) used does not exceed in practice 3 to 8 per cent. as a maximum; it will be evident that the above quantity of oxygen cannot be supplied by the lead oxide, since the amount present in the latter is only about 1 per cent. out of the 18 per cent. required. Consequently such addition of lead oxide can only play a small part in the oxidation of the oil. Moreover, some portions of the lead oxide do not sustain any loss of oxygen, the oxide combining with the oil to form a lead soap. Nevertheless, the presence of a certain quantity of metallic lead at the end of the oxidation process proves that the oxide has, to a corresponding extent, participated in the work of oxidation; and we have seen, from the influence of oxygen on the raw oil, that the drying power increases when the oxidation of the oil has attained a certain degree.

Similar observations and deductions are made in connection with the drying powers when manganese compounds are employed. An appropriate explanation is, however, afforded by the important observation recorded by Chevreuil, to the effect that when linseed oil is applied to a bright surface of metallic lead, free from any film of oxide, a considerable increase in the drying power of the oil is noticeable. Here it is indisputable that the oil could not have absorbed oxygen from any other source than the atmosphere, and it is therefore solely the presence of the metal that has increased the drying power of the oil.

This fact may, however, be followed up still further. If a raw drying oil be mixed in a flask with porous lead obtained by decomposing a lead salt with some other metal, the drying properties of the oil are greatly improved, without any elevation of temperature having occurred. In this case the possibility of any absorption of oxygen by the oil is altogether precluded. It therefore follows that a small amount of lead dissolved in the oil (acids) is sufficient to increase the drying power.

In the case of manganese compounds this drying power cannot be proved directly. Lead, however, can be replaced in the oil by manganese, it being sufficient to treat the oil—previously treated with lead—with a manganese salt, such, for example, as manganese sulphate; whereupon double decomposition ensues, and an insoluble lead salt is formed, whilst the lead in solution in the oil is displaced by the manganese. The drying properties of oil treated in this manner are high, and far superior to those of oils boiled with manganese salts. This circumstance may be explained as follows: when the oil is spread out in a thin layer so as to facilitate access of air the film assumes a dark colour owing to the manganese oxide being raised to a higher state of oxidation by the oxygen of the air; afterwards, in proportion as the oil thickens and dries, this dark coloration progressively diminishes, the oxidation of the manganese peroxide having thus been the means of oxidising the oil, so that finally a solid and perfectly colourless mass is obtained.

The aforesaid coloration and subsequent complete decoloration show that the manganese oxide has served as a carrier of oxygen, by itself taking up oxygen from the air and then parting with it to the oil. In the case of lead oxide the process is probably the same, though less energetic.

Hence lead or manganese compounds used as driers in oils play an intermediary part, yielding up their absorbed atmospheric oxygen to the oil, and thus making the latter quicker drying than it would be without their assistance. The natural sequel of this discovery is to endeavour to ascertain whether the same *rôle* of intermediary is played by metals other than manganese and lead; and the simplest way of testing this is to take oil that has been boiled with litharge and add to it a metallic salt containing some acid which forms with lead a compound insoluble in oil. As we have already seen, oil heated with litharge and spread out thin will dry in twenty-four hours. However, on replacing the lead in the oil by copper, zinc, or cobalt, the oil does not dry under thirty-six hours; and when nickel, iron, chrome, etc., are substituted in the same way the drying is protracted to forty-eight hours. The observation that oils from which lead has been displaced by manganese dry more rapidly than those prepared with manganese salts direct is very important. Industrially, certain preparations of lead or manganese are used, but their selection is apparently regulated by their ratio of solubility in the oil when heated, and consequently preference is given to lead acetate and manganese borate, both of which are decomposed by heat and yield up to the oil lead oxide and manganese oxide respectively, the beneficial influence of which oxides is well known.

On heating lead acetate to about 100° C. it parts with its water of crystallisation, in which it melts at 75° C., and also with a little of its acetic acid; if, however, the heat be increased to 280° C., the salt decomposes altogether into lead carbonate and acetate, leaving behind as a residue finely divided lead, which plays the chief part in the drying of the oil. Like all the other manganese compounds, manganese borate is of a somewhat unstable nature, the affinity of boric acid for manganese oxide being merely slight, so that the acid is set at liberty on the application of heat. Hence the only advantage resulting from the use of this salt is the readiness with which its manganese oxide can be introduced into the oil.

As already remarked, unoxidised lead in a highly porous condition has a very important influence on the drying power of the oil; and it is also of interest to learn what is the effect of other metals readily obtainable by precipitation. Only a very slight accession of drying power is found to result, however, from the use of precipitated copper or zinc; as might have been presumed from Chevreuil's observation that linseed oil, applied to lead free from oxide, dries much quicker than on sheets of copper, zinc or iron, the latter metals having no action and the oil drying thereon as slowly as on glass or porcelain.

So far as the numerous substances—other than lead or manganese compounds—that have been from time to time proposed as driers are concerned, none of them has any appreciable effect. Chevreuil showed that so far from increasing the drying properties of oils, some at least of these substances—notably antimony salts—produce quite the opposite result. Even when a favourable influence has been found, exceptionally, to follow the use of individual salts, it is in reality attributable solely to the heat employed.

According to Simon it still remains to be proved whether the *ozonised linseed varnish* recently placed upon the market is really deserving of notice. If ozone be passed through oil, only a part, at most, will enter into chemical combination, by far the greater proportion being simply absorbed and retained on account of the affinity for gases displayed by oil. Proof that a large quantity of uncombined oxygen is present is afforded by the circumstance that oil treated in this manner will not give any reaction with zinc iodide and starch, though when heat is applied a blue coloration is developed. It is thus scientifically demonstrated that an available supply of oxygen is here present, which would be a constant source of danger from rusting in case moisture and carbon dioxide obtained access.

Properties of a Good Linseed Varnish.

The author, deeming it necessary to go into these details to make the subject generally comprehensible, will now turn to the first point arising in this connection, *viz.*, the characteristic properties of good linseed varnish.

Landolt discusses the matter as follows: "By normal, *i.e.*, pure, linseed varnish we understand solely the product obtained by boiling or heating pure linseed oil to temperatures between 180° and 250° C., with, perhaps, the addition of some drier. The specific gravity at 15° C. and viscosity at 20° C. should be determined.

"Pure, good linseed varnish ought to be clear, pale to dark yellow in colour—according to the heat and driers employed—and should dry, dust-proof, within twenty-four hours at the outside. The consistency is somewhat thicker than that of raw oil: viscosity should be determined in round numbers, probably at 20° C. The taste and smell are more or less characteristic to an expert."

The author long ago laid down the characteristic properties exacted of a good linseed varnish, in the following terms:—

Consistency.—A good varnish must be somewhat thicker than linseed oil, but not so thick as to need reducing with turpentine to make it workable as paint without producing too thick a coating—since, when such thick layers are formed, the drying is merely superficial and the paint will be liable to crack.

Colour.—This varies according to the method of preparation adopted, but should usually be pale to reddish yellow, or even reddish brown, but on no account dark brown or blackish brown.

Varnishes prepared by steam heat are paler than those boiled over direct fire; and manganese varnishes—*i.e.*, those in which manganous borate or manganese hydrate is used as a drier—are paler than those prepared with lead acetate, litharge, red lead, manganese dioxide, etc., approaching in fact more nearly in this respect to the varnishes produced by the aid of atmospheric air or by the direct introduction of oxygen gas. The duration of heating also exerts an influence on the colour, the longer the exposure to a high temperature the darker the varnish, by reason of the carbonisation of certain matters and the consequent brown coloration they impart.

Smell.—The odour of a good varnish recalls that of linseed oil, accompanied by an empyreumatic aroma like that of the vapours evolved on heating; it may be unpleasant, but should not be bad (stinking), or still less resemble the smell of fish oil or resin oil, since that would indicate the presence of these bodies as adulterants. If overheated the varnish will possess an empyreumatic smell, stink, and be blackish brown in colour.

Flavour.—This also resembles that of linseed oil, but is more irritating, bitter and unpleasant. The flavour affords the quickest and readiest means of detecting adulterations with fish oil and resin oil.

Good linseed varnish must neither be turbid nor contain solid matter in suspension. If not clear it should be left in complete repose for at least fourteen days in a moderately warm situation, at the end of which time it will, if free from resin oil, have become clear, and the amount of sediment deposited will enable one to readily determine whether the varnish had already been clarified or not. Every varnish, no matter how well treated in this respect, will form a slight deposit during prolonged storage, but even after some months this will not exceed $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent., and is therefore negligible.

Many varnish makers carry out the clarifying process in a very perfunctory manner, and send their products out almost as soon as made, the consequence being that they reach the consumer in a turbid condition and take a fortnight or a month to become bright; the sediment amounts to as much as 7 per cent., and the goods may be considered as imperfect, to say the least.

1. Drying power is one of the main characteristics of good linseed varnish; when spread out in thin layers, without any addition of pigmentary substances, on glass or metal, it should be so far dry at the end of twenty-four hours as to afford no hold to dust, etc., and be set hard within another twenty-four hours, whilst still, however, retaining a certain degree of elasticity and softness. Should it dry quicker this is in some respects an advantage; but if on the other hand it dries more slowly, that is an indication that it has been insufficiently boiled, contains too small a proportion of driers, or has been adulterated with extraneous substances.

2. With regard to the nature of the said extraneous matters (adulterants) present in the commercial article, and to

3. Which of them are inimical and which harmless in view of the employment of the varnish in the preparation of paints for ironwork,

Dr. A. Landolt divides the adulterants present in commercial linseed varnish into two kinds—*intentional* and *accidental.*

"The accidental admixtures (*i.e.*, adulterants) are: resin (colophony), resin oil, raw (unboiled) linseed oil; petroleum residues of high boiling point, and mineral oils. The varnish prepared by the so-called cold process must also be regarded as a falsification, since this product is unsuitable for use on ironwork. The previously mentioned adulterations with fish oil, tallow, camelina oil, poppy oil, hemp oil, etc., are rarely, if ever, practised, linseed oil being as a rule cheaper than any of these oils. The principal adulterants are resin, resin oil, raw linseed oil and mineral oil.

"First place among the accidental adulterants may be accorded to the suspended impurities which render the varnish turbid, the second place being occupied by water, derived from damp casks. The injurious admixtures are resin, resin oil, and non-drying oils, as well as the linseed varnish prepared by the cold process, and raw oil."

No fit distinction can really be drawn between injurious and harmless admixtures in linseed varnish, since all of them that come in question in the adulteration of the varnish—such as resin, resin oil, mineral oil and substitutes—exercise an unfavourable influence on the drying, hardening and durability of the paint. Even accidental moisture is injurious, in so far that it at least retards drying and hardening, which retardation constitutes the first appreciable difference between pure and adulterated varnish, and one that is attended by ulterior results. All linseed varnishes adulterated with resin oil and resin dry more slowly than when pure, and also harden more slowly, or not at all, in the latter event remaining soft and tacky. Moreover it is found that such adulterated varnishes, though at first apparently dry and hard to the touch, become tacky again after a lapse of some weeks, and thus allow dust to collect and form a solid crust on the surface. It is also well known that they are very liable to crack after a while. Mineral oils also retard drying and prevent the paint from setting hard. If present in excess of a certain proportion they also give rise to the remarkable phenomenon of a separation of the linseed varnish from the mineral oil, the former drying under a superficial layer of the latter, which remains in its original condition and never dries.

4. As far as the direction in, and methods by, which varnish should be tested in view of ascertaining its suitability for use in paints is concerned, the investigation of the drying oils or linseed varnishes has, after a long period of neglect, made some progress during the last three years, in so far that the director of the experimental department of the German Painters' Association in Kiel, Dr. Amsel, has greatly interested himself in the matter, and has published his results in numerous pamphlets and the technical press. Without going more closely into these results or their reliability, the author will at present merely refer to one method, the so-called water reaction, which is claimed to detect in a simple manner various specified adulterations. It would considerably exceed the limits of the present work to quote all the interesting details of the various treatises by Dr. Amsel, and it is sufficient to mention that they may be found in the *Berichte* of the German Chemical Society (1897). Amsel's views have given rise to the publication of various conflicting expressions of opinion by other chemists, such as Dr. Lippert and Dr. Weger; and as the question is by no means finally settled, the author considers it advisable to refrain from reproducing such controversial matter, but will content himself with devoting attention to the older methods of examination, merely giving the reference where the others may be found.

The methods of testing arrange themselves naturally into two groups: A—scientific, physical and chemical tests; and B—so-called practical or empirical tests.

Under group A are to be classified, according to Landolt—

1. Determination of specific gravity.
2. Determination of viscosity at 20° C.

3. Refractometer index (experiments to be made).

4. Setting—or solidifying—point, determination.

5. Determination of the melting and setting points of the free fatty acids.

6. Determination of the saponification value.

7. Determination of the iodine value.

8. Detection of adulteration by resin, resin oil, raw linseed oil, linseed oil substitutes, mineral oils.

9. Determination of the added driers.

B. The practical or empirical tests relate to—

1. Brightness.

2. Taste and smell.

3. Behaviour on heating to 300° to 320° C.

4. Drying power.

The behaviour of the varnish when heated to 300° to 320° C. affords important indications. Good, pure linseed varnish should remain clear under this treatment without coagulating or getting "lumpy," as the technical term is, *i.e.*, it should not form any gelatinous excretions.

Landolt says: "The so-called mercantile linseed oil, which is the sole quality coming under consideration, is rarely free from watery mucinous substances. From these it can be freed to a greater or smaller extent by prolonged storage in suitable vessels. In ordinary commercial linseed oil, however, it will be seen that, as soon as the temperature reaches 175° C., a number of bubbles form at the surface, and, after a short time, coagulation sets in by the formation of lumps which rise and fall in the liquid, and frequently collect into conglomerations resembling frog spawn. In this manner the oil may be freed from these injurious accessory constituents, and consequently every good linseed varnish should be heated to this temperature unless an oil clarified in a superior manner by storage is used.

"These substances are still present in a dissolved condition in linseed varnish prepared by the cold process. This varnish becomes lumpy when heated, which oil or varnish of normal constitution, free from these substances, does not do.

"The drying power is ascertained by spreading the varnish out on glass plates. Good linseed varnish should dry dust-proof, within twenty-four hours, at a temperature of 15° C."

Adulteration with Resin.

Varnish adulterated with resin is generally thicker than it should be; dries in thirty-six to forty-eight hours; is also apparently solid, but becomes tacky at the temperature of the hand—tested by laying the hand on the painted surface. Dust will readily stick on such paint, which it renders grey and dull in appearance. After a brief exposure to the weather the paint perishes and falls off.

If linseed varnish, in which an adulteration with resin is suspected, be shaken up frequently during several hours with strong (95 per cent.) alcohol, then left at rest and the resulting extract decanted, the adulterant may be detected in the latter. To this end the extract is distilled in a flask with a condensing receiver, or in a distilling apparatus, the recovered alcohol and undistilled residue being weighed. If the latter exceed $\frac{1}{40}$ part of the total extract a falsification with resin or resin oil is revealed, because only one part of linseed oil or varnish is soluble in 40 parts of alcohol.

When varnish adulterated with resin is exposed in a flat vessel to the action of the air, a portion of the resin will separate out, in ten to fourteen days' time, in small crystalline granules and can be readily identified as such.

A more circumstantial method of detecting the presence of resin is to boil the varnish for a few minutes with 95 per cent. alcohol, drawing off the solution when cool and then treating it with lead acetate solution. In the case of pure varnish merely a slight turbidity is produced, whilst if resin be present, a lumpy white precipitate is formed, which can be converted into pure resin by repeated washings and meltings.

The Detection of Unboiled Linseed Oil.

The detection of unboiled linseed oil in varnish is based on the percentage content of unaltered glycerine. To determine this, 5 grams of the oil under examination are saponified in the usual manner, and the soap decomposed by hydrochloric acid; whereupon, after standing a little while, the acid liquor containing the glycerine is filtered away from the insoluble fatty acids. The glycerine solution is rendered strongly alkaline by caustic alkali, and then treated with crystals of potassium permanganate until the liquid assumes a persistent pale red colour. A little sodium sulphate is then added to decompose the excess of permanganate, the manganese oxide is removed by filtration, and the filtrate heated to boiling after acidification with acetic acid, the solution being finally decomposed by calcium chloride. The formation of a white precipitate of calcium oxalate indicates the presence of glycerine. The oxalate can be converted, by calcination, into calcium carbonate, 100 parts of which will correspond to 0·5 part of glycerine.

Adulteration with Fish Oil.

Adulteration with fish oil can be detected by the taste and smell, and also by means of chemical reagents. If ten parts of the linseed varnish under examination be stirred up with three parts of sulphuric acid in a suitable vessel and left to stand until the oil and acid layers have separated, a white precipitate, containing the metallic compounds, is formed, whilst the varnish becomes dark brown, and the acid orange yellow to yellow brown, in colour when fish oil is present. On the other hand pure linseed oil varnish is at first greenish, turning later to brownish green, whilst the acid assumes a more yellowish colour. When treated with chlorine gas, a linseed varnish adulterated with fish oil at once turns dark brown, and finally black; whereas, on the other hand, unadulterated varnish becomes more and more decolorised, owing to the bleaching action of chlorine on the vegetable fats and oils, the animal fats—with the exception of neat's-foot oil—on the contrary being always darkened in colour thereby and finally turned black. If 5 parts, by volume, of linseed varnish be boiled with 1 part of caustic soda lye (sp. gr. 1·34) there results a yellowish emulsion in the case of unadulterated linseed varnish, or a red one when the varnish has been falsified with fish oil.

Detection of Mineral Oils, Petroleum Derivatives.

According to Landolt a few drops of the oil to be tested are heated on a porcelain plate over a water or steam bath at about 80° or 90° C., a drop of concentrated sulphuric acid being applied, after a short time, by means of a glass rod. If the oil is pure only a sharply defined brown spot is produced, but should it contain mineral oil a movement of particles is set up in the oil directly the acid is added, the brown spot dispersing in an outward direction. A similar behaviour is noticed with linseed oil containing resin oil.

Adulteration with Resin Oil.

Resin oil is the most common adulterant of linseed varnish, and can in most cases be detected by the smell alone, this characteristic becoming more apparent if a few drops of the varnish under examination be rubbed between the hands until they become warm. The taste also affords an excellent means for detecting the presence of even very small quantities of this oil, the irritant, nauseous flavour being recognisable directly. If varnish containing resin oil be agitated with dilute sulphuric—or hydrochloric—acid and left to stand, there forms, in addition to the white precipitate of lead and manganese salts, a number of sticky, white lumps; whereas, with pure linseed varnish, only the first-named deposit is produced, and the liquid will have become thoroughly clarified after a few hours. Furthermore the (Fischer) oleometer can be employed for testing, pure manganese varnish registering 26° and lead varnish 24°, whereas varnish containing resin oil will indicate barely 20° to 22°. A special peculiarity exhibited by all varnishes containing resin oil is that when stored cold a part of the resin oil is precipitated, the varnish becoming turbid, and a compact sediment is formed which disappears altogether when warmed. If a suspected sample of varnish be immersed in a freezing mixture at about 5° to 6°, the above phenomenon will make its appearance in a very short time when resin oil is present; whereas pure linseed varnish remains pale and clear. The formation of a considerable quantity of sediment in linseed varnish during storage indicates, with certainty, adulteration with resin oil. Again, 10 grams of the suspected varnish may be mixed with 50 cc. of alcohol and 5 grams of caustic potash (dissolved in a minimum of water), and heated for half an hour under a reflux condenser, after which 50 cc. of water are added and the whole is cooled by immersion in cold water. Then the liquid is shaken up with petroleum spirit in a separating funnel, and, after the two layers have separated, the lower stratum is drawn off as completely as possible. The stratum of petroleum spirit is next washed repeatedly with water, which is finally separated. As, however, a few drops of water will be drawn off along with the petroleum spirit, it is advisable to transfer the latter to a dry flask, from whence it can be poured into the weighing flask. By this means the water remains adherent to the walls of the intermediate flask. The residual liquid from the first treatment with petroleum spirit is extracted to exhaustion with the same solvent and the total extract is united.

In order to afford a rapid test for the presence of resin oil or mineral oils in the unsaponifiable matter obtained by the above method, it is shaken up with an equal volume of acetone. If the liquids are completely miscible, the liquid is resin oil, or a mixture of the latter with a little mineral oil A similar test may be performed with alcohol (sp. gr. 0·95) in which resin oils sink, whilst mineral oils do not.

Another method for detecting adulterations with resin oils, which it is said to reveal when present even in quantities too small to be discernible by the taste or smell, is described by Landolt as follows :—

About 5 to 10 cc. of the oil under examination are placed in a test tube with 3 to 5 cc. of pure concentrated commercial nitric acid and warmed on the boiling water bath, a check experiment being made concurrently with a linseed oil of known purity, and the alterations noted.

Pure linseed oil will remain yellow, but oil containing resin oil will turn red.

When prices of varnishes rule high, adulteration with turpentine oil, and even with benzol, is occasionally practised. If a few drops of such linseed varnish be rubbed between the hands, the odour of turpentine or benzol will become manifest ; the falsification may, however, be detected with greater certainty by a distillation test, whereby these volatile oils will be driven over, leaving the linseed varnish behind unaltered. By working with weighed quantities the percentage of adulteration can be determined from the amount of distillate collected.

Detection of Driers in Linseed Varnish.

It can be ascertained whether a given varnish has been prepared by the aid of lead or other chemical compounds ; and the tests employed only lead to negative results—*i.e.*, no precipitate is formed—in case air or oxygen gas has been used for oxidising the linseed oil. When the oil is boiled with metallic oxides or other chemical compounds capable of yielding up oxygen, metallic linolates are produced and remain in solution or chemical combination with the oil, from which they can be afterwards separated—by solution or precipitation—by the addition of dilute hydrochloric or sulphuric acid. This forms the basis of the method of detection. The varnish is mixed with about its own volume of sulphuric acid in a test glass, and watched for the formation of a precipitate. If a white deposit is produced, which turns black in presence of sulphuretted hydrogen, the varnish contains *lead*, and has therefore been boiled along with lead compounds, or, perhaps, been merely incorporated with such. If the acid remains clear and untroubled, but turns greenish, changing to black on the addition of sulphuretted hydrogen, then *copper* compounds have been employed. On the other hand, should the precipitate remain unchanged, lead is absent, and a further test is made, first with ammonia and then with ammonium sulphide. When *iron* is present a black precipitate is formed, whilst *manganese* gives a flesh-coloured, and *zinc* a white precipitate. Further indications are obtainable by treating the original acid solution with an aqueous solution of sodium carbonate. A dirty-green precipitate implies *iron*, as does also the production of a blue coloration when potassium ferrocyanide is added to the solution. A white precipitate, turning blackish brown on exposure to air, indicates *manganese*; and when *zinc* is present a white precipitate, soluble in excess, is formed on the addition of a little ammonia to the acid solution.

With regard to the direction and manner in which varnish should be tested with reference to its suitability for subsequent use as paint, the following appropriate remarks were made by the late Professor Rudolf Benedikt :—

"Thanks particularly to Bauer and Hazura, and their pupils, our knowledge on the subject of linseed oil has been greatly increased during the past few years. We now know that the acid of linseed oil, so far from being a single substance, is a mixture of at least three acids, described by Hazura as linolic, linolenic, and iso-linolenic acid, and that a high proportion of the two latter is characteristic of this oil. The same workers have revised Mulder's labours, confirmed the majority of his results, and brought them into harmony with modern ideas of chemical composition. Moreover, the analytical examination of linseed oils and the fatty oils in general has developed to such an extent that we are enabled to identify and quantitatively determine with certainty—within definite limits—the presence of admixtures of resin, resin oil, and mineral oils. On the other hand, however, the detection of added fish oil or vegetable oils is, as yet, possible only in a qualitative sense, but not quantitatively. For the purposes of buying, the varnish maker has sufficient indications available to enable him to determine whether a proffered sample of oil is adulterated with resin oil or mineral oils; moreover, he can determine the drying power by (for example) the Livache method.

"When buying linseed oil the varnish maker will be sure to choose the one exhibiting the highest iodine value, the greatest increase in weight under the Livache test, or highest thermal value (rise in temperature) when mixed with sulphuric acid. He should also fix a certain minimum for the iodine value, Livache value, and Maumené thermal value, notwithstanding that oils exhibiting lower values may be none the less pure. (The buyer might probably lay down these conditions. The seller, however, does not trouble himself about them; he sells 'pure linseed oil'.)

"It is, however, of importance that each of these methods of testing affords in itself an idea of the drying properties of the oil, and enables a comparison to be drawn as to the value of different oils. The determination of the specific gravity, viscosity, refraction, etc., may serve to supplement and confirm the results of analysis in dubious cases, but will seldom be necessary.

"A manufacturer might, for instance, make it a condition that the linseed oil supplied should have an iodine value of at least 170.

"In the case of linseed varnish, however, the conditions are different, since it is impossible to demand that a good varnish must exhibit a given iodine value, a definite oxygen absorption value, or a particular degree of viscosity. Varnish has a lower iodine value, a higher acetyl value, greater specific gravity, and higher viscosity than raw linseed oil.

"During the boiling process the iodine value recedes, whilst the other specified values increase. Consequently, if one were to boil a pure linseed oil to varnish, and chemically examine the samples drawn from time to time, tabulating the results, a progressively decreasing series of iodine values and an inverse ratio of acetyl values would be obtained, though among the resulting products a number might still be good varnishes. The individual samples would differ among themselves in the rate of drying and degree of hardness afterwards, but might all be useful varnishes. We have ourselves prepared almost equally good varnishes by boiling one and the same oil for different lengths of time with the same addition. The conditions are more complex when oils of different origin are boiled by different methods with different proportions of added materials.

"Chemical analysis, therefore, will only be able to give an indication of the value of a varnish, provided all available chemical and physical modes of testing are applied concurrently, and the results judged according to a pre-arranged table.

"For instance, when one hears that a linseed varnish has an iodine value of 130, nothing is learned therefrom ; it must first be ascertained from the tables what are the acetyl and Livache values and viscosity corresponding to a good varnish having the iodine value in question.

"However, no sufficient experience has yet been gained, by a long way, with regard to the chemical and physical properties of good varnish, and many of the data published are too unreliable to suffice for the preparation of such tables. For this purpose it would therefore, in the first place, be essential to have at disposal a series of good varnishes, and to give the work into the hands of an analyst. I myself would be pleased to undertake this task, in conjunction with my assistants. Even then it is not certain that useful results would be obtained by this mode of procedure, since chemical practice shows numerous examples wherein analysis has led to no positive results. I remember, for instance, the examination of clay for its fire-resisting properties. On the basis of analysis certain ratios and quotients were established, and it was stated that a clay could be considered fire-resisting when its constituents were present in certain proportions. On the termination of the analytical experiments, however, direct practical tests, in comparison with the Seger cones, were begun, and the results so obtained employed as the sole guide in judging; so that the whole analysis was really superfluous, since it was found that clay might possess the most divergent composition and still be fire-resisting.

"Meanwhile one cannot do better than to test the drying power of a varnish by spreading out and exposure, which will also enable the consistency after drying, and the resistance to air, light, and water, to be ascertained. This plan is, however, beset with the disadvantage that defects only make their appearance after a comparatively long time; in this case, as in others, protection must be secured by obtaining the materials from firms known to be trustworthy. In addition to this a chemical examination, in certain directions —the admixture of resin, resin oil, mineral oils, fish oil—can be performed. Nevertheless, it should not be forgotten that a chemical examination sufficiently thorough to afford a comprehensive judgment of a linseed varnish—even premising that all the data for such judgment have been acquired, *i.e.*, the projected tables drawn up—takes a deal of time to carry out, and needs a highly skilled and expert chemist. It must not be imagined that such simple tests as are used, *e.g.*, for olive oil—iodine value, and perhaps specific gravity determinations—will be sufficient.

"The considerable expense attaching to examinations of this kind, particularly when the comparison of varnishes offered by different sellers is in question, would be likely to preclude a systematic and general investigation.

"The examination becomes a still more complicated matter when ready-made paints are under consideration, because it then becomes necessary to separate the varnish from the mineral admixtures. Bearing in mind the known methods of testing—which would, if subjected to thorough criticism, yield little that is useful—I give it as my opinion that the problem of the testing of varnishes is still far from being ripe for decision."

The foregoing remarks are very instructive, showing, as they do, that it is possible to ascertain, both by analytical means and empirically, by a few simple tests, whether a linseed varnish is adulterated or not. They nevertheless leave us completely in the dark when it is a question of whether even a pure linseed varnish affords a guarantee of its suitability as an anti-corrosive paint. In the author's opinion this problem will never be solved, but that attention must be restricted to requiring—

1. That the linseed varnish contains no extraneous fatty oils, resin, resin oil, mineral oils, or any adjuncts whatsoever.

(These are generally metallic resin soaps dissolved in benzol or petroleum.)

2. That the varnish shall possess a certain consistency, to be determined by means of the viscosimeter.

3. That the varnish shall dry within twelve hours, and be set hard within a further twenty-four hours.

4. That it shall be light brown in colour, perfectly clear, and desposit no sediment even after storage for a fortnight.

The paint manufacturer will buy the necessary raw material—linseed oil—in the chief commercial centres and work it up into varnish; and he will know how to protect himself against adulteration, and to prepare his varnish so as to obtain a product that will comply with the conditions enumerated. In despite of all the progress that has been made, the purchase of the article is still a question of confidence, and an honourable manufacturer will not resort to adulteration in order to make a slight extra profit or a lower tender.

CHINESE WOOD OIL (WOOD OIL, JAPANESE WOOD OIL, VARNISH TREE OIL, OR TUNG OIL).

Even in older chemico-technical works brief notices are to be met with on the wood oil of China and Japan, which is obtained from the seeds of the varnish tree (*Aleurites cordata, Elaeocócca vernicia*) in those countries, and is sold there as a varnish oil for waterproofing wood, calking ships, and lacquering furniture. About 200,000 Chinese piculs (1 picul = 133·33 lb., or 60½ kilos.) are annually dispatched from Hankow on the Yang-tse-Kiang to other parts of China.

According to de Negri and Sburlati, the fruit of the varnish tree contains 53·35 per cent. of oil, about 42 per cent. being recoverable by pressing, etc. The same authorities also state that the oil is clear, of a yellowish colour, and having a peculiar smell resembling that of castor oil. It is tasteless, dries in about twenty-four hours when exposed to the air, and is soluble in cold, absolute alcohol. By solution in carbon di-sulphide, and evaporation of the solvent, the oil is converted into a crystalline mass. According to another report the cold-pressed oil is pale yellow, whilst that obtained by warm pressing is almost dark brown. It is a thick oil of high density (0·940), and does not solidify in the cold. This oil, which possesses much stronger drying properties than that from *Aleurites triloba*, must not be confounded with the balsam known as wood oil, or Gurjun balsam, derived from *Dipterocarpus turbinatus Gaertn.;* the latter is, however, adulterated with wood oil. The examination of the oil by Cloëz showed it to consist of two glycerides, ordinary olein and an ordinary glyceride—elæomargarin—the latter yielding, on saponification, elæomargaric or margarolic acid $C_{16}H_{30}O_2$. This report has, on account of the formula, but little pretention to accuracy; neither (if the drying properties of the oil be recollected) has the assertion that it changes, on exposure to the air, into a fat melting at 32° C. In drying power it is superior to linseed oil, but the warm-pressed oil appears to be endowed with this property in a less degree than that from cold pressing.

When heated with alcoholic potash it saponifies rapidly, and, according to the amount of potash (211 : 1000) required for saponification, would appear to contain a hitherto unknown fatty acid.

The earliest reports give the following as the characteristics of wood oil:—

Sp. gr. at 15° C. = 0·940 (Davies and Holmes); 0·936 to 0·941 (de Negri and Sburlati).

Melting point of the fatty acids: 43·8° C. (de Negri and Sburlati).

Setting point: 31·2° C. (same observers).

Saponification value: 211 (Davies and Holmes); 155·6 to 172 (de Negri and Sburlati).

Iodine value: 159 to 161 (de Negri and Sburlati).

The last-named observers found the acid content to be 1·18 per cent. calculated as oleic acid.

Recently J. H. B. Jenkins has published the following particulars on Japanese wood oil:—

Sp. gr. at about 13° C. = 0·9385.

Setting point: below 17° C.

Iodine value: 165·7 (Hübl).

Saponification value: 194; Hehner number 96·4; unsaponifiable matter, 0·44 per cent.; Maumené thermal reaction, 371; free acid calculated as oleic acid = 3·84 per cent.; melting point of the mixed fatty acids, 37° C.; iodine value, 150·1; setting point of the fatty acids, 34° C.; viscosity (Redwood instrument) at 12½° C. = 41.

If 5 grams of the oil be mixed with 2 cc. of carbon bi-sulphide and 2 cc. of sulphur chloride, and stirred in the cold, a thick, sticky jelly is formed. At the boiling temperature of water a skin begins to form on the surface of the oil within one quarter of an hour, and entirely covers it in two hours. At the end of four hours' heating the increase in weight amounts to 1·14 per cent.

The elaidin test gives a dark brown-red mass, consisting of a heavy, almost solid portion and an oily residue, the whole being thick when stirred up. With Becchi's reagent a deep brown-red coloration is produced. Strong sulphuric acid converts the oil into a solid black mass, and nitric acid (sp. gr. 1·4) forms with the oil a viscid mass, which deepens in colour and becomes brittle on standing. If 9 grams of oil be dissolved in 5 cc. of chloroform, and stirred up with 5 cc. of a saturated solution of iodine in chloroform, the mixture sets to a stiff jelly in two minutes;

when only 2 grams of oil are taken the mass is so hard that it can be granulated. On exposure to a heat of 180° C. with exclusion of air, a small volume of vapour is evolved without the fluidity of the oil being diminished; but above 250° C. the oil is changed into a solid, clear elastic substance which is insoluble in the ordinary solvents for oils, and does not melt at the temperature of its formation.

According to the statements of importers, there are two kinds of wood oil: Canton wood oil and Hankow wood oil, the former being purer, better, and about 10 per cent. higher in price than the Hankow oil.

The author's experience of this oil goes to show that it is of a pale yellow colour, clear—or at most only slightly turbid, and then clarifying within a few days—and much thicker than linseed oil, in fact about the same as castor oil. The odour is peculiar and not unpleasant, approximating most nearly to hog fat; and the same applies also to the taste. When heated to 200° C. it soon undergoes considerable alteration, and also rapidly thickens with litharge, the colour then becoming darker. A faint odour of acrolein is evolved during heating. At 260° to 280° C. the oil merely gelatinises, but at higher temperatures it is changed to a solid gelatinous mass, the vapours igniting spontaneously. When manganous borate is used as the drier, the initially thin liquid changes suddenly into the gelatinous condition, and is then no longer soluble in benzol or turpentine oil, so that care is required to prevent the occurrence of this modification.

With regard to the drying properties of the oil, the following points may be mentioned: When spread out in a thin layer on glass it dries, in a closed room, within twenty-four hours or so, to a whitish film, so that the glass is no longer transparent but resembles milky or frosted glass. If the layer is thick, a longer time is occupied in drying.

On exposure to the air, however, even the thicker layers dry within a few hours. The oil, after being boiled or heated by itself, also develops the aforesaid whitish film ; but, after boiling with litharge, dries as clear and bright as any other oil varnish. Its greatest peculiarity is exhibited after drying, since whereas linseed oil, linseed varnish, and all other drying oils form a thin superficial skin which gradually becomes thicker and thicker, drying from above downwards, wood oil dries uniformly throughout, so that the upper portion is just as dry as that underneath. Even fairly thick layers can be scraped off as a tough or somewhat brittle mass, quite uniform throughout. One point worthy of note is the exceptionally slight degree of adhesion of the dry coating to glass surfaces.

Although the price of wood oil is still so high—thirty-five to forty-two shillings per cwt.—that it cannot be called a competitor of linseed oil, it has nevertheless made its way in the varnish and paint-making industries, by reason of its special rapid-drying properties ; and there is no doubt that when it has been thoroughly experimented with, it will find application in a number of ways. For example Chinese wood oil is, on account of its hardness, used as a floor varnish ; and in the waterproofing industry it has been worked up into a product ("Atcella") resembling oilcloth, and superior to the latter by reason of its unusual elasticity. Whether the oil will be found suitable for use on ironwork, particularly for the primary transparent coating, remains to be proved.

In the raw state, however, wood oil cannot be used, because it dries somewhat opaque, probably in consequence of contained mucilaginous and albuminoid matter. In order to be able to use it in the same way as linseed oil it must be heated, and that too with a small percentage of lead oxides (red lead or litharge), since otherwise it will still remain opaque. This, of course, makes no difference when it is used in paints, but even then the treatment is desirable in order to accelerate drying. In heating the oil, whether with lead compounds or those of manganese, the temperature must be carefully kept down below 200° C.; otherwise, and particularly in the case of manganese compounds (*e.g.*, manganous borate), thickening ensues and quickly develops into complete gelatinisation, which spoils the product for use. Consequently the temperature should not exceed 160° C., or 180° C., as a maximum; and when this is reached the pot should be taken off the fire—or the latter extinguished—before the driers are stirred in. This will be quite sufficient to impart the requisite drying power to the oil, and will at the same time obviate the evil already referred to. When ground with pigments, the oil prepared in this manner furnishes excellent paints, which dry through and through in a short time, and set hard and solid, unlike linseed oil paints, which harden on the surface but remain soft and tacky underneath for a long while after. There is a good demand for paints that will dry thoroughly, and for these the question of price is a minor consideration.

Its predominating quality renders wood oil also suitable for the manufacture of oil lacquer varnishes. Nevertheless, both in its employment for this purpose and as a vehicle for paints, the chief thing to be borne in mind is the above-mentioned tendency of the oil to gelatinise at temperatures approaching 200° C., when containing additions of lead or manganese compounds. Very good results are obtainable by the association of wood oil with linseed oil.

The odour of Chinese wood oil is very peculiar and hangs persistently about the varnish prepared from this oil, even long after the coating of varnish is dry; in fact its persistence is such that the smell is still decidedly apparent after the waterproof articles prepared from this oil and dried by hot air have been stored for months, just as oilcloth will smell of linseed oil for years. Of course this peculiar lard-like smell is also noticeable in the varnishes made from wood oil, and it will be evidently necessary to remove it, as far as possible, or at least to reduce it to a minimum. Masking the smell by the use of ethereal oils is not likely to accomplish the desired effect, since as the former are dissipated the odour of the oil will reappear. Consequently other means must be adopted, such, for example, as agitation with a dilute solution of permanganate of potash, a filtered solution of chloride of lime (bleaching powder), filtration through animal charcoal, stirring up with flour or potato starch and leaving a long time to settle, followed by filtration. It is claimed for the process introduced by Bang and Ruffin that almost perfect deodorisation may be effected by means of dried atmospheric air. To this end the oil is warmed in a suitable pan and subjected to a current of air (blown through it by a fan) at a temperature not exceeding 50° C. for at least six or eight hours, at the end of which time the smell of the oil will have diminished considerably, so that it becomes unobjectionable.

Mention must not be omitted that wood oil should not be regarded as a substitute for linseed oil. On the contrary, it yields varnishes, paints, and lacquers endowed with special properties; consequently no great stress need be laid on the necessity for deodorisation, since the peculiar smell of the oil may serve as a characteristic of these new products, and all the more so as it is not disagreeable.

PIGMENTS.

The second constituent of all paints is the pigment, by means of which covering power and suitable consistency are secured, pure linseed varnish forming only a transparent coating of a very attenuated nature. In order to impart the proper thickness to the paint and render it non-transparent the linseed varnish is mixed with a powdered pigment and ground along with the same in a colour mill, so that the requisite fineness and intimate admixture may be obtained. Every paint is a mixture of linseed varnish and pigment, and the latter can be recovered by leaving the mass to settle and then washing with benzol or ether; so that the pigment can be extracted from any oil paint and tested for its composition. When a paint containing a lead product, as pigment, is kept for a long time, the latter may, under certain circumstances, exert chemical influence on the linseed varnish; whereas pigments free from lead are inert in this respect. This is an important point, and one that must be borne in mind continually, in order to prevent the formation of false conclusions. Whilst many pigments are incapable of acting on linseed varnish, it may happen that, through the presence of extraneous substances in the pigment, or as a result of the method of preparation, or from other causes, some action is set up. Thus, in the case of the iron oxide pigments prepared from the residues from alum works, it may easily happen that an acid reaction is exhibited, which may have an unfavourable effect on the varnish. Moreover, water exerts a peculiar effect on these paints. If a paint containing ochre or red oxide be covered over with water and left for some time, it will be found that instead of forming a homogeneous mass the paint will become granular, a portion of the oil being displaced by water. Whether this is due to any special hygroscopicity, or to some chemical reaction, has not yet been sufficiently investigated.

As has already been said, the pigment plays the second leading part in all paints. The linseed varnish imparts elasticity, cohesion, and capacity of resisting external influences, whilst the pigment gives covering power and colour. Sufficient attention having already been given to the varnish, we will now turn to the pigments.

All pigments employed for paints to be used on ironwork are of inorganic nature, and are in part found native and partly produced by chemical means. Accordingly a distinction is drawn between—

1. Earthy pigments and
2. Chemical pigments,

both of which classes are used in paints for iron. To the former category belong all pigments containing iron oxides in larger or smaller proportions, such as ochre, colcothar, *Caput mortuum*, Venetian red, iron minium, and the scaly oxides of iron; in addition to which are others, not finding employment for this purpose, such as Terra di Siena and manganese pigments, like umber. Graphite, which consists of more or less pure carbon, also belongs to this class.

The class of chemical pigments comprises a large number of pigmentary bodies, mostly compounds of the heavy metals, lead, antimony, zinc, iron, copper, chromium, etc., and prepared by oxidation, treatment with acids, or by precipitation from various saline solutions. To enumerate all the known pigments would take up too much room, without being of any value; and therefore the author will restrict himself to the consideration of such as are employed almost exclusively in the preparation of anti-corrosive paints. These are: the pigmentary compounds of lead, zinc, and iron, as well as graphite. The other pigments used, such as vine-black, ultramarine, etc., are only employed in small quantities for toning and have no influence on the quality of the anti-corrosive paints. Consequently the pigments with which we are concerned can be divided into three principal groups, namely:—

1. Lead pigments,
2. Zinc pigments,
3. Iron pigments,

a fourth group consisting solely of graphite. The chief representatives of the three groups in question are:—

Lead group: Red lead (minium), white lead.

Zinc group: Zinc white, zinc grey, lithopone (permanent white, zinc sulphide white), calamine white, milled zinc ore, zinc silicate.

Iron group: Native oxides of iron, such as colcothar, burnt ochre, iron minium, scaly iron oxides, artificial iron oxides, *Caput mortuum*—this latter body being frequently sold as colcothar.

The *Carbon group* is represented by graphite as the principal constituent of a pigment, with vegetable charcoal as auxiliary.

Before proceeding to the further consideration of the suitability of the various pigments for anti-corrosive paints it will be necessary to briefly describe the pigments themselves.

1. *Lead Pigments.*

(*a*) *White lead.*—The basic carbonate of lead or white lead—mostly called "lead oxide" in Germany and Switzerland—has the chemical formula $2(PbCO_3)\,PbH_2O_2$. It is prepared from metallic lead in three different ways: by the Dutch method; the chamber or Austrian method; and by the wet or French method, wherein the carbonate is precipitated by carbon dioxide from a solution of lead acetate. Latterly, attempts have also been made to prepare it by electrolytic means. The covering power of the product so obtained by these methods varies, owing to differences in crystalline structure.

Good white lead is pure white, heavy, and readily pulverulent; insoluble in water, but soluble in caustic potash or caustic soda, and also dissolving, with effervescence, in nitric acid or acetic acid. In boiling hydrochloric acid it dissolves, but, on cooling, the solution deposits fine needles of lead chloride, soluble in boiling water. Solutions of white lead are thrown down as a black precipitate by sulphuretted hydrogen or ammonium sulphide, and as a white precipitate by sulphuric acid. Neutral solutions give with potassium bi-chromate a yellow precipitate of lead chromate (chrome yellow). When heated to 400° C. the carbonate parts with its carbon dioxide, lead oxide being left as a residue.

The quality and appearance of the product vary according to the method of preparation employed, the Dutch process yielding a very heavy grade of inferior colour but very great covering power, whilst the French process (precipitation method) gives a very white product of inferior covering power.

The difference in covering power of the various grades of white lead is due to differences in the size and constitution of the molecules. The precipitated white lead of low covering power is loose, coarse grained, and not infrequently crystalline. That obtained by the Dutch method is denser and fine grained; whilst the French article is crystalline in structure. In point of covering power, therefore, white lead is inferior in proportion as its crystalline character is more decided, which will be the case when the proportion of plumbic carbonate has been considerably increased during the process of manufacture, this compound being capable—apart from its great hardness—of rendering the white lead unfit for use. An excess of plumbic carbonate also tends to produce greyness.

The principal adulterant of white lead is Baryta (natural or artificial barium sulphate—permanent white). Pure white lead should dissolve completely in dilute nitric acid (1 : 2 water). The nitric acid must, however, be chemically pure, and free from hydrochloric or sulphuric acid, since the former would produce the almost insoluble chloride, and the latter the insoluble sulphate; it must also be dilute.

On the addition of sulphuric acid the insoluble lead sulphate is thrown down; after removing this by filtration the filtrate should not afford any precipitate, or even turbidity, with ammonia, ammonium sulphate, or ammonium oxalate. A white precipitate ensuing on the addition of ammonium sulphide indicates the presence of zinc white, whereas a white precipitate produced by ammonium oxalate reveals added chalk. If the white lead did not entirely dissolve in dilute nitric acid, it probably consists of a barium compound, in which lead sulphate, China clay (kaolin), gypsum, strontium carbonate and strontium sulphate scarcely ever occur as adjuncts. The residue on the filter is boiled with hydrochloric acid and set aside to cool, the precipitated lead chloride being then filtered off and the filtrate tested with barium chloride; a white precipitate is formed if lead sulphate be present. Another part of the filtrate is diluted and treated with gaseous sulphuretted hydrogen, which throws down the lead sulphate in the form of sulphide. This being filtered off, the filtrate is boiled to expel the sulphuretted hydrogen, and, after re-filtering, treated with strong ammonia. A white precipitate of alumina indicates China clay. This is separated by filtration and the liquid is tested with ammonium carbonate, which in presence of gypsum or chalk forms a white precipitate. A small portion of the residue insoluble in hydrochloric acid is taken up by a platinum loop and held in a Bunsen flame; a green coloration indicates barium, and a red one strontium.

(*b*) *Red lead* (minium; lead tetroxide).—The true fundamental constituent of red lead is the tetroxide Pb_3O_4, but the commercial product contains, in addition, a mixture of lead monoxide (litharge) and dioxide. It is prepared by changing metallic lead into the monoxide litharge, and converting the product into minium in calcining ovens. Red lead intended for paints must be free from metallic lead, since the presence in the latter of impurities, such as antimony, copper, iron, etc., will spoil the colour of the paint when dried.

Minium is a heavy, red powder, approximating in shade to orange, and having a specific gravity of 8·3. It darkens when heated, but resumes its original colour on cooling. Acids attack it to a greater or smaller extent, but when in use as a paint it is very fast to light and the effects of the weather; neither is it attacked by moisture. It cannot, however, be used where sulphuretted hydrogen gas is evolved, since this gas turns the colour brown to black, in consequence of the formation of the bi-sulphide. Red lead is seldom adulterated, and about the only substance used for this purpose is red iron oxide.

Pure, concentrated nitric acid decomposes red lead, and should form a colourless solution when water is added. A yellow coloration indicates iron, which will be confirmed by the formation of a blue precipitate with potassium ferrocyanide.

Insoluble matter, such as brick dust and the like, is left as a residue and may be examined further. An addition of baryta reduces the colour of red lead.

To determine its purity, 2 grams of the red lead to be tested are dissolved in concentrated nitric acid, and, after diluting and filtering, the whole of the lead is thrown down by sulphuric acid in presence of a little alcohol. The precipitate is washed with water on the filter, and, when dried, is calcined in a crucible, being thereafter cooled and weighed after drying over calcium chloride. The resulting weight, multiplied by 0·955, gives the amount of *pure* red lead. The liquid filtered off from the lead sulphate precipitate may be tested for iron.

Red lead can be detected in mixed paints by the dark brown coloration it gives with dilute nitric or acetic acids, and by answering to the characteristic tests for this metal—white precipitate with sulphuric acid and a yellow one with potassium iodide.

2. *Zinc Pigments.*

(*a*) *Zinc white,* zinc oxide, is non-poisonous and is unacted on by sulphuretted hydrogen. It is prepared by heating metallic zinc to pale red heat in retorts, whereupon the metal begins to volatilise and the vapours ignite, forming zinc oxide. It may also be prepared by the wet method, by decomposing a salt of zinc. The product obtained from zinc ores is seldom pure, but mostly contains variable quantities of cadmium, which considerably modifies the purity of the colour.

Zinc white is a white, loose powder, devoid of smell or taste, and with a decidedly bluish tinge. It dissolves to a clear solution in acids, strong ammonia, and alkalis, and resists the influence of atmospheric air and light, as well as sulphuretted hydrogen and sulphurous gases, with which it forms white, colourless compounds. It is therefore highly suitable for use as a pigment.

The commercial article should contain not more than 2 per cent. of moisture. This can be determined by drying a weighed quantity at 30 to 35° C. Baryta and China clay are the adulterants employed, and the water content is often artificially increased—in order to cheapen the product—to as much as 10 per cent. by damping it with glycerine.

Zinc white ought to dissolve clear in nitric acid, with only a trace of effervescence; a residue will indicate the presence of baryta or China clay. The first-named can be detected by its high specific gravity, but gives no coloration to the Bunsen flame; whereas China clay imparts a yellowish green tinge to the flame. On boiling the residue with sulphuric acid baryta remains undissolved, while China clay passes into solution. On diluting the filtrate, after cooling, and then adding ammonia, a white precipitate of alumina indicates China clay, baryta giving no precipitate.

Effervescence during solution indicates that the zinc white probably contains lead carbonate or zinc carbonate; in the latter case the solution will turn brown to black on the addition of sulphuretted hydrogen, or a similarly coloured precipitate will be formed. On neutralising the nitric solution with ammonia the whole of the zinc can be thrown down by ammonium sulphide (the precipitate must be white, otherwise the presence of extraneous metals is indicated). The resulting filtrate should give no precipitate with ammonium oxalate, or gypsum will be indicated.

(*b*) *Zinc grey* is a bye-product of the manufacture of zinc white, and is contaminated with metallic zinc and carbon, which latter substance it leaves behind as a residue when dissolved in hydrochloric, nitric, or sulphuric acid. The solution gives a white precipitate with potassium sulphide or ammonium sulphide, after neutralisation with ammonia or an alkali carbonate. Zinc blende (ground) is often met with in commerce as zinc grey.

(*c*) *Lithopone*, permanent white, patent zinc white, sulphopone, enamel white, zinc-sulphide white, Charlton white, Griffith's patent zinc white, principally consists of zinc-sulphide, with an admixture of "blanc fixe" (barium sulphate). It is prepared by the wet method by mixing zinc chloride, ammonium sulphide and barium chloride, all in a state of solution. Lithopone varies according to the method employed in its production, and does not form any uniform chemical compound. It is imperfectly soluble in acids, and when treated with hydrochloride acid the clear portion of the solution gives the reactions for zinc, in addition to which calcium and magnesium can also be detected therein. Barium and strontium are present in the residue. Used alone zinc sulphide possesses good body, but is not quite pure white in colour, to remedy which defect it is mixed with other white pigments.

3. *Iron Pigments.*

The basis of all iron pigments is iron oxide. In the condition of hydrate it forms the colouring matter of ochre, siena, umber, etc., all highly appreciated pigments, not merely on account of their durability and permanence in air and light, but also by reason of the extremely wide range of shades they produce. Iron oxide is frequently found native in large quantities in the form of hæmatite, limonite, etc., though never in a perfectly pure condition. Of the three chemically different oxides of iron, the peroxide Fe_2O_3 (ferric oxide) is the most plentiful in nature and the purest form of the ore, and is used for the production of metallic iron. It is for the most part accompanied by clay and the like, on which account the mixtures appear suitable as pigments and are frequently used as such. The colour of these natural mixtures ranges between dark red and black. When in the condition of hydrate, as limonite or yellow ochre, the colour is brownish to yellow brown.

The pure peroxide of iron is readily soluble in acids, especially in concentrated nitric acid, or a mixture of nitric and hydrochloric acids (*aqua regia*), but less easily so in sulphuric acid or dilute nitric acid, compounds of iron oxide being then formed.

The various natural peroxides of iron differ in their degree of solubility, some dissolving very readily, whilst others are extremely difficult to bring into solution, and others again are quite insoluble. It is only after exposure to the air for some time that any change occurs in the solution. If treated with caustic potash, strong ammonia, or caustic soda solution, ferric hydrate is thrown down in the form of a brownish-red precipitate ($Fe_2O_6H_6$), which loses its water of hydration on heating and is converted into red ferric oxide, Fe_2O_3. Ferro-ferric oxide, Fe_3O_4, occurs in large quantities in nature as magnetic iron ore, magnetite, and is used in making iron. It is very difficult to dissolve in acids, and the solutions contain ferrous and ferric salts.

The pigments known as the iron colours are, as has been already stated, prepared either from the native oxides, or by chemical means, and of course differ in composition; that is to say, they are all iron oxides containing varying proportions of other substances which exert considerable influence on their applicability.

(*a*) *Natural Iron Pigments.*

(i.) *Iron Minium.*—This is a dark-red to red-brown product, of metallic lustre, consisting of a mixture of hæmatite and varying proportions of alumina, the percentage of iron oxide attaining as much as 88 per cent., and even 90 per cent. For the production of iron minium the iron ore, in a roasted or unroasted state, is broken down and levigated, the washed mass being then made air-dry, calcined in iron drums, ground to fine powder, and sifted. In the making, pure, highly ferruginous lumps are picked out and thoroughly roasted in a furnace, to drive out the water of hydration and recover the ore as a reddish blue mass when cold. So prepared, the ore is taken to the stamping mill, the trough of which contains water to a depth of some thirty inches. A continuous supply of water is provided, and the excess runs off through the overflow pipe in a reddish stream, discharging into a channel about twenty-five feet long, which conducts the water, with its load of floating particles of iron oxide, into large settling tanks, where the water soon clarifies and whence it runs away clear. All the heaviest particles of the crushed ore and the coarser granules are deposited in the channel, and, after being ground in a roller mill, are mixed with water and conducted to the settling tanks; the resulting coarse deposit consists for the most part of fine quartz granules, which must be got rid of. The very fine mass in the tanks is dried so as to contain not more than 3 to 4 per cent. of water, and the resulting lumps are ground fine, sifted, and converted into dust. The product is a dark-red impalpable powder, consisting of iron oxide with a smaller or larger proportion of clay up to 25 per cent.

(ii.) *Iron Oxides of Scaly Appearance.*—These are of a special character, resembling mica in appearance, and are obtained from iron ores, such as red ironstone, hæmatite, and specular iron ore. For some years past they have been employed in the preparation of anti-corrosive paints.

Red ironstone, hæmatite, and specular iron ore, which all consist of iron oxide, occur more frequently and in more varied forms than the magnetic ore. They are found in the crystalline state (iron-glance) as hexagonal rhomboid crystals, the ground plan of which is a hexahedral rhomboid, with terminal angles of 96°. It also forms tabular crystals with alternating inclined lateral facets, whilst in other cases the edges are sharp owing to the conjunction of the basal surface with a hexagonal pyramid, which on the other hand is combined with the fundamental form, the basal surface, and other forms. The simplest plates, such as form, by agglomeration, the so-called "iron roses" found at St. Gothard, have perpendicular lateral facets through a hexagonal prism. The forms assumed by the combinations are highly diversified, the crystals being mostly fully developed, and single or in groups. Frequently they occur as dense masses, with a foliaceous to scaly, granular and columnar to fibrous structure, the granular form in particular passing over into a dense mass through progressive decrease in the size of the individual crystals. The lamellar aggregations also form shaly masses, iron-glance shale, whilst the lamellar crystals are also termed iron-glance or micaceous iron on account of their resemblance to mica. Hæmatite occurs in this form ingrown in various kinds of rock, whilst very fine scales are found as an incrustation, and are termed "iron roses". The fibrous form occurs as globular concretions (bloodstone), and finally there is the earthy form (red ochre or ruddle), wherein the hæmatite is usually impure, being mixed with clay.

Decidedly crystalline in form, hæmatite exhibits imperfect cleavage parallel to the fundamental structure and the basal surfaces ; is iron black to dark steel grey in colour, with a metallic lustre, opaque, and with a dark-red streak : as such it is termed iron-glance or specular ore. The lamellar form has the same appearance, but its very thin lamellæ are a transparent blood red and also red externally. In the granular crystalline to dense forms the colour is reddish grey to blood red, as is also the case with the fibrous form, the streak being blood red, but the lustre only semi-metallic. The earthy form is blood red and dull.

Hardness = 5·5° ; specific gravity = 5 to 5·2.

The composition is represented by the symbol Fe_2O_3 with 70 per cent. of iron and 30 per cent. of oxygen. Occasionally a little titanic acid is present, which, combined with iron oxide, as FeO, TiO_2, replaces small quantities of the oxide, as in the so-called "iron roses," on which account these latter are distinguished from hæmatites and termed "vasomelan," their streak being only reddish black to black. It is infusible before the blowpipe, and becomes magnetic in the reducing flame. When heated with borax and phosphates it behaves like magnetite, giving a strong iron reaction ; in the form of powder it will dissolve in acids, especially after prolonged boiling.

Hæmatite is of very frequent occurrence, the dense masses forming one of the best ores of iron, and being always utilised for the production of the metal, by smelting, wherever met with in sufficient quantity.

To the hæmatite group belongs also the octahedral martite found in Brazilian micaceous iron shales, and forming a pseudometamorphic magnetite. This, though black in colour, leaves a red streak.

With regard to the differences between the materials yielded by iron-glance and micaceous iron ore, the following particulars may be given :—

When individual scales of the two ores are examined under a microscope (100 diameters) they will be found to exhibit by transmitted light the fine reddish colour proper to hæmatite, whilst by reflected light the iron-glance is more of a steely grey, the coarser particles preventing the transmission of light under these conditions.

The colour of the scaly forms of iron oxide is various, ranging from silver grey to iron grey, sometimes reddish, in which case the colour of the powdered substance is more of a violet brown red. They consist of silica, alumina, iron oxide, traces of phosphoric acid, manganese protoxide, lime, magnesia, alkalis, and water.

(iii.) *Spathic Iron Ore* (*spherosiderite, or white iron ore*).—The finely ground mineral is met with in commerce as a pigment for anti-corrosive paints, under the name of montanite.

(*b*) *Artificially prepared Oxides of Iron.*

These, under various names—such as *Caput mortuum*, English red, Prussian red, brown red, Prague red, colcothar, jeweller's rouge, etc.—are prepared either by the wet or the dry method. In the former, iron pyrites is roasted and then kept in a moistened condition for a long time, ferrous sulphate being formed by oxidation; the residual iron oxide is then merely subjected to calcination. A good deal of *Caput mortuum* is produced by calcining alum refuse, or vitriol refuse. In the wet process the iron oxide obtained by precipitation from solution is mostly converted into the red modification by calcining the precipitate.

Neither the native nor the artificial iron oxides are chemically pure compounds, but contain, in addition to the main constituent, such other bodies as clay, silica, gypsum, etc. Moreover, the pure iron oxide is not what is required as pigment, the presence of one or more foreign substances being frequently essential to the production of the desired shade of colour.

The percentage of moisture in iron oxide pigments is determined by drying a weighed quantity of the pigment at 120° C. in a drying oven until constant. The water of combination is then estimated by heating the dried substance to redness for an hour in a tarred porcelain crucible, and weighing after cooling over calcium chloride. The united results give the total amount of water present. To ascertain the other constituents of the substance 5 grams are treated with *aqua regia* until fully decomposed, the whole being then evaporated to dryness, treated with dilute hydrochloric acid, and filtered into a half-litre flask, the residue on the filter washed with water, and the contents of the flask made up to the mark. The filtrate is employed for further investigation, whilst the insoluble residue, which consists of silica, is dried and weighed if desired.

Iron is estimated by neutralising 200 cc. of the filtrate with sodium carbonate, boiling with an addition of ammonium acetate, and filtering, washing, drying, and weighing the resulting precipitate, which consists of iron oxide and alumina. On heating the filtrate from this last reaction with a little ammonium sulphide, *manganese* is thrown down and can be separated by filtration, washed, dried, and weighed in the usual manner. From the filtrate *calcium* is precipitated by ammonium oxalate, and, after removal by filtration, *magnesia* may be thrown down from the liquid by sodium phosphate. The amount of iron may be determined volumetrically in the original solution, and the resulting weight being deducted from that obtained by precipitation gives *alumina* by difference. To estimate *sulphates* 100 grams of the original solution are treated with barium chloride, the precipitated barium sulphate being weighed, and the amount of sulphuric acid found by calculation.

4. *Carbon.*

Graphite (blacklead or plumbago) is a more or less impure form of carbon, occurring in irregular, blackish grey, lustrous masses, which leave a black mark on the fingers or on paper, are greasy to the touch, and are easily converted into powder. The density depends on the degree of purity, and varies between 2·08 and 2·50. In practice a sharp line of distinction is drawn between amorphous and foliaceous graphite, according to colour and covering power, the amorphous or purified form being the only kind referred to in speaking of the use of graphite in paints. Latterly, a maker of anti-corrosive paints has taken to employing graphite in scales, analogous to the scaly oxides of iron. Before use the native article is purified by levigation and chemical treatment, the earthy impurities being removed by the former process, whilst in the chemical method the graphite is extracted with sulphuric acid and nitric acid, or by heating with potassium chlorate and sulphuric acid so long as fumes of chlorine are evolved.

Runge recommends stirring up the levigated graphite with sufficient concentrated sulphuric acid to form a thin pap, the mixture being then left to heat, and washed with water after a lapse of thirty-six hours. The manufacture of ferrous sulphate can be pursued in conjunction with this method of purification.

Purified graphite is entirely impervious to the influence of any acid whatsoever.

APPLICABILITY OF VARIOUS PIGMENTS AS ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.

In previous sections the whole of the pigments employed in anti-corrosive paints have been dealt with, and it now only remains to consider their suitability for that purpose. It has already been mentioned that very divergent opinions prevail with regard to red lead and iron oxide in this connection, and the same may also be said of the pigments used as covering paints. One side champions the employment of lead paints (white lead), and another advocates zinc white, and a third upholds iron oxides as the best for anti-corrosive paints, a fourth party rejecting the latter pigments altogether, on the erroneous reasoning that iron oxide is itself iron rust, and must therefore necessarily engender rust. All, however, agree on one point, *viz.*: That the pigments must be permanent, and even acid-resisting. Nevertheless, when the aforesaid pigments are tested, it is found that only a single one of the whole lot is really acid-resisting—all the others dissolving more or less completely in more or less concentrated acid. The sole acid-resisting pigment is graphite, and this is the one least generally used—probably because of its dark colour.

Let us compare the opinions expressed with regard to the various pigments:—

On the lead pigments in general—red lead excepted—Landolt says: "These pigments, with few exceptions (chrome yellow), contain a basis of white lead. The usual additions for toning or adapting the pigments to various purposes are: black mineral and vegetable colours, such as mineral black, vine black, lampblack and graphite; other toning colours being ochre, earthy colours and iron pigments. The baryta, chalk, etc., used for loading are bodies that should not occur at all—except in minute quantities—in good paints for which normal prices are paid. The anti-corrosive paints with a basis of lead are put on the market under various names, such as diamond paint, silver grey, metal grey, iron grey, etc. The general characteristics of this group of paints, when properly compounded, are: good covering power, durability, and capacity of resisting acids, though they exhibit a tendency to darken with age. They can be recommended where smoky fumes are prevalent."

Simon says of the lead paints: "White lead forms an excellent pigment owing to its high adhesion and covering power, though is readily darkened by exposure to sulphuretted hydrogen, and is subject to further chemical changes on account of which the coating of paint requires frequent renewal. As a bottoming paint for iron, white lead is insufficient, whereas when applied over a coating of red lead it answers fairly well, even for marine work. The principal defects of the lead pigments are to be sought in the readiness with which they decompose the varnish. With the same rapidity with which oils and lead pigments saponify and—in the case of drying oils—produce very hard drying paints, proceeds the further decomposition of the vehicle, the originally elastic skin of paint becoming brittle and cracked through the formation of lead linoxate, which being crystalline causes the smooth, tough surface of the paint to change to a rough appearance. Already in three to four months' time the crystals can be detected by the magnifying glass, and subsequently the lead linoxate is converted into brittle linoxyn, whereby the anti-corrosive paint is caused to crack and leaves the underlying iron a prey to rust. This tendency is more particularly noticeable in varnish boiled with litharge, and is less observable in lead-free varnish (manganese varnish), provided the pigment is also free from lead. In this case manganese linoxate, an elastic compound which only gradually changes into linoxyn, is formed, and it is not until eight or ten months have elapsed that recognisable traces of decomposition of the paint can be discerned by the glass."

According to Landolt, the zinc paint group consists of pigments with a zinciferous basis; as a rule they take up more oil than the lead pigments. The following bodies are used as a basis: zinc white, zinc grey (bye-product in zinc white manufacture), calamine—either ground alone or in combination with mineral bodies (silicates)—lithopone spermanent white, zinc sulphide white). As regards the substances used for loading and toning these pigments, they are in both cases the same as employed with lead pigments. The paints of this group are generally met with in commerce under the names: Platinum paint, Bessemer paint, silicate paint, or adamantine paint, and when properly compounded yield good results.

The general characteristics of zinc paints are good covering power and great durability—provided the constituents are properly put together. The acid-resisting properties are low to good, according to the composition; the tendency to darken is merely slight, and they can only be recommended for use wherever smoky fumes are not in question, unless the paint possesses good acid-resisting properties.

With reference to the use of zinc dust, *i.e.*, ground zinc ores, as a pigment for anti-corrosive paints, Spennrath states that "this application of the powder is no novelty, though a new name has been given to the material and it is now termed metal paint. Already many years ago zinc dust was used as the pigment in the so-called galvanic paint, which mixture of oil paint and zinc dust was proposed as a substitute for coating iron with zinc by the galvanising process, it being assumed that the zinc would form a rust-preventing galvanic couple with the iron. The result was, however, failure, and the circumstances soon fell into oblivion. Now, zinc dust reappears on the scene as metal paint for which it is claimed as a predominant quality that hydrogen is liberated and, whilst in the nascent state, reduces rust to ferrous oxide or magnetic oxide, so that the paint is not merely rust preventing but also rust destroying. The experiments made to demonstrate such liberation of hydrogen prove nothing, since the gas in question can only be liberated by zinc when in contact with water, a condition impossible of fulfilment when the metallic pigment is ground along with linseed oil or a vehicle insoluble in water."

Spennrath says further that "at the instant hydrogen is liberated the zinc will have ceased to be in the metallic state and will be in the condition of oxide. To liberate 1 gram of hydrogen necessitates the consumption of 32·9 grams of zinc and their conversion into 48·9 grams of zinc oxide, which occupies just as much space as the metallic zinc from which it originated. Now it is claimed that the liberated hydrogen destroys pre-existing rust by converting it into ferrous oxide. Both ferric oxide and ferrous oxide are compounds of oxygen with iron, the former containing 30 per cent. and the latter 22 per cent. of oxygen; consequently to convert ferric oxide into the ferrous form it must be deprived of oxygen, an operation known as reduction, the active body therein being termed a reducing agent. When hydrogen reduces ferric oxide, it deprives the latter of oxygen, with which it combines itself to form water. This is, however, not the sole water which would make its appearance during the assumed action of hydrogen, iron rust containing 25·2 per cent. of chemically combined water; and as the ferrous oxide formed from the rust cannot fix more than 20 per cent. of water there would be produced altogether about 17 per cent. of free water—calculated on the weight of the rust. Consider, now, what would happen on the conversion, in the manner described, of the rust underneath a coat of paint.

The resulting water must find a way of escape, and would simply burst away the impenetrable paint. Moreover, the vaunted conversion of iron rust into innocent magnetic oxide of iron would be useless [reason not stated]."

The same authority also avers that "zinc dust has no greater durability than zinc white in paints for open-air use, the reasons for which may be readily gathered from the changes suffered by all zinc articles exposed to the weather. These soon become covered with a layer of zinc carbonate, and the same would happen to zinc dust, the more readily on account of its fine state of division and the consequent incomparably greater amount of surface exposed than in the case of a smooth face of metal. The result is that the individual particles of the powder are not merely covered with a skin of zinc carbonate, but are entirely converted into that substance. What this implies will be more clearly evident from the following calculation: 65 grams of zinc produce 125 grams of zinc carbonate. Now, whereas the specific gravity of metallic zinc is 7·2, that of the carbonate is 4·44; and hence, while 65 grams of zinc occupy a space of $\frac{65}{7 \cdot 2} = 9 \cdot 02$ cc., 125 grams of zinc carbonate occupy $\frac{125}{4 \cdot 4} = 28 \cdot 1$ cc. In other words, metallic zinc increases in volume threefold during its conversion into zinc carbonate. It is easy to imagine what will happen when this conversion and expansion of the pigment goes on in an already dry and hard oil paint. What would be the fate of a wall of masonry if every brick were to expand on all sides at once?

"Zinc white is much more durable for indoor work, since, although carbon dioxide may be also present in the air of rooms, a necessary adjunct for the conversion of the metal into zinc carbonate—*viz.*, water—is here lacking, carbon dioxide having no action on dry zinc white. If an oil paint containing zinc dust, zinc white, or zinc grey, does not decompose in a few days when exposed to the air, no thanks are due to the stability of the pigment, but rather to the protective influence of the resinified oil enveloping every particle of the colouring matter. Even this protection is not permanent, and consequently the destruction of a zinc grey (zinc white) paint in the open air is a foregone conclusion."

(With regard to the incorrectness of this latter assumption see p. 188.)

The iron group of paints is characterised by Landolt in the following terms: "This class comprises iron minium, colcothar, Venetian red, and the so-called scale armour ('Panzerschuppen') paints. Under no circumstances should they contain filling or loading substances, such as baryta, chalk, kaolin, and the like. A distinction is drawn between—

"(*a*) Paints of predominating earthy-pigment character and pulverised amorphous basis, such as iron minium, colcothar, Venetian red, etc. When properly made they cover well and are durable, but not acid resisting.

"(*b*) Paints of crystalline character, such as the 'Panzerschuppenfarben' (scale armour paints). These, when properly compounded, cover well, and form very durable acid-resisting paints."

According to Simon, "the iron oxides used, under various names—iron red, colcothar, *Caput mortuum*, etc.—in paints are inferior to red lead, especially for first coats on ironwork, and require more frequent renewal, on which account they cannot be classed among the pigments for 'durable oil paints'. Exceptions to this rule are formed by a rich iron minium containing 97 per cent. of ferric oxide, and a fine-scaled micaceous iron ore, which repeated tests have shown to be at least equal to red lead. By reason of their high covering power, which is 8 to 10 times greater than that of red lead, and the scaly nature of the micaceous ore, these two have been used for some years with advantage for bottoming on ironwork."

With reference to the use of iron minium in France, Balat remarks that the oxide obtained from Anderghem is occasionally used as a first coat on iron, but that the material is rarely obtainable pure, adulteration being so easy. Moreover, it is unsuitable for painting iron railway or road bridges, because of the soluble salts it forms with the sulphurous gases resulting from the combustion of coal in locomotive engines; whereas the compounds formed therewith by red lead are insoluble.

Mierczinski says: "Iron minium forms a strongly adherent first coating for subsequent coats of oil paint on iron, and on the score of economy is preferable to red lead for this purpose.

"The artificial iron oxides (*Caput mortuum*) are altogether unsuitable for preserving iron from rust; on the contrary, they facilitate rusting."

The following axioms are laid down, for pigments, by Landolt: "All colours used in the preparation of paints for iron should possess a maximum of covering power and be chemically pure, so as to ensure proper distribution in painting. The selection of the colours should not—as so frequently happens — be made at random, but should be based on good theoretical grounds and on experience."

Such are the divergent views on the suitability of the individual pigments for anti-corrosive paints. None of the pigments in use is capable of permanently resisting the action of acids, unless protected with an envelope of linseed varnish; and some of them (the lead pigments) must be credited with exerting chemical influence on the oil or linseed varnish. This action is confirmed by Mierczinski, who states that the good appearance of white lead is due to the contained hydroxide, which combines chemically with the oil to form a lead soap, dissolving in the surplus oil and constituting a kind of varnish, which covers the lead carbonate and imparts body and covering power thereto. So soon, however, as this lead soap is present in quantity the white lead loses in covering power and opacity, and the paint becomes more or less transparent, horny and brittle. According to Spennrath, zinc white undergoes decomposition by the action of atmospheric air; whilst in the artificial iron oxides the free acid present reacts on the varnish (and perhaps also on the iron itself at a later stage). In fine, there is no pigment but what is, or may be, subject to decomposition by some influence or other. Theoretically, therefore, none of these pigments is suitable for use in anti-corrosive paints, since the quality of resisting power is exacted of them. The author has never held such extreme views, but holds that selection should be made of some pigment either absolutely or relatively inert towards linseed varnish, a condition fulfilled by—

1. All zinc pigments.
2. All native oxides of iron.
3. Graphite.

Moreover, white lead should not be excluded, although, as we have seen, it enters into combination with linseed varnish. In accordance with the axiom expressed by the author and others, that in every paint each particle of pigment should be so enveloped in linseed varnish as to render it entirely independent of and secure from external influences, all the above-named pigments are admissible, and Spennrath falls into considerable error in asserting that zinc white suffers decomposition in the paint; in fact, in another part of his pamphlet he states that decomposition is precluded in pigments held together by linseed varnish.

Let us now examine the state of affairs in the case of inert bodies, which, like baryta, are indifferent towards all influences, even of the strongest acids. The adulteration of paints with baryta is objected to on all sides, without considering that this substance is an absolutely unalterable hard material, possessing only the single defect of low covering power. The author agrees that adulteration should be condemned, but he believes that no one has ever proved baryta to exert any injurious influence in paint; on the contrary, it is presumable that this substance must form a very solid paint, by reason of its own inherent hardness. However, baryta requires but a small quantity of linseed oil to bring it to a proper workable consistency as paint, and, moreover, it distributes very badly. Nevertheless it would seem advisable to institute extensive practical experiments with paints in which baryta could be associated with some pigment requiring a large proportion of varnish, such, for instance, as zinc white. The author is far from advising the employment of adulterants in pigments; but if it should be proved that baryta forms a suitable material for anti-corrosive paints, will one be justified in discarding it for the sole reason that it is also employed for purposes of adulteration?

Having now ascertained which pigments are suitable for our purpose, we will next consider

The Influence of the Proportion of Drying Oil on the Durability of the Paint.

In the preparation of oil paints use is made partly of raw linseed oil and partly of linseed varnish—either in the natural state or bleached—and each separate class of pigments requires, according to its properties, different quantities of the aforesaid liquids in order to become converted into the condition of an oil paint. Thus, for example, lead pigments, especially red lead and white lead, require considerably less linseed oil or varnish than do certain other metallic pigments—*e.g.*, zinc white—while all the earthy colours, particularly ochre, umber, certain iron oxides and the like need a considerable amount of liquid to convert them into paint. Moreover, the individual pigments themselves vary in their requirements of oil; so that in the case of zinc white (and also white lead) fluctuations in this respect of as much as 10 to 15 per cent. occur. This divergence in the oil consumption of the various natural and artificial pigments is attributable to the form of the individual particles of the colouring matters, hard particles of crystalline nature allowing themselves to be ground to paint with a much smaller proportion of oil or varnish than the soft, amorphous pigments. Baryta affords a decisive instance of this, whereas in the case of earthy pigments the consumption of oil increases proportionally with the softness and absorbent nature of the substance, such as a soft argillaceous ochre, a sandy ochre—heavy iron oxide—requiring much less. As a general rule it may be said that all the specifically heavy pigments, *i.e.*, all such as occupy but little room, require a far smaller quantity of oil or varnish than such as are voluminous; hence bulk of itself affords a criterion of the requirements of a pigment in respect of oil. These facts are well known to paint manufacturers and experienced master painters, and the author only refers to them here in order to attract the attention of a wider circle on the one hand, and on the other to utilise them as a basis for further remarks.

We know that all paints are the better able to resist atmospheric influences, rain, snow, cold and heat—as well as the mechanical effects exerted by sand and dust in conjunction with the wind—in proportion as their elasticity is greater. A coating of best carriage varnish exhibits far greater powers of resistance than one of cheap copal varnish; and when the reason for this superiority is investigated it is found that the former varnish contains the much higher proportion of oil. It is an established fact that all varnishes rich in oil are more resistant than such as are poor in that constituent, and it is equally established that this superiority is actually due almost exclusively to their higher content of oil.

What, now, is the state of the case with regard to the influence of the oil ratio on the durability of paints? It has been shown that some pigments require only a small quantity of oil, chief among which may be classed the lead compounds, white lead and red lead, these forming a fairly thin paint with 12 to 15 per cent. of a drying oil, whereas zinc white requires about 30 per cent.

Similar conditions obtain in respect of all other colours, and it is worth while to consider in what manner they manifest themselves in the resulting paints.

If we apply a given weight—say 1 kilo—of a heavy pigment over a given surface, we find that it does not cover so large an area as the same weight of a specifically lighter pigment, because the former is less bulky than the latter. Assuming the volume of the lighter pigment to be double that of the heavier kind, the former will then cover twice as much surface, the volume and not the weight being the criterion of covering power.

For example, if 200 parts, by weight, of oil are used with 1,000 parts of one pigment, whilst the same weight of another (lighter) pigment requires 700 parts of oil; and also assuming that the volume of the latter pigment is as large again as that of the heavier kind, then

1 volume of the heavy paint contains 200 parts of oil.
1 ,, lighter ,, 700 ,,

Consequently, if half a volume of the lighter paint will cover a surface as great as that covered by 1 volume of the heavier kind, the relative quantities of oil on a given area will be 20 : 35.

Of course this is only a hypothetical example, and the differences will mostly be much smaller in practice. In any case the old axiom holds good, *viz.*, the larger the proportion of drying oil taken up by the pigment to form paint, the more durable will the resulting coating of paint prove. This is also confirmed by practical experience, for it is an undoubted fact that paints made from white lead or red lead perish much sooner than those made of zinc white or ochre, the gloss and elasticity disappearing much quicker and leaving the pigment in a shorter time in a condition in which it can easily be scraped off as powder or in flakes.

Attention was bestowed by Mulder on the ratio between pigment and vehicle, and he came to the conclusion that a portion of the red lead exerts a drying influence on the linseed oil, whilst the remaining and far larger quantity should be regarded as a by no means unconditionally essential loading or ballast.

One hundred parts of linseed oil are ample for binding 9 parts of lead oxide; so if for the sake of convenience we say 10 parts, then to each 1 part of linseed oil there will be $\frac{1}{10}$ part of lead oxide.

To prepare a free working paint from white lead and red lead, 35 to 40 parts of oil are necessary to each 100 parts of ground pigment. Of these, however, the aforesaid quantity of oil only binds 4 parts, leaving 96 parts unaltered and simply enveloped in the oil, to act as covering material. The question now arises spontaneously: Cannot a few of these 96 parts of white or red lead be replaced by a neutral substance without endangering the utility of the whole, and may not such neutral substance, when obtained by grinding a very hard and durable material (rock), possibly exert a favourable influence on the durability of the paint? Some very important experiments in this direction were made by Mulder with mixtures of red lead and Anderghem iron oxide, ground roofing tiles, clay ironstone, hæmatite, magnetic iron ore, and ground slate. He reported that: 100 parts of commercial boiled linseed oil, with 2·6 per cent. of lead oxide, made up into paint with—

5 parts of red lead to 40 parts of Anderghem iron oxide,
or 25 ,, ,, ,, 40 ,, ,, ,,

gave very satisfactory results, especially the 25 : 40.

The same, with—

20 parts of red lead to
40 ,, ,, ,,
65 ,, ,, ,, } 100 parts of Anderghem iron oxide,
90 ,, ,, ,,
120 ,, ,, ,,

also behaved well, no difference in covering power being noticeable.

The same, with—

20 parts of red lead to 50
40 ,, ,, ,, 50
65 ,, ,, ,, 50 } parts of red roofing tile powder;
90 ,, ,, ,, 50
120 ,, ,, ,, 50
120 ,, ,, ,, 100

covering power satisfactory in the higher proportions.

The same, with—

20 parts of red lead to
40 ,, ,, ,,
65 ,, ,, ,, } 100 parts of clay ironstone;
90 ,, ,, ,,
120 ,, ,, ,,

covering power satisfactory in the higher proportions.

The same, with—

20 parts of red lead to
40 ,, ,, ,,
65 ,, ,, ,, } 100 parts of hæmatite,
90 ,, ,, ,,
120 ,, ,, ,,

covered excellently.

The same, with—

40 parts of red lead to 40 parts of magnetic iron ore,
40 ,, ,, 100 ,, blue bricks,
40 ,, ,, 100 ,, ground slate,
40 ,, ,, 100 ,, roofing tile,

covered admirably.

"I will postpone," says Mulder, on 5th March, 1865, "a final decision on the behaviour of these paints with regard to adherence, hardness and resistance to wind and weather, they being still too young to enable a judgment to be formed. This much, however, I may say, that a large number of them seem to attain the maximum degree of hardness. This is satisfactory, and I am of opinion—from these few simple experiments with boiled linseed oil and materials almost valueless in a pecuniary sense—that for imparting hardness and covering power to paint, leaving colour out of the question, one need seek no further than ground roofing tiles, old blue bricks, or burned clay ironstone, and may leave all secret preparations alone in future."

A few of the preceding paints were too thick, others too thin; it is, however, worthy of note that all of them, irrespective of consistency, adhered satisfactorily to iron.

The strips of sheet iron used were all painted on one side only, and then exposed for some months to wind and weather, rain and sunshine. The unpainted side was found covered with rust in all instances; but no trace of rust or peeling was observable on the painted sides.

Where no decorative effect is required, many conditions can be dispensed with in paint; but the following three essentials must be maintained:—

1. The linseed oil must be well boiled, well prepared, of good quality, and contain 2 to 3 per cent. of lead oxide.

2. The ground pigment must contain an addition of lead oxide (red lead is believed to be the best, and the minimum amount has still to be determined. In the brief space of time occupied by the experiments no difference in point of hardness and durability could be detected between the paints rich and poor in this constituent.)

3. A hard, inert powder, as finely ground as possible, may

be added, the quantity being limited by the workability of the paint.

As a matter of fact the present communication contains nothing novel, it being an old practice to strew sand over the newly painted surface after applying the final coat, when the production of a durable coating is the sole consideration. Nevertheless, this useful method is too little known.

From what has been said hitherto with regard to pigments there is no difficulty in determining which are the most suitable; and it is also easy to draw the following conclusion, *viz.*, that "security for the production of a suitable anti-corrosive paint, conforming to all necessary requirements, is afforded by the use of such pigments as are as far as possible inert and require a large proportion of linseed varnish in order to form a workable paint".

It also follows from the particulars given that inert bodies that are not pigments—*e.g.*, baryta, brick dust, and various other materials—may form part of anti-corrosive paints, provided they consume a large proportion of varnish and are in a sufficiently fine state of division to yield a smooth, non-granular product. To prevent overreaching, it will then be the business of paint buyers to come to some agreement as to the suitable prices for such specially compounded paints. The author would repeat that he has no desire to treat the addition of such materials as an adulteration, so far as it has been shown that they act as well as or better than the more expensive pigments. At present, ground slate already frequently forms a constituent of anti-corrosive paints without ever being regarded as an adulterant! Actually, no closer definition of adulteration is needed than that it is the addition of inferior materials to paints sold as "chemically pure". If this assurance is not given, then the price charged must be taken into account before one can talk of adulteration, and on this point an opinion has already been expressed (p. 118).

THE PREPARATION OF ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.

This is a fairly simple operation, consisting as it does in the mixing of the finely divided pigmentary substance with the linseed varnish, grinding the two together in a paint mill, and finally thinning the product down with linseed varnish to the proper working consistency. All pigments, and even varieties of the same kind, require particular amounts of varnish in order to produce a paint of given consistency, and therefore exact details cannot be given. The consistency of the varnish also influences the result, the thicker grades being proportionally less able to take up pigment, and at the same time producing correspondingly more viscous and therefore less workable paints. Hence stress must be laid on the attainment of uniform strength in the linseed varnish, and occasional tests should be made with the viscosimeter. Thinning down the paint with turpentine should not be resorted to, since this treatment diminishes the proportion of linseed varnish, and the paint is rendered less durable. Neither should driers be added in any form, but the varnish should possess in itself sufficient drying power to make such additions superfluous. Liquid driers in particular, by reason

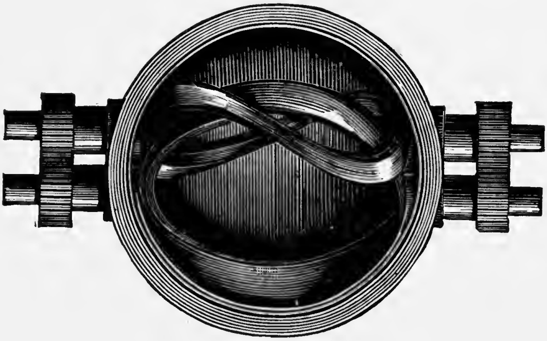


FIG. 51.—Paint-mixing machine. (E. Quack, Cologne.)

of their richness in lead compounds, are very unfavourable to the durability of the paint, and cause premature decay.

The author has no intention of giving a string of recipes for anti-corrosive paint, but will only deal generally with the operations of mixing and grinding, and mention several mechanical appliances for these purposes that have behaved well in practice. At the conclusion of this section will be found sundry particulars relating to various paints in current use.

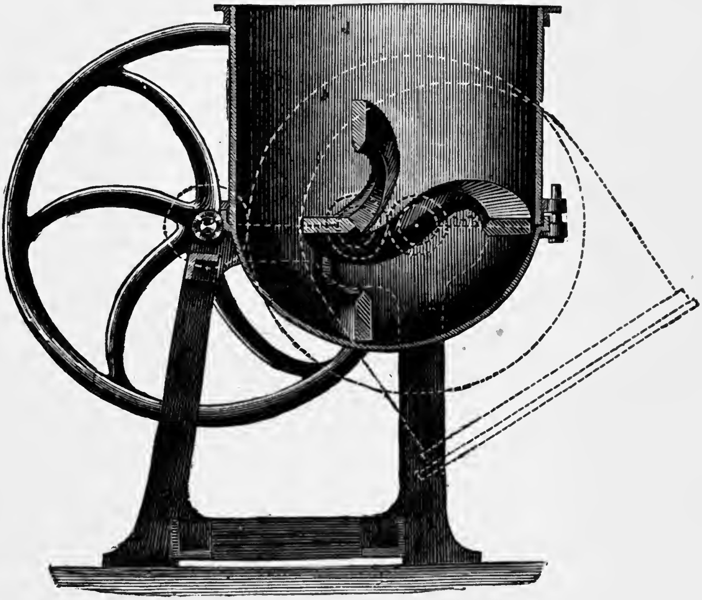


FIG. 52.—Paint-mixing machine.

In addition to the qualities already specified, the pigments employed must be perfectly dry and free from moisture, and be in the finest possible state of division. They are placed in a suitably large vessel containing the linseed varnish, where the two are mixed intimately together by means of a stirrer. For large quantities, such as are generally employed in the preparation of anti-corrosive paints, hand mixing is too cumbrous, tedious and costly, and is advantageously superseded by mechanical appliances, such as that shown in plan in Fig. 51, and a vertical section in Fig. 52.

In this smooth-walled mill two twisted annular beaters, engaging one with the other, rotate in opposite directions, and by the stirring, separating, turning, rolling, pushing, and working action they exert on the materials ensure the intimate admixture of the same in a comparatively shorter time, and with less expenditure of power, than could otherwise be effected. The action of the machine proceeds with great uniformity, and results in the production of a satisfactory effect, the particles of material being kept in continual motion and forced to intermingle until worked up into a homogeneous mass. The stirrers brush against the bottom of the mixture and against each other at every revolution,

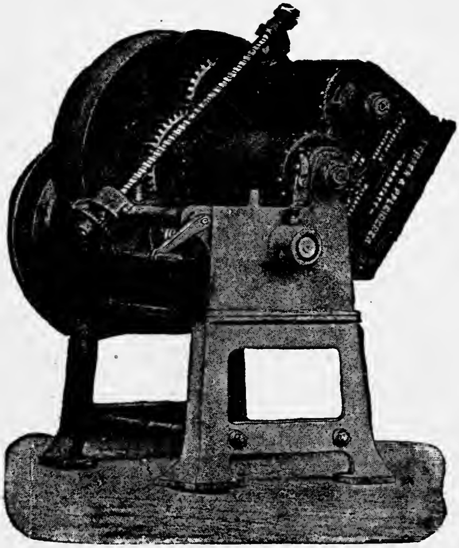


Fig. 53.—Werner & Pfleiderer's paint mixer.

and thus prevent any part of the mass from remaining unacted upon. The machine is emptied by simply tipping the pan, the stirrers being kept in motion in order to facilitate the removal of any material adhering to the sides. To clean the machine out thoroughly it may be taken apart by simply removing a cotter.

The mixer of Messrs. Werner & Pfleiderer, of Cannstatt-Stuttgart (Figs. 53, 54), is extremely simple in principle, and unsurpassable in efficiency. It is made in various sizes, to treat from one cwt. to a ton and a half of paint, the quantity each mill is capable of dealing with at a time being not merely dependent on the specific gravity of the materials, but also to a large extent on the consistency and other properties of the mass. In most cases the stronger machines are also suitable for dealing with smaller quantities than their

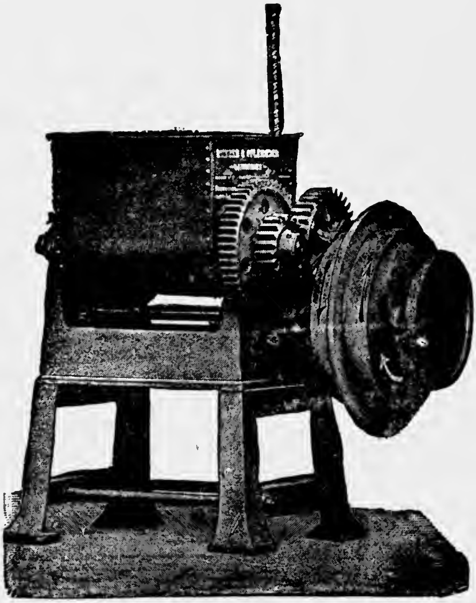


FIG. 54.—Werner & Pfleiderer's paint mixer.

normal capacity, but it is better to state the purpose for which the mixture is required when ordering. When the machine is in motion the kneading paddles work one against the other inside the mixing pan. To save time and increase the effect, the machine should be run backwards at intervals, being fitted with reversing gear for that purpose. The best results are obtained when the machine is filled so full that the peculiar sound of the materials dashing from one paddle on to the other can be heard when the apparatus is in motion, an effect generally obtained when the amount of dry material is just enough to completely cover the paddles. The pan can be tipped for emptying, and several sizes are constructed so that they can be dismounted to facilitate cleaning, the trough being taken apart and the paddles removed.

The preceding appliances, whilst intimately mixing the varnish and pigments together, have no effect on the fineness of the division of the latter. Consequently the product is lumpy, and although the lumps can be broken down with the hands or by a muller and stone slab, the paint does not yet form that fine and soft salve-like mass characteristic of the good and well-ground article.

To bring it into this condition further treatment is required, consisting of an intimate mixing, crushing, and so forth, performed by hand in the case of small quantities, but necessitating the employment of properly constructed paint mills when the work is on a large scale.

Paint mills may be divided into three classes, according as the grinding of the material is effected—

(*a*) Between two slanting, roughened surfaces, one fixed and the other executing a rotary movement;

(*b*) Between two flat grooved plates, moving eccentrically in opposite directions; or

(*c*) Between a series of rotating steel, porphyry (granite), or porcelain rollers.

For works of moderate size the mills of class *a* are suitable, but larger quantities can only be dealt with by roller mills (class *c*).

Fig. 55 shows a funnel-shaped or conical mill, the upper grinding surface of which is attached to the fixed feed hopper, whilst the movable lower conical grinding surface is adjusted by a screw and spindle so as to leave merely a small aperture for the outflow of the ground paint. The conical surfaces must be accurately turned, the actual grinding surfaces forming only a portion of the funnel or cone, which portion is in both cases riffled in order to increase the grinding power. The riffles run from the centre towards the edge, which, however, they do not quite reach.

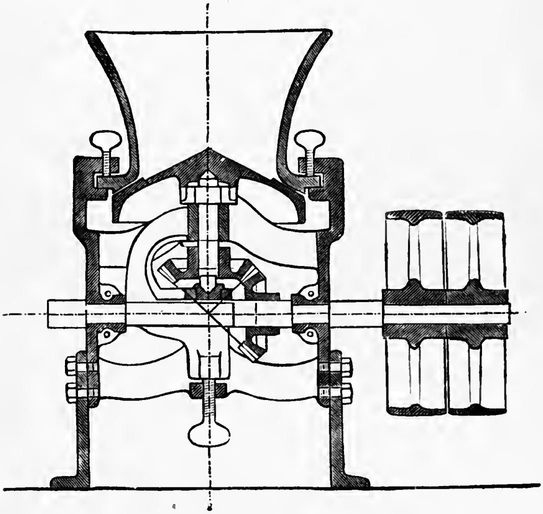


FIG. 55.—Paint mill with conical grinding surfaces. (For power.)

The paint to be ground is put into the hopper, and on issuing from the mill is conducted into a recipient below by means of a scraper placed at the side.

The larger mills are always of the roller type, such as illustrated in Figs. 56 to 58. They contain from three to six rollers of equal dimensions, mounted one above another or side by side in a strong frame, and caused to rotate at different speeds. The lowermost roller generally executes a lateral motion as well. The mixture of oil and paint to

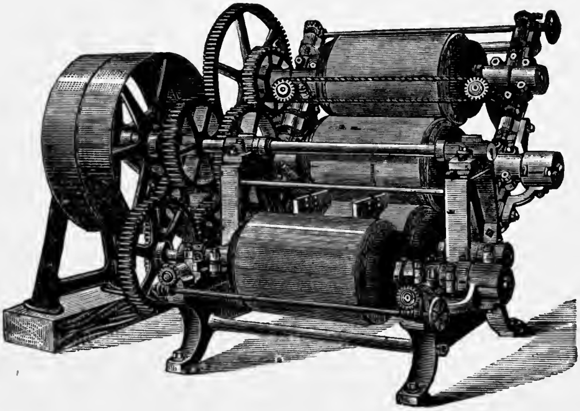


FIG. 56.—Triple-roller paint mill.

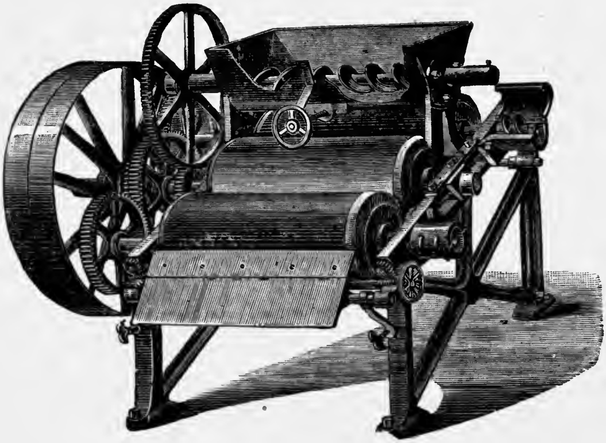


FIG. 57.—Quadruple-roller paint mill.

be ground is fed between the first pair of rollers, and is prevented from running away over the rollers by a hopper. On issuing from these rollers, where it has received the first grinding, it is carried over by surface adhesion to the second pair (Nos. 2 and 3), and reground between these. From the third roller it is removed by a tight-fitting scraper, and if not sufficiently fine is afterwards passed through the mill a second, and even a third time, the rollers being meanwhile set closer together by the adjusting screws.

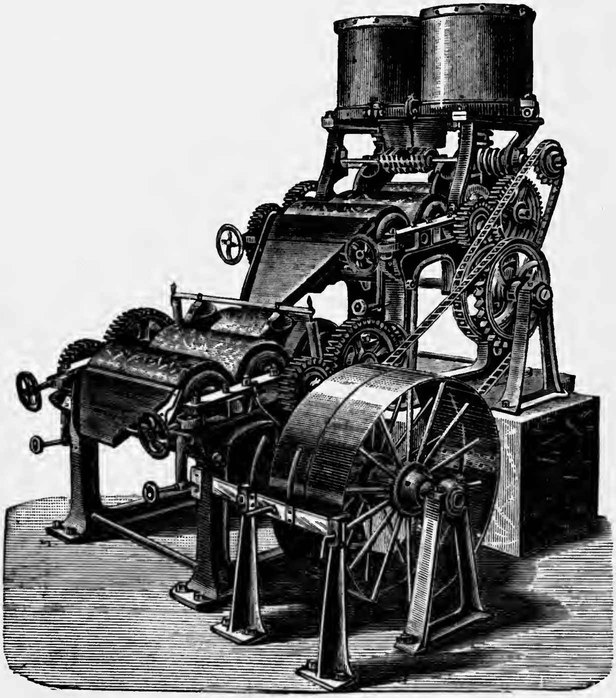


Fig. 58.—Combined triple-roller mill and mixer.

Fig. 58 shows a combined mixer and grinder, the pigment and varnish being placed in the mixer—at the top of the apparatus—and passed from thence to the mill proper underneath.

The finished paint must be in a sufficiently finely ground condition and of a proper workable consistency—unless made extra strong, to be afterwards reduced by the consumer—and it should be protected from skinning, both during manufacture and storage.

Graf & Co.'s Panzerschuppen (Scale Armour) Paint.

(According to the cancelled patent specification.)

A patent was applied for in respect of a paint for boilers, the mixture consisting of scaly micaceous iron (specular iron ore) and linseed varnish, its object being to facilitate the removal of boiler incrustation. The use of any fine varnish free from acid or alkali was contemplated, in conjunction with a mineral pigment of scaly structure resembling native graphite in appearance, and containing the following constituents :—

Silica	5·40	per cent.
Phosphoric acid	0·05	,,
Iron oxide	88·63	,,
Alumina	0·40	,,
Manganese protoxide	Trace.	
Cobalt and nickel protoxide	0·12	,,
Lime	1·73	,,
Magnesia	1·33	,,
Alkalis and loss	0·35	,,
Water, carbon dioxide, and organic matter	1·99	,,

The silica and phosphoric acid were in combination with iron oxide, and the small quantity of carbon dioxide apparently combined with the lime and magnesia. No sulphur or sulphur compounds could be detected. The applicant reserved the right to modify the percentage content, and to make small additions of other more subsidiary substances.

The intention was to coat the interior of the boiler with the paint, which, from its composition and practical behaviour, was claimed to be unalterable and irremovable under the influence of heat. Moreover it was said to be insusceptible to the action of either hot, cold, or salt water, and to in no wise reduce the conduction of heat. The paint, having been previously well stirred up and reduced with best linseed varnish, was to be laid on as thinly as possible, so as to just cover the metal, this treatment being repeated as often as necessary to produce the desired thickness of coating, and each layer being allowed to dry properly before applying the next one. The use of suitable quick-drying varnish to accelerate drying was also contemplated.

In place of powder the pigment was in the form of foliaceous scales, and it was claimed that these scales overlapped one another in the paint, attaching themselves so firmly to the boiler plate that on the one hand no unforeseen loosening of boiler incrustation could occur, whilst on the other hand this loosening could be easily effected in the operation of cleaning out the boiler.

The further advantage claimed for the use of this paint for the interior of boilers was protection from rust or other form of corrosion.

Lender's Anti-corrosive Paint.

This preparation is intended for the preservation of iron from rusting or attack in any other way, being stated to be impervious to heat, cold, and the action of acids. When tested on iron plates it was found to resist warm water and steam, volatile acids, alkalis, gaseous ammonia, hydrochloric acid gas, and sulphuretted hydrogen gas.

The principal constituent is a silicate of iron found in the vicinity of deposits of iron ore and also as veins in granitic rocks weathered by exposure to the air. The composition of this finely divided material is as follows :—

Silica	5·40	per cent.
Phosphoric acid	0·05	,,
Iron oxide	88·56	,,
Native alum	0·50	,,
Lime	1·75	,,
Magnesia	1·35	,,
Undetermined	2·30	,,
	100	

It is sold in the form of a paste, finely ground in admixture with oxidised linseed oil or varnish, and, before use, is reduced with good linseed oil, together with an addition of driers, such as litharge, etc., if considered necessary ; any mineral paint of the right colour can be added to produce the desired tone.

RESULTS OF THE EXAMINATION OF SEVERAL ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.

1. *Bessemer Paint.*

The pigment contains baryta, alumina, iron oxide, lime, silica, zinc oxide, sulphuric acid, carbon dioxide, and phosphoric acid. When treated with hydrochloric acid it disengages sulphuretted hydrogen. Graphite or other carbon is used as colouring matter, and linseed varnish as the vehicle, turpentine (?) constituting the drier. The presumptive constitution is therefore :—

Lithopone, or siliceous calamine ore, containing baryta and chalk, together with graphite or other form of carbon, and linseed varnish (with probably turpentine as a drier).

2. *Diamond Paint.*

The pigment consists of white lead mixed with baryta, graphite or other form of carbon being employed for toning, and linseed varnish as the vehicle. No resin, resin oil, driers, or turpentine could be detected.

The paint is therefore compounded of barytic white lead, graphite, and linseed varnish.

3. *Diamond Paint.*

The pigment is white lead, giving an iron oxide (ochre ?) reaction. Ultramarine, mixed with graphite or other carbon, is used for toning. No resin, resin oil, driers, or turpentine were found.

Constitution: white lead with a little ochre (?), ultramarine, graphite, and linseed varnish.

4. *Durable Paint.*

The pigment is an earthy, granular, finely powdered substance, giving reactions for zinc oxide associated with silica, phosphoric acid, iron oxide, lime, manganese, and a little alumina. An addition of hydrochloric acid gives rise to the evolution of sulphuretted hydrogen. The toning materials are ultramarine, graphite, or other forms of carbon, and the vehicle consists of linseed oil, neither resin oil nor turpentine being present.

The presumptive constituents are: calamine, ultramarine, graphite (?), and linseed varnish.

5. *Iron Oxide Paint.*

The pigment contains iron oxide with a small amount of clay and pyrites, which gives off sulphuretted hydrogen when treated with hydrochloric acid. We have in this case to do with an iron oxide, presumably the residue from the roasting of pyrites. The vehicle is linseed varnish.

The paint is therefore composed of: iron oxide—contaminated with clay and pyrites—and linseed varnish.

6. *Armour-scale ("Panzerschuppen") Paint (Swiss origin).*

The principal constituent of the pigment is a granular reddish-brown iron oxide, somewhat greasy to the touch, and interspersed with scaly, foliaceous, crystalline particles. No resin, resin oil, turpentine, or driers could be detected, and consequently the paint consists of—

Weathered micaceous iron ore and linseed varnish.

7. *Armour-scale Paint* (*German*).

The pigment is mainly composed of fairly dark grey crystalline, scaly, smooth and greasy particles of iron oxide, interspersed with finely divided red iron oxide and a small proportion of gangue. A small quantity of graphite is present as colouring matter, and the vehicle is formed of linseed varnish alone, no resin, resin oil, driers, or turpentine being present.

Constitution: micaceous iron ore—with a little graphite and gangue—and linseed varnish.

8. *Armour-scale Paint* (*Swiss*).

The bulk of the pigment is granular iron oxide, leaving a reddish-brown mark, and intermingled with a relatively small proportion of foliaceous, scaly, crystalline, soft and greasy iron oxide and a little gangue. Vehicle: linseed oil, free from resin, resin oil, turpentine, or driers.

The paint therefore consists of strongly weathered micaceous iron ore (with a little gangue) and linseed varnish.

9. *Armour-scale Paint* (*Swiss*).

Pigment principally finely divided reddish, earthy, smooth and greasy iron oxide mixed with crystalline scaly particles and a little gangue. Graphite occurs as colouring matter; and linseed varnish as vehicle. No driers, resin, resin oil, or turpentine.

Constitution: finely powdered, reddish, granular micaceous iron ore, interspersed with scaly particles and a small quantity of gangue, graphite in small amount, and linseed varnish.

10. *Armour-scale Paint* (*Swiss*).

The main body of the pigment consists of a somewhat finely ground, grey, smooth and greasy, crystalline scaly iron oxide intermingled with a little gangue. Linseed varnish forms the vehicle, and a little graphite occurs as colouring matter. No driers, turpentine, or resin oil are present.

Constitution: moderately finely ground grey, scaly, micaceous iron ore, a little graphite, and linseed varnish.

11. *Platinum Paint.*

The pigment is chiefly zinc oxide, with an admixture of a greyish-black, granular substance giving reactions for silica, phosphoric acid, sulphuric acid, carbon dioxide, lime, magnesia, manganese, alumina, and lead, and giving off sulphuretted hydrogen under the influence of hydrochloric acid. No resin, resin oil, driers, or turpentine could be detected, the vehicle being composed solely of linseed varnish. Consequently the paint is compounded of non-barytic lithopone white, and linseed varnish.

12. *Platinum Paint.*

Pigment mainly composed of zinc oxide, with a little lead sulphate. Physical appearance and reactions similar to No. 11, sulphuretted hydrogen being also liberated on the addition of hydrochloric acid. Ultramarine is present as a toning material. Vehicle: linseed varnish, free from resin, resin oil, driers and turpentine.

Constitution: lithopone white, a little ultramarine, and linseed varnish.

13. *Grey Paint* (*German*).

The pigment is white lead shaded with ultramarine and a little graphite (or charcoal). Small quantities of alumina, iron oxide and soda were found. Vehicle: linseed oil, with a large proportion of resin and turpentine.

Constitution: white lead with a little ochre, ultramarine, resin dissolved in turpentine (amber varnish), and linseed varnish containing lead.

Comparative experiments have been made by Heyl with platinum paint, zinc paint, silicate paint, and graphite, with the following results:—

1. Platinum paint and red lead form a perfectly hard mass from which the linseed oil no longer volatilises.

2. Iron oxide, zinc paint, and silicate paint remain soft, so long as the linseed oil is not completely volatilised, but continue to lose body through the volatilisation (?) of the linseed oil, until eventually nothing is left but the uncovered powder, which then washes off in course of time.

3. Graphite and the mixed paints part with their linseed oil much quicker than those named in class 2, consequently the washing away of the residual powder will be effected much more rapidly, unless this latter is endowed with a special degree of adhesion towards iron, a condition that has not hitherto been observed.

PAINTS FOR SHIPS' BOTTOMS.

(*Anti-fouling Compositions.*)

These preparations have for a considerable time played an important part in England, owing to the recognised necessity for maintaining ships' bottoms in good condition, though it is only within the last few decades that data have been collected as to the effect of marine animal and vegetable incrustations, below the water line, on the speed and coal consumption of the vessel.

According to W. Hummel, the demand for special paints for ships' bottoms dates from the introduction of iron and steel into the art of shipbuilding. Wooden vessels are not liable to become rusted, and ships of this class are protected from the accumulation of marine plants and animals by means of copper, or copper and zinc, sheathing. The same treatment has also been applied to iron vessels, but is only used when the ship cannot be docked for cleaning except at long intervals. So far as painting the ship's bottom with red lead, white lead, iron oxide, or zinc white is concerned, these materials are altogether inoperative against the vitality of the incrusting organisms, nor do they prevent the iron from rusting (?). The use of red lead as a first coating for steel ships was also abandoned on the fact becoming known that lead preparations are converted by sea water into lead chloride, which in contact with iron produces iron chloride and lead—the latter forming with the iron a strong galvanic couple productive of further corrosion.

Of the organisms growing on ships' bottoms, but little danger is to be anticipated from seaweed, these plants usually growing on the water line alone, since air is necessary to their development. The speed of the vessel is mainly checked by testaceous incrustations, which organisms are, as a rule, motile in their earlier stages of growth only. The task of the poisonous substances in anti-fouling compositions is therefore to destroy the vitality of the germs of such organisms remaining adherent to the ship's bottom. During a voyage the layer of paint is so far softened, under the influence of friction and sea water, as to enable the saline constituents of the latter to gain access and react on the poison in the paint, the result being the production of an antiseptic solution which kills the organisms attached to the surface of the vessel.

In tropical waters the rate of increase of these creatures is so rapid at certain seasons that the antiseptic material soon appears to be exhausted, and the paint ceases to be capable of preventing incrustation.

When the vessel is laid up, incrustation progresses at a greater speed than during the voyage, and the efficiency of an anti-fouling composition therefore depends mainly on how long the paint can continue to liberate an active antiseptic substance when the ship is laid up. In harbour, however, the surface of the vessel is not subjected to friction, consequently the antiseptic material becomes exhausted within a few weeks, and it is only after the spent outer layer has been removed by the friction engendered by the motion of the vessel, on the renewal of the voyage, that a fresh surface impregnated with toxic material is exposed. It is possible under certain circumstances for a newly painted ship to become more thickly incrusted than one carrying an older coating of composition. Prolonged exposure of the fresh paint to the air considerably diminishes its anti-fouling power.

The records of the English Patent Office contain a large number of specifications of anti-fouling compositions, and the earliest inventor of such preparations for preventing damage to ships' bottoms from the putrefaction of the wood, attacks by maggot, etc., was one William Beale, who in the year 1625 patented a "cement" for protecting ships from the ravages of barnacles. This process consisted in boiling together a mixture of "wildfire" or gunpowder, water, cement, and "dressing for ships"; but as the composition of the latter items was not given, beyond a remark that they were extracted from certain minerals found in England and Wales, the real active agency was left unrevealed. In the same century Philip Howard and Francis Watson occupied themselves with the same problem, and, in their patent taken out in 1670, proposed pitch or resin as a preventive agent. In another specification, the same inventors describe a varnish of beeswax, turpentine and granular lac dissolved in corn spirit. Two patents in 1670 and 1737 remained uncompleted; and Emerton proposed to coat the hull with boiled oil of gelatinous consistency and containing compounded poison, pulverised glass, sand and dust, worked up along with paint and oil to a thick mass, this being then topped with a coat of thick oil paint.

A special report on a patent granted in 1754 refers to a mixture of clarified turpentine and distillation products from pine wood. At that period tar and lampblack appears to have played a leading part in all black paints for ships' use. One inventor, towards the end of the century, proposed to mix tar and iron filings, and to distil from the mixture a Japan black for masts and a thin tar for the hull. In 1791 William Murdak took out a patent for a paint compounded as follows: Iron sulphide was roasted, in air, along with zinc, the resulting yellow powder being mixed with turpentine or other vehicle. The presence of arsenic in the iron sulphide formed an important means of protection against incrustation by marine animals.

After this epoch a long period of repose in this class of inventions set in, and nothing worthy of record was proposed. Most anti-fouling compositions of a later period contain salt of mercury, which forms an excellent preventive of incrustations of marine animals; and still more recently Baron Wetterstedt proposed to coat vessels with an antimonious lead preparation, the parts below the water line being covered with an amalgam of 17 parts of mercury, 2 parts of lead, and 1 part of antimony. Lead appears to be a particularly suitable means for the purpose in view.

The idea of an amalgam was taken up again in 1841 by Robert Mallet, for application to iron, which by that time had come into use to replace wood in ships' hulls. The invention consisted in the use of a double salt of zinc, or manganese, and ammonia, for cleaning and applying a coating of metal—zinc, mercury, and potash or soda—which amalgam was covered with a protective layer of varnish, topped with poisonous paint. Palladium was also proposed as a coating, but, judging from the price of the metal, its use could hardly have been seriously comtemplated. In 1848 Charles Hancock proposed gutta-percha, boiled in a solution of calcium chloride, and kneaded with a mixture of borax and shellac; and shortly afterwards two inventors brought forward solutions of gutta-percha in benzol, a similar solution being also proposed in 1851, as well as on many subsequent occasions.

Arsenic first made its appearance as a poisonous constituent of antifouling compositions in a preparation of carbonate of iron and white arsenic, associated with coal-tar pitch and benzol, and from that time onwards was always used in conjunction with mercurial compounds. In 1852 the arsenical lead compounds, realgar and orpiment, and various arsenical salts were substituted. Two years later, Westwood and Baillie used white arsenic as an external layer, the novelty of their process consisting in the employment of the strongly adherent body asphaltum as a first coating on the metal surface.

In 1855 Greenhow put forward an entirely new proposition for the prevention of incrustation, in that, instead of applying a poisonous composition to the ship's bottom, he provided the latter with a perfectly smooth surface on which the marine animals could obtain no foothold. This was effected by coating the iron plates with a mixture of glass, resin and soda (apparently a kind of enamel). In 1856 it was proposed to use a mixture of coal-tar creosote, insoluble lime soap, and copper oxide; and in the next year one inventor brought forward a project for killing all animal and vegetable incrustations by means of strychnine or atropine as an adjunct to anti-fouling compositions. The process of M. Crae (1858) in employing bone fat and salts of copper was not very durable, owing to the removal of the fat by attrition in course of time.

Hay's invention (1861) was intended for treating copper oxide in such a manner as to obviate the uncertainty of securing uniformity in the application of the paint. He precipitated black copper oxide from solutions of copper salts, and boiled the product in linseed oil, whereby the oxide was reduced and formed a paint with the oil, a little silver or other metal or oxide being added to the preparation. Another patent prescribes the use of asafoetida, antimony, mercury cyanide, and guano, boiled in linseed oil.

Copper and brass are recognised as the best protective agents for ships' bottoms against the influence of sea water, marine animals and vegetable parasites, and are used wherever possible. The employment of sheathing is, however, impossible on iron vessels, especially armour-clad ships, and is moreover too expensive for general use. Owing to the immense importance of the subject most thoroughgoing investigations have been made by all the parties interested in the matter, in order to discover an effectual means of preventing rust on the one hand and incrustations on the other by means of a paint that should be durable under all conditions, but no thoroughly reliable results have as yet been obtained.

Attempts have been made in France to employ powdered copper, but with unsatisfactory results, because the preparation of the powder by galvanic methods proved too costly for technical purposes on the large scale, and the varnish selected as vehicle was of low stability. All coatings for protecting iron vessels require very durable varnishes in conjunction with copper powder; otherwise—as reported by Wall—they will never effect their object. According to Wall's invention, copper powder may be produced very cheaply in such a condition that it can be incorporated with suitable varnish and used like paint, the resulting coating affording the same protection as a sheathing of sheet copper. The copper powder may also be used in conjunction with other pigments, *e.g.*, red ochre, leal peroxide, zinc grey, magnesia, bole, or ochre. As the edges of the iron plates cannot be so thickly coated with the paint as the plane surface, and are consequently more liable to rust under the influence of sea water, Wall employs a special method of priming which is claimed to preserve the metal from corrosion. The copper powder can also be made up into a paint with tar, or applied over a coating in which tar is present, or over a coat of red lead paint. It is well known that sheet zinc, or galvanised iron, affords an excellent protection against rust, though not against the corrosive action of sea water or incrustation by marine animals. No galvanic action can be developed between the copper and iron in presence of sea water, for the reason that the copper powder is completely enveloped in varnish ; consequently the galvanic and destructive action of the sea water is prevented. Were such action possible, the copper would be soon converted into copper chloride, the rate of alteration being accelerated in direct proportion to the fineness of division. In any case this paint, like red lead, would require renewing after a while ; but even porcelain or glass plates would be subject to partial corrosion.

According to a report of the U. S. Naval Institute, attempts have been made to coat the iron hulls of ships with Japan lacquer, the method being based on the circumstance that lacquered goods have been found to stand the influence of sea water for a considerable time. The Japanese Government purchased foreign-built iron and steel vessels, and, in view of the difficulties besetting the protection of ships' bottoms, experimented with lacquer. In the first place lacquered plates were immersed in sea water for a considerable time, and the results, though affording but little satisfaction, were sufficient to incite to further trials, particularly in the direction of rendering the lacquer composition suitable for the purpose by means of various additions. In June, 1886, the first direct test was made by coating some 1,200 square feet of the keel of the warship *Fuso-Kan* with the lacquer composition hitherto found to be the best. In September, 1887, the vessel was dry-docked, and the lacquered plates proved, on examination, to be in such excellent condition that the Admiralty ordered the entire keel to be similarly treated. When the vessel was again examined in dry dock about twelve months later (December, 1888), the lacquer was found to be still intact and in no need of repair, and the same occurred in June, 1889, and April, 1890; nevertheless, for some unexplained reason the lacquer was then scraped off and replaced by a coat of paint. However, another series of experiments was subsequently made with lacquer on other Japanese ships, and Holte, the manufacturer of the composition, very soon held the monopoly of this method of employing lacquer.

The coating employed by Holte consists of pure lacquer, containing an admixture of mica or kaolin, *i.e.*, a perfectly inert material, the object of which is to give the lacquer more body and increase its binding power. The various successive coatings differ in that the earlier ones contain the largest proportion of pure lacquer.

Some time ago a patent was taken out for coating ships' bottoms with metal by electrolytic deposition. The inventor, D. W. Crane, has already completed the first practical experiment with this epoch-making discovery, and a little while back coated one of the large ocean liners with copper by this means. The metal sides of the vessel serve as the negative pole, whilst the deposited film of copper forms the positive pole. The inventor proceeds by placing the electrolytic solution in troughs, which are wedged up (or attached by magnets) against the hull of the ship and made watertight by caoutchouc joints. The current conveyed through the troughs causes the deposition of a layer of copper of the desired thickness on the sides of the vessel. The number of troughs employed naturally varies according to the area of surface to be coated. The individual sections of the precipitated copper unite to form a uniform jointless whole, making one piece with the ship's bottom. According to Holzapfel, no favourable result as regards the preservation of the ship's bottom can be hoped for unless all loose paint belonging to a previous coating is removed ; each speck of rust present must be carefully cleaned off, and then only should the surface be primed and painted afresh. If talc, red lead, or any other paint has recently been applied to the ship's bottom, then only a very thin layer of certain compositions can be laid on, since otherwise the first paint will be dissolved by the vehicle of the second. Many compositions unite very well with old zinc white and form a hard, compact covering, which gives very satisfactory results. Zinc white is, moreover, the only ordinary paint that will adhere on new ships, though white lead is employed, particularly in dockyards, and is worthy of consideration where not excluded on account of expense. The lead ensheathing the vessel is attacked by fermentative constituents present in water, and the resulting salts prove fatal to adherent animals. The first coating of composition applied to ships during, or shortly after, building never behaves very well, the coating becoming loose and gradually peeling off, carrying with it the superior layers of paint. This is to some extent inevitable, owing to the iron having begun to rust while the ship was in course of construction ; partly, however, it is the result of the different paints used.

Tar paint, when fresh, is anti-putrefactive in action, but necessitates priming with some good composition.

The comparatively large number of anti-fouling compositions in current use may be divided into two classes: the first comprising such as partly prevent the adherence of testacea, and partly kill these organisms by the active poisonous constituents present; whilst to the second belong those covered by a superior layer of paint, which peels off, and by so doing ensures the removal of the incrusting testacea. The property of peeling off is often possessed by the poisonous paints as well.

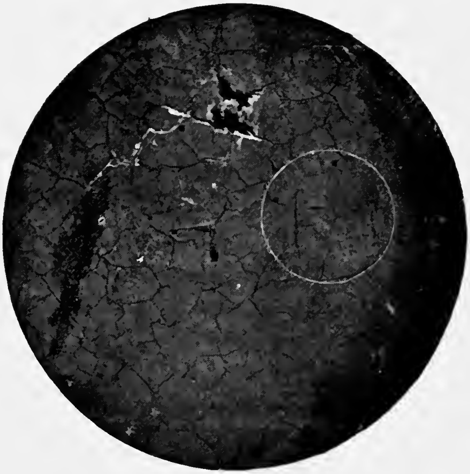


FIG. 59 (natural size).—Non-peeling anti-fouling composition after three months' immersion in water.

With regard to these compositions, the following observations are made by Holzapfel: The best paints are the poisonous enamels, which, in addition to possessing toxic properties, are quick drying, combine with a smooth surface, and do not peel off. To prevent peeling the mass must be applied to the object in layers, each of which is allowed to dry uniformly, in order to avoid inequality due to dissimilar vehicles. Copper salts, especially sulphates or oxides, form new combinations with the surrounding water, and are gradually eaten away, *i.e.*, peel off; and there are other materials which also possess dehiscent properties. Holzapfel, himself manufacturer of a widely used composition, lays stress on the suitability of the preparation to the portion of the ocean the vessel has to traverse, since the same formula is not adapted to serve in all waters.

The harder the paint the longer is it likely to last, and paints endowed with this property are particularly suitable for the Atlantic passage, whilst the more dehiscent (peeling) enamels are better adapted for the impure waters of the Indian Seas. In the former case a much smaller quantity of poisonous material is required, and renewal is less frequently necessary than in the latter waters.

FIG. 60 (magnified).—Non-peeling anti-fouling composition after three months' immersion in water.

On the question of paints for iron vessels, P. Schwarz says: "The object of the paint is to preserve the ship's bottom from corrosion or incrustation, and to colour the vessel above the water line. In the case of warships this colour should be inconspicuous, and for vessels in tropical waters should be such as will exert a favourable influence on the internal temperature of the ship. In steel or iron vessels the principal point is preservation from rust, oxygen being present in large proportion in the air, the water, and partly also in the carbon dioxide of the bilge water.

" Moreover, the scale (proto-peroxide of iron) produced in rolling the steel and iron plates, and the varying degrees of hardness of the surface developed during the working of the plates, give rise—in presence of sea water—to a galvanic current which leaves deep pittings of rust behind. Rust itself also forms a galvanic current with iron in presence of sea water, decomposing the latter, which then yields up its oxygen to oxidise the iron, whilst the liberated hydrogen presses up the paint and contributes to its destruction.

FIG. 61 (natural size).—Peeling anti-fouling composition after six months' immersion in water.

" Consequently the preservation of the hull, and especially the protection of the bottom from corrosion by rust, is attended with great difficulties; and though a number of compositions have made their appearance there is none that fulfils all requirements. Such paints must be insoluble in water, and sufficiently elastic to give a little and thus prevent cracking, but at the same time possess a certain degree of hardness to oppose sufficient resistance to mechanical shocks. These conditions are best fulfilled by a thin layer of resin; consequently many ship's paints are compounded of varnish to which metallic oxides in the state of powder are added in order to increase the oxidation and resinification of the oil (this is, however, an erroneous assumption). Such materials include red lead, iron oxide, zinc white, and white lead, the resulting paints taking a long time—one to three days—to dry. More extensively used are the spirit varnish paints consisting of volatile oils or hydrocarbon compounds (spirit) and dissolved resin, which latter forms a thin, elastic, lacquer-like film on the surface of the iron after the solvent has evaporated. To this class belong the compositions made by Rathjen, Heyl, Dr. Pflug, Von Höveling, and many others, which are widely used in the mercantile marine service. As they dry quickly, almost under the brush, the operation of painting takes up but little time.

FIG. 62 (magnified).—Peeling anti-fouling composition after six months' immersion in water.

" Coal tar, which contains solid and liquid hydrocarbons and resinous matters, has also been found to behave well for ship's use when prepared as free from acid as possible, though it wears away under the influence of sea water somewhat quicker than the previously mentioned paints.

" Moravia composition, which is laid on either boiling hot or by means of a spatula, also behaves well in sea water, but owing to the inconvenient method of application has made very little headway.

" The destructive action of iron scale, already referred to, is obviated in the case of warships by pickling the steel plates. To this end the plates of the external skin are immersed for half an hour in a bath containing 17 to 18 per cent. of hydrochloric acid, after which they are scrubbed bright with steel brushes, and freed from any residual acid by steeping for a short time in lime water, followed by a final washing with warm water. After this they are generally coated with a thin layer of varnish to protect them while the ship is being built. Corrosion set up in the interior of the ship, by dirty bilge water, chemical action of cargo, or high temperature in the engine room and stokehole, is also usually guarded against by coats of paint—red lead and silicate paint. In the bilge, paint and cement, and marine glue stopping, are used, whilst special named paints—Crease's paint—are employed in the water tanks. Cement being heavy is often mixed with coke, marine glue, etc.; and where carbon dioxide occurs in the bilge, slaked lime is often used to fix the acid.

" At the present time zinc is the best material known for protecting steel and iron against rust from sea water. Owing, however, to the expense of the process only the outer plates of torpedo boats, river boats and pontoons are galvanised, the thin plates of which ($\frac{1}{25}$ to $\frac{1}{6}$ of an inch thick) are liable to become corroded right through. In large ships also, galvanised iron and steel are used for fittings exposed to air and moisture, and consequently liable to be spoilt by rust; but since galvanising tends to weaken the metal it is now falling into disuse for important articles such as chain cables, cleats, etc.

"In addition to the corrosion of iron on shipboard by rust, there also arise injuries due to galvanic action, such as occurs at the stern when bronze propellers are used, and in bronze valves; in such cases it is usual to employ zinc protectors. Inside the ship no copper pipes should be led into the bilge, and consequently the lower lengths of the piping from the pumps are made of galvanised iron.

"Besides anti-corrosive paints, special value attaches to compositions intended to protect ships' bottoms from incrustation by vegetable (algae) and animal (mussels, crustacea) organisms, which—in tropical seas especially—accumulate to such an extent that the increase in surface friction may reduce the speed of the vessel by as much as one half. To remove this inconvenience, which greatly affects vessels both of the navy and of the merchant service, special paints are employed, or else the ship's bottom is covered with a metal sheathing, copper being the most efficacious. This metal oxidises uniformly in presence of sea water, and the resulting copper compounds are so loosely adherent to the metal that they are washed away during the passage of the ship through the water and carry any incrustation away with them. When the ship is at rest this action is more gradual and the copper may become incrusted in course of time, a result which also occurs when galvanic action is set up between the copper and iron, the film of hydrogen, deposited on the former, protecting it from further decomposition and depriving it of the power of preventing incrustation. Consequently great care is necessary to insulate the iron plates of the vessel from the sheathing, in the case of sheathed iron ships. For the same reason iron bolts must be dispensed with in fastening metal sheathing on wooden vessels, their place being taken by bolts of copper or yellow metal. The ship is then said to be copper fastened."

With reference to the composition of the various paints, Hummel says:—

For priming, MacInnes used spirit varnish containing iron oxide, this being covered by a warmed mixture of copper and soap. Gisborne mixed mercury and chalk and prepared therefrom a thick slow-drying oil paint, which was then employed to top a layer of red lead paint. Rathjen's introduction of shellac dissolved in spirit must be regarded as an important advance in the protection of ships' bottoms. This solution was mixed with iron oxide, a little linseed oil being added in order to impart elasticity to the paint. This preparation served as a primary insulating layer and was covered by a second coating of the same materials together with arsenic and mercury. Such paints are characterised by great durability owing to the comparative impotence of the salt in sea water towards shellac, whilst the mercury in the upper coating becomes converted into mercury chloride, which is fatal to the life of organisms. Rathjen's paints being quick drying it is therefore possible to apply two or three coats in the course of one day. It is, however, impossible to introduce large quantities of mercury into the paint, owing to its destructive action on the shellac; and the latter is moreover only slightly soluble, so that the efficiency of the paint is greatly diminished. As poisonous constituents, mention may also be made of copper and zinc white, and other antiseptic materials, such as hydrazine, have been tried; the most efficacious, however, are copper and mercury. The cheapness of copper is in its favour, but nevertheless it seemingly cannot be recommended, because in case of injury to the insulating layer large quantities of copper are likely to effect the corrosion of the iron.

The action of anti-fouling compositions manifests itself either by their peeling off on the voyage and thus loosening the adherent incrustation, or else by the fatal influence of their poisonous constituents—salts of copper, arsenic or mercury—on the life of the incrusting organisms, which are thereby caused to fall away. Paints of the latter kind are mostly attended with the disadvantage that the contained salts destroy the anti-corrosive primary paint and strongly attack the metal bottom. Moreover it has not yet been definitely ascertained whether the poisonous salts actually remove the incrustation by killing the organisms.

For this reason preference is accorded to the peeling compositions. In such cases the protecting paint must be renewed annually, and is therefore unsuitable for ships that have to make long voyages in tropical waters. For these, metallic sheathing affords the best protection against incrustation. As regards colour, ships voyaging in the tropics are always painted white above the water line; ships of war receive a covering of grey to dirty yellow paint, though latterly olive green has been found the most suitable on account of its rendering the vessels practically undetectable at distances whereat they can be plainly seen when painted in other colours. Torpedo boats and despatch boats are generally painted black, whilst the painting of merchant vessels and yachts is altogether a matter of taste.

Hummel lays down the following fundamental conditions for the suitability of paints for iron ships:—

1. The composition must preserve the ship's bottom from corrosion;

2. It must form a smooth surface, in order to diminish friction; and

3. Must dry quickly, so as to enable the parts below the water line to be cleaned and coated with two layers of paint in a day.

In the case of new steel vessels the plates are generally covered with a skin, which must be removed by dipping in dilute hydrochloric acid; otherwise this layer peels off, carrying the paint with it, and exposing the naked metal to corrosion. New ships should also be painted at least once every six months until it is pretty certain that the paint has obtained a firm hold.

In order to show the relative value of the existing anti-fouling compositions, the subjoined table has been compiled by W. P. Wierchowski, on the basis of experiments made with the Baltic fleet:—

Composition.	Consumption per square fathom of surface.	Cost.	Weight of incrustation per month.
	Lb.	Roubles.	Lb.
Leoni Nos. 1 and 2	7·00	2·55½	3·704
Rathjen Nos. 1, 2, 3	6·18	4·95	3·191
Dubois Nos. 1 and 2	7·50	3·72	5·453
Perreti Nos. 1 and 2	7·86	2·90	4·358
Holzapfel Nos. 1 and 2	7·25	2·70	3·168
Murres Nos. 1 and 2	9·03	5·12	3·775
Soapstone	5·25	0·79	5·455
Urban No. 1	6·00	1·80	2·82
Urban No. 2	19·50	5·77	2·82
Red Lead	6·50	0·70	8·02

VARIOUS SHIP PAINTS.

Gisborne's Paint.

Consists of—

Mercury	5 parts.
Chalk	7½ ,,
Lead oxide	4½ ,,
Zinc white	7 ,,

(or white lead and red lead) incorporated with linseed varnish by grinding.

Lucchini's Anti-corrosive Composition.

Galipot	30 parts	dissolved in
Pure resin	20 ,,	
Mineral oil	30 ,,	and
Turpentine	15 ,,	Mixed with
Manganese dioxide	5 ,,	and ground along with
Mercury arseniate	2½ ,,	and
Red arsenic	20 ,,	

Carr and Dickinson's Paint.

Resin	100 parts,	dissolved in
Carbon bi-sulphide	31 ,,	and
Naphtha	18 ,,	the filtered solution being mixed with
Pigment	19 ,,	and a little powdered lime.

John Haddon's Paints for Ships' Bottoms.

This inventor patented the following composition :—

Iodine	1 part,	dissolved in
Alcohol	1 ,,	and mixed with
Vegetable or mineral carbon	20 parts,	
Carbolic acid	2 parts,	and
Iron oxide	76 ,,	

the whole being ground along with a suitable proportion of linseed varnish.

Cheap Paint for Iron Ships.

Asphalt, or black pitch	600 parts,	melted and mixed with
Hot boiled linseed oil	480 ,,	the whole cooled to 24° C., and mixed with
Graphite	600 ,,	
Copper arseniate	120 ,,	and
Coal-tar oil	640 ,,	

The intimately incorporated material is applied hot to the ship's hull.

Kitchingham and Andrews' Paint.

Hot tar	2½ parts
Iron oxide	2 ,,
Resin	1 part
Lead acetate	2 parts

mixed together and applied whilst hot.

Schnittger's Paint for Ships' Bottoms.

In compounding this paint, the inventor's (Schnittger, of Cologne) chief care was to ensure its peeling off—and at the same time exerting a poisonous effect—as soon as infested with any considerable incrustation. The method of preparation is as follows: 10 parts of copal are distilled with continuous stirring until 20 per cent. or so has been vaporised, the vapours being collected and condensed in a separate vessel. The remaining 80 per cent. of the copal is then run out of the still and rapidly cooled, by pouring into cold water; the mass is then broken up, and dissolved in 90 per cent. spirit on the sand bath, the temperature being kept down as low as possible. This copal varnish is filtered, mixed with the distilled copal oil, and reduced with spirit; the aqueous distillate must not be added, as it would cause precipitation.

The following alcoholic solutions are next prepared :—

2 parts of powdered aloe in 4 parts of 90 per cent. spirit
2 ,, camphor ,, 4 ,, ,,
2 ,, pitch ,, 4 ,, ,,
5 ,, colophony ,, 3 ,, ,,

and are added to the first one in a large vessel, left to clarify, and afterwards decanted from the sediment. Of this carefully prepared solution 33 parts are mixed, by continual stirring, with 28 parts of *Caput mortuum*, 3 parts of linseed oil, and 3 parts of castor (ricinus) oil. After prolonged stirring, 10 parts of *hydrargyrum oxydatum rubrum s. flavum* are stirred in, followed by 5 parts of crystallised carbolic acid, the whole being then stirred for a further twelve to twenty-four hours, and packed in casks.

H. and F. G. Benedikt's Paint for Ships.

Hydrated protoxide of copper is precipitated by reducing copper sulphate with grape sugar and potash, the precipitate being mixed with carbolic acid, then warmed and incorporated with linseed oil followed by some mineral pigment. The cuprous carbolate presumably formed is claimed to permanently exert a particularly poisonous effect on animal and vegetable matters.

Satin's "Incomparable" Waterproof Varnish.

Louis Satin prepares the following composition for preventing access of water, rusting, or incrustation by crustacea and plants :—

For the first coating 40 parts of water-free tar are warmed and mixed with 40 parts of coal tar and 60 parts of tar oil. This mixture replaces the usual red-lead and linseed-oil paint. The second coat—for killing the incrustation—is made of 35 parts of oil-free tar, 20 parts of coal tar, and 40 parts of tar oil, 40 parts of some poison—such as arsenic, corrosive sublimate, mercury arsenate, Schweinfurt green, etc.—being added per 100 parts of the mixture.

Harrison's Composition.

	Parts		Parts
Trinidad pitch	35	warmed and mixed with slaked lime	45
Finely ground barium carbonate	25	and powdered copper sulphate .	5

When mixing is completed and the mass has cooled down to 100° Fahr., a suitable proportion of crude naphtha or turpentine is stirred in.

Cook's Composition.

Shellac	2 parts,	
Grain lac	½ part,	
Gamboge	½ ,,	
Benzol	½ ,,	and
Red Lead	1 ,,	are dissolved in
Alcohol	8 parts.	

The clear solution is used for the first coat; for the second coat it is mixed with—

Zinc white . .	1½ part, and
Verdigris (copper acetata)	½ part.

Cruickshank's Composition.

A solution of resin is prepared, at the rate of 10 lb. per ½ gallon of turpentine, to each gallon of which is added ½ gallon of gutta-percha solution (4 lb. per gallon of turpentine). Each gallon of the mixture is incorporated with 5¾ lb. of red mercury oxide, "white precipitate," or mercury oxychloride, and 5¾ lb. of red lead.

Submarine Paint for Ships, Quays, etc.

Copper silicate is prepared by reducing copper sulphate with potash or starch sugar, the precipitate being incorporated with carbolic acid, and mixed in a moderately warm condition with linseed oil and any desired mineral pigment. The resulting paint is highly poisonous to all animal and vegetable organisms.

J. M. Lintock's Paint for Ships' Sides.

Twenty parts of zinc white and 6 parts of linseed oil are mixed and thoroughly incorporated by stirring with 14 parts of tallow, previously deprived of moisture by means of steam heat applied during several hours. When cooled the mass is reduced by agitation in a closed air-tight vessel with 7½ parts of naphtha, benzol, or the like, 3 parts of gum dammar, and 1 part of colophony. After the preparation has cooled down, which takes about twenty-four hours, the zinc white will be found diffused in a finely divided state throughout the mass.

O. L. Burnham's Paint for Ships' Bottoms.

This is composed of seaweed ground, in a green and moist condition, in linseed oil, and mixed with oil, litharge, lead acetate, and turpentine. It is claimed that this paint, in addition to acting as a preventive against incrustation by mollusca, also protects wooden vessels from the ravages of worms below the water line. The method of preparation is the following: Linseed oil, about 10 gallons, is boiled for five hours at 600° Fahr., along with ½ lb. of litharge and ½ lb. of lead acetate, and then reduced to proper workable consistency with turpentine, a pint of seaweed—previously ground in a freshly gathered state in linseed oil—being added, and the whole coloured by ochre or other suitable pigment.

VARIOUS ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINT MASSES.

Under this heading will be comprised all such compositions—paint masses, processes, and the like—as are used for painting the surface of metal, although they may not be true oil paints. The value of these processes is a variable quantity, and there are several that would be very serviceable if resistance to atmospheric influences were not in question.

Buechner's Anti-corrosive Preparation.

In manufacturing this preparation the inventor (Dr. August Buechner, of Heidelberg) employs a mixture of metallic zinc and calcium carbonate in a very finely divided state, along with some polishing material, such as levigated Tripoli, colcothar, or vegetable charcoal, the whole of these constituents being thoroughly dried, sifted, and finally bolted. The mixture is then incorporated with an alcoholic solution of soap of specific gravity 0·925, prepared by mixing 2 parts of a soap made of olive oil, potash lye, alcohol, and water with 1 part of a soap made from olive oil, hog fat, lead oxide, potassium carbonate, and water. To the mixed soaps benzol is added until the limit of limpidity of the solution is just reached. The powder and liquid are stored separately, as, if mixed together, they cannot be kept in closed vessels owing to their mutual reaction. Shortly before use the components are intimately mixed together in a basin by stirring with the brush afterwards used for painting, 1 part of powder being employed with 2 parts of the soap solution. After setting aside for ten to fifteen minutes in a cool place the mixed paint will be ready for use. The ironwork to be painted must be carefully freed from grease and impurities beforehand. For articles kept under cover a single coating will be sufficient, but two coats are applied to those exposed to the weather. The paint is laid on in such a manner that the sheen of the metal surface is no longer visible. The mass dries under the brush, and becomes so hard and fast after a few days' exposure to the air that it cannot be washed off by even the heaviest and most prolonged fall of snow or rain. When the articles are to be used the coating can be easily removed by brushing. Unlike the ordinary anti-corrosive paints, *no* resinification or greasing occurs in this preparation, and the polish and lustre of the metal are preserved for years, and even increased owing to the action of the polishing materials during the removal of the mass.

Iron and steel remain free from rust so long as the surface is covered with the paste, which is also suitable for preserving from rust weapons of all kinds, as well as fine surgical instruments, machinery at rest, extra machine parts and other articles kept in store.

To permanently protect iron structures from corrosion, as in the case of bridges, girders, and so forth, the above-mentioned powdered mixture—minus the polishing material—is incorporated with an alkaline solution of glutin, instead of the alcoholic soap solution. This is prepared by agitating a boiling aqueous solution of glutin with successive portions of a hot, concentrated mixture of sodium borate and potassium carbonate, the whole being then gently boiled for half an hour. After storing in a cool place for fourteen days in a well-closed vessel, and filtering through wood charcoal, a clear, non-glutinous liquid of specific gravity 1·0350 is obtained.

The method of application is the same as already described, only the ratio of powder to glutin solution is 2 : 1 by weight. The paint dries quickly, and, unlike the first preparation, sets so hard within a few hours that its removal by mechanical means is extremely difficult. By reason of this property, the preparation is highly suitable as a priming coat for oil paints, the latter rendering the protective layer waterproof and therefore durable. Its advantages in comparison with the red-lead paints hitherto used are self-evident. The paint does not peel off like red lead generally does, and, besides, the injurious action exerted by the metallic sulphides and sulphuric acid salts present—often in large proportion—in iron oxide paints is here obviated. As a single coating is sufficient, the method recommends itself by the great saving of time it affords, apart from the low price of the preparation.

Ebers' Anti-corrosive Paint.

F. Ebers & Co., of Düsseldorf, employ linseed oil or some other drying oil or resin, heated along with 10 per cent. of free linolic acid (or other drying fatty acid) and copper oxide, copper benzoate, or a compound of copper with the fatty acid of a drying oil, until partial or entire solution has been effected. The liquid is then filtered and mixed with a drying oil in such proportion that the whole contains about 2 per cent. of copper and is still rich in the free (drying) fatty acid.

Buechner's Process for Destroying and Preventing Rust.

This method (which is protected under the "Useful Design" branch of the German Patent Law) relates to the preparation of a mixture of various substances for destroying rust immediately and preventing its recurrence — a danger always imminent when rust is removed by the aid of chlorides or acids, owing to the presence of residual dilute acid, etc., on the surface of the metal after the washing process generally employed. The circumstance that iron or steel freed from rust by treatment with such chlorides or acids soon becomes covered with a thicker layer of rust than ever has led to the abandonment of this practice in favour of scrubbing with emery and other polishing materials, but this latter method has the disadvantage of injuring the unrusted portions of the metal; and, moreover, the rust is sometimes inaccessible to emery on account of the shape of the article to be treated. These defects the inventor claims to have overcome by means of the following liquid, which immediately removes any pre-existing rust on iron and prevents rusting afterwards: conditions essential to any anti-corrosive laying claim to practical utility. The material employed consists of rosolic acid, sulphuric acid, tartaric acid, ferrous sulphate, potash alum and vegetable mucilage, prepared as follows:—

1. Five parts of gum tragacanth are thoroughly softened with 200 parts of water and then liquefied over the water bath.

2. Three and a half parts of tartaric acid are dissolved in 50 parts of water and mixed by agitation with 0·5 part of chemically pure sulphuric acid, powdered rosolic acid being added to the warm liquid and left to dissolve.

3. The two liquids are mixed by pouring No. 2 into No. 1, and stirring up the whole until a homogeneous mass is produced.

4. Finally a solution of 10 parts of pure ferrous sulphate and 5 parts of potash alum in 100 parts of water is added, the whole being shaken up in a flask and filtered through glass wool.

To remove rust from the surface of large objects the affected spots are painted over with the liquid, which is then left to act for some time, and afterwards wiped off along with the rust with a clean rag. Smaller articles which cannot be treated separately, *e.g.*, sewing needles, thimbles, knife blades, steel pens, bottle stoppers, steel cartridge cases, screw attachments to firearms, etc., are dipped in water containing some of the above fluid, until all the rust has been removed. They are then taken out of the bath, well drained and finally shaken up for a long time in a mixture of dry sawdust 6 parts, fine chalk 3 parts, and 1 part of finely powdered quicklime. The preparation does not attack either iron or steel, nor does it affect their polish.

Dr. C. Levoir's Method of Preserving Iron from Rusting.

The iron is warmed to about 40° C. over a coke fire (spirit or benzine lamps being unsuitable by reason of the water engendered during the combustion of these liquids and deposited on the metal) and then rubbed over with a rag previously soaked in linolic acid diluted with methyl alcohol containing a small percentage of dissolved resin. The layer resulting from this operation, though not perfectly hard, greatly facilitates the adhesion of paint on iron, and prevents the rusting of the metal by itself absorbing oxygen continuously. At the end of twenty-four hours a second coating is applied, consisting of a workable paint of equal parts of red lead and white lead ground in boiled oil and containing up to 10 per cent. of linolenic acid. According to the inventor this mixture of white lead and red lead takes firmer hold and is more durable than red lead alone. It should be laid on thinly, and will dry in three hours; still a delay of twenty-four hours is desirable before applying the next coat.

Levoir claims that, when treated in this manner, iron will stand both the influence of weather and of salt spray, whereas red-lead paint used by itself is attacked by sea water to such an extent that, at the end of three years, no trace of lead can be detected in the scrapings of paint.

There are no practical objections against this process, and a test on a large scale is not difficult to make.

For the preparation of linolenic acid on a manufacturing scale Levoir gives the following instructions:—

Old clear linseed oil is stirred up with 15 per cent. of slaked lime and boiled with plenty of water, the operation being accelerated by employing a pressure of 2½ atmos. The resulting lime soap is then mixed, by warmth and agitation, with 130 parts of 33 per cent. sulphuric acid in a lead-lined vessel, the linolenic acid, which gradually collects on the surface, being drawn off and washed with water to remove any residual sulphuric acid.

Linolic Acid.

To prepare linolic acid, linseed oil or poppy oil is completely saponified with caustic soda lye, the soap being purified by treatment with hot water and soda lye, followed by repeated salting out. The soap is then dissolved in a large volume of water, and decomposed with calcium chloride, the lime salt of the fatty acids being thrown down. On washing and pressing the precipitate and treating it with ether the calcium linolate is brought into solution, leaving the lime salts of the other fatty acids undissolved. The ethereal solution is next decomposed with dilute hydrochloric acid, whereupon the calcium chloride formed dissolves in the water present, whilst the linolic acid remains in solution in the ether. The solvent can be distilled off at a low temperature, in an atmosphere of hydrogen, after separating the two layers of liquid. The impure linolic acid left in the still is dissolved in alcohol and thrown down by ammonia and barium chloride as barium linolate, which is washed, pressed, treated with ether, and recrystallised several times over. To recover the linolic acid the barium salt is shaken up with ether and dilute hydrochloric acid, the ethereal layer being then drawn off and distilled as before, and the residual acid dried under the air-pump, in presence of sulphuric acid and a mixture of lime and ferrous sulphate (for the purpose of absorbing oxygen). A nearly pure linolic acid can be prepared by decomposing lead linolate with sulphuretted hydrogen and extracting with ether.

Linolic acid—Mulder's "linolein"—is a thin, pale yellow oil, of specific gravity 0·9216, at 15° C., with a high coefficient of refraction and faintly acid reaction, mild flavour at first, but leaving an irritating after-taste in the throat. It does not solidify even at - 18° C., is insoluble in water, but dissolves readily in alcohol and ether. When exposed to the air, linolic acid greedily absorbs oxygen (about 2 per cent.) and becomes thick and viscous, changing finally into a mass resembling varnish. Spread out in thin layers on wood it forms a varnish, but on glass it merely turns thick. On being treated with hydriodic acid and amorphous phosphorus linolic acid is converted, by the nascent hydrogen, into stearic acid. In an undecomposed state it is non-volatile, and the products obtained by distillation are different from those furnished by oleic acid. It does not yield sebacic acid. Nitrous acid and hyponitrous acid render linolic acid viscous, without any deposition of elaidic acid crystals or other allied acid occurring. Nitric acid causes it to swell up considerably and change into a greasy resin. Owing to their instability and tendency to form acid salts, the linolates are difficult to obtain in a pure state. They are white in colour, usually non-crystalline, and separate out in flakes as the hot-prepared alcoholic or ethereal solution cools; when left to evaporate spontaneously a gelatinous residue is formed. The salts turn brown on exposure to the air, and develop a characteristic aroma. According to Hazura, linolic acid is not a single uniform substance, but consists, when obtained from *linseed oil*, of—

Linolenic acid	15 per cent.
Isolinolenic acid	65 ,,
Linolic acid	5 ,,
Oleic acid	15 ,,

that from *poppy oil* being composed of—

Linolenic acid	5 per cent.
Linolic acid	60 ,,
Oleic acid	35 ,,

In observing the phenomenon of drying, Hazura and Bauer found that these drying acids behave alike towards atmospheric oxygen, only the time required for oxidation being different; linolenic acid and isolinolenic acid are the quickest drying.

Rubber Oil (Anti-corrosive).

According to the Patent Specification, this preservative is prepared by redistilling the crude oils obtained from the dry distillation of brown coal, peat, or other mineral resinous substances. Thin rolled india-rubber is cut into fine strips and soaked in four times its own weight of the resulting oil during eight days, the product being then exposed to the action of vulcan oil or a similar body until a perfectly homogeneous clear mass is formed. When spread very thinly over a metallic surface and left to dry slowly this substance forms a kind of skin capable of effectually resisting atmospheric influences.

Jokl and Randnitz's Method of Protecting Iron and Steel from Rusting.

A permanent layer of oxide is formed on the surface of the metal by dissolving 1 part of zinc oxide, lead oxide or alumina, or the corresponding chlorides, in 3 parts of some mineral acid—such as sulphuric, nitric, or hydrochloric acid—diluting the solution with 100 parts of water containing 1 or 2 per cent. of tartaric acid, citric acid, potassium-sodium tartrate, sodium nitrate, etc., and utilising the finished liquid for dipping the iron articles to be treated. After 2 to 10 hours' immersion the iron is dried at 100° C. in an oven until the superficial moisture is dissipated, after which it is dipped in a liquid hydrocarbon (*e.g.*, petroleum residue) and exposed over a coke fire, or to air heated to the temperature of combustion of the hydrocarbon. The finished surface can be rubbed over with a mixture of graphite and paraffin.

Benenont's Anti-corrosive Insulating Paint.

A resinous substance is dissolved in carbon bi-sulphide, a suitable mineral salt, insoluble in water, being added to the solution at the proper moment, a silicate being preferable by reason of its great solubility in carbon bi-sulphide. The general proportions are : Carbon bi-sulphide, 100 parts ; resin, 45 parts ; and 45 parts of silicate or other coloured or colourless salt. The finished product may be colourless or coloured, dries at once owing to the rapid volatilisation of the solvent, and leaves a waterproof, insulating layer protecting the metal against oxidation, and being, in addition, fireproof and impervious to the action of acids and alkalis. The paint forms a lustrous, inalterable coating, which, on account of its impenetrability by moisture, can be used in place of glazed bricks or cement in building operations or for decorative purposes, being of the same colour as these materials, and much cheaper. The excellent qualities of the paint are completely developed within a few days after application.

B. Pollitzer's Protective Surface for Metallic Objects.

The bright or oxidized metal surface to be protected is suitably prepared by smoothing, and afterwards coated over with a thin layer of one or more drying oils, such as linseed oil, Bankul nut oil, nut oil, hemp oil, poppy oil, castor oil, cucumber seed oil, sunflower oil, pine seed oil, cotton seed oil, grape seed oil, etc., either by dipping, by painting with a brush or other suitable means, according to the metallic object to be treated. The article is then exposed, in a suitable apparatus, to a temperature of 200° to 400° for half to one hour, which treatment causes the oil to decompose to a hard, lustrous, elastic, and firmly adherent mass.

Cosmann's Anti-corrosive Paint.

Dr. Cosmann (Ger. Pat. 93,854) employs the peroxides of the noble metals cerium, didymium and lanthanum, which act on linseed oil like the heavy metals. These orange-red to straw-yellow coloured oxides, which are of lower specific gravity than the heavy metals, and are therefore more productive, are easy to prepare, and are obtained as bye-products from monazite sand. As, when ground up with varnish, they form paints of good covering power, it seemed feasible to impart to these paints both drying properties and a lacquer-like character by heating them to 150° C. for some time. By this means an exceedingly good covering paint, which is quick to dry and extremely slow to perish, is obtained, and is suitable for painting iron, requires no priming, and forms neither wrinkles nor cracks. These earths are absolutely neutral bodies and, unlike metallic oxides (micaceous iron ore, zinc dust, etc.), exert no galvanic action on the iron; moreover they are able to resist even strong acid fumes, and consequently are endowed with all the properties required of an anti-corrosive material.

Leando Borgnini's Method for Coating Sheet Metal with an Acid- and Alcohol-resisting Layer.

An excellent medium for coating or painting sheet iron, especially the walls of vessels used for the conveyance of wine and other liquids, is afforded by shellac, this substance protecting the metallic surface against the action of the acids and alcohol present in small proportions (less than 25 per cent.) in the said fluids.

The hot method of lacquering with shellac is performed in the following manner: the sheet metal must first be thoroughly cleaned and treated with dilute sulphuric acid, whereupon the application of the shellac is proceeded with, on a small section of the surface at a time. With this object the part to be lacquered is heated, and when the requisite temperature is obtained the shellac (in sheets or scales, as met with in commerce) is placed on the heated surface, where it melts and can be distributed by means of a brush or other suitable means until the layer is of the desired thickness. On cooling down the metal the lacquer will be found hard and solid.

The crux of the operation is the determination of the proper degree of heat to be applied to the metal, since, if insufficiently high, the lacquer, though melted, will not stick fast but breaks away under the slightest shock, whilst if the heat is too great the shellac is partly burned, or at least becomes spongy and therefore useless.

As soon as one part of the metal is covered another portion is treated in the same manner, and so on until the whole surface is lacquered over. The layer should be about $\frac{1}{25}$ of an inch in thickness.

Shellac can also be applied by the brush in the form of an alcoholic solution, as it dissolves to the extent of 8 per cent. in this liquid. To prepare such a varnish the shellac is broken down into coarse powder and placed in an excess of alcohol, so that the undissolved residue is small in amount. The mixture is then boiled and stirred for about a quarter of an hour to complete the solution, and is decanted after two hours' repose.

This varnish is brushed over the previously well-cleaned metal surface and thoroughly dried by exposing the sheet in a room warmed to 30° to 40° C. A second layer is applied in the same way, and so forth, care being necessary to let each one dry properly before putting on the succeeding coat. Eight or ten applications are needed in order to produce a layer of sufficient thickness to be resistant. An addition of 5 per cent. of hydraulic cement can be made to varnishes of this kind; there is no difference in the mode of application.

The sheet metal may also be coated with a layer of hydraulic cement before the varnish is laid on, and with this object a little cement moistened with an agglutinant liquid may be brushed over the cleaned surface of the metal, so as to produce a thin film covering the same. After this film is dry a second layer of cement is applied in the same manner as to the surface of a wall. Then, when the cement sticks and has become quite dry at the ordinary temperature, the surface is washed over with a 20 per cent. solution of tartaric acid, left to dry thoroughly, and topped with a 4 per cent. alcoholic solution of shellac, laid on warm (about 50° C.) with the brush. Instead of this varnish the cemented surface may be covered over with a layer of 36° Bé. water glass (sodium silicate), applied as five or six separate coatings, the surface being washed over with hot water when dry. Again, the cement may be brushed over with melted paraffin (or such that has been heated at 150° to 200° C.) in sufficient quantity to impregnate the mass, the surface being finally washed carefully over with hot water.

Riegelmann's Anti-corrosive Paint.

Ordinary linseed oil paint is mixed with 10 per cent. of calcined magnesia, baryta or strontia, and mineral oil. This is claimed to neutralise the free acid of the paint and, in consequence of the alkaline reaction, preserve the iron from rusting. To keep iron free from rust when embedded in the earth the metal is coated with a mixture of—

Pine resin	100 parts.	
Gutta-percha	25 ,,	
Paraffin	50 ,,	
Magnesia	20 ,,	and
Mineral oil.		

For use on machine parts the paint containing 20 to 30 per cent. of magnesia or calcined dolomite is mixed with vaseline to keep it from drying.

Unalterable Paint for Cast Iron.

The articles are cleaned with weak acid, dried, and rubbed over with a file, wire brush, etc., to make them quite smooth. They are next rubbed over several times with ordinary crude petroleum and allowed to dry after each application. A dark glossy appearance is then imparted by friction with a stiff brush made of bristles, which glossy surface remains unaffected even by the heat of a stove, and affords an efficient protection against rust. Having thus laid the foundation for a lustrous exterior, it will be sufficient to afterwards simply rub the surface over with petroleum and polish with the brush to form a progressively increasing gloss of dark shade on the surface of the cast iron.

Gelder's Anti-corrosive Paint.

Sodium silicate (water glass) is thrown down by zinc acetate, and the freshly precipitated zinc silicate is mixed, whilst still moist, with linseed oil and zinc white. According to Simon, the zinc silicate prepared in this manner is not free from water of hydration, and consequently the power of resisting the effects of weather and of affording protection against rust is imperilled. If, however, the product be gradually calcined, it will not sinter—if properly handled—but can be readily ground fine, and then forms a pigment able to meet all requirements.

Anti-corrosive Weatherproof Paint Containing Paper.

Starting with the idea that a simple wrapping in paper suffices to protect iron and steel from rust, Cross and Bevan patented a process for dissolving paper and thus converting it into a suitable form for incorporation in paint. Ammoniacal copper oxide being at once too dear and incapable of yielding satisfactory results, the inventors dissolve cellulose paper in 15 per cent. caustic soda lye, and treat the product with carbon bi-sulphide for two to three hours, whereupon a yellow brown mass is formed, which is nothing more than a chemically modified solution of paper. By dissolving 16 parts of this mass in 100 parts of water the paint is formed, and can be mixed with lampblack, red lead, colcothar, or other pigment as required, a drier, such as lead acetate, magnesium chloride, etc., being added just before use. This renders the paint hard, weatherproof, and perfectly unalterable; it adheres equally well on stone, wood, or metal, and does not peel off like lacquers and varnishes. It is stated that this preparation has proved very satisfactory as a paint for iron ships.

Hydroferrocyanic Acid as an Anti-corrosive.

The articles of iron or steel to be treated are painted over with a solution of hydroferrocyanic acid or hydroferricyanic acid in conjunction with a strong acid, this treatment resulting in the solution of a small proportion of the metal and the formation of a very good anti-corrosive layer of insoluble double salts on the surface. According to an improved modification of this method the aqueous solutions of the above-named acids may be replaced by their alcoholic-aqueous solutions with or without an addition of oil, the advantage of these being better distribution over the metallic surface.

Hohenberg's Paint for Metallic Articles.

The cleaned surface of the articles—especially tins for conserves, pudding moulds, and aluminium flasks—is covered with one or more coatings of a mixture of permanent white (baryta or zinc sulphide white) and egg albumin, and when dry exposed to the action of boiling water or steam.

Plastique Bourdin.

This is a paint intended to protect wood or iron from the action of acids. It is prepared by melting together powdered wood charcoal and resin or colophony, with an addition of boiled linseed oil, vaseline, spermaceti and bone black, in varying proportions, which are determined by the colour, viscosity, and distributing power required; the use of resin and wood charcoal is, however, prescribed as a principal condition in all cases. For use, the mixture is melted, and is said to form a hard solid coating unaffected by acids.

Metal Paint from Spathic Iron Ore.

D. Aichelburg, of Billach, Carynthia (Ger. Pat. 75,788), employs the native iron ore known as sphaerosiderite (ferrous carbonate) or white iron ore, which by careful grinding and levigation is converted into "Montanite" paint for metal. The preparation, however, has a lower covering power than other iron oxides, though much dearer than the latter.

Silver Slag as an Anti-corrosive Paint.

Silver slag, characterised by a high percentage of silica and containing lead and zinc in the form of silicates, is capable of absorbing considerable quantities of varnish, and is perfectly indifferent towards chemical reagents. Ten years' practical experience with paints containing at least 40 per cent. of this pigment has led to the conviction that in point of anti-corrosive and weather-resisting properties they are superior to ordinary lead paints.

Robson's Metal Paint

consists of resin pitch, either alone or in conjunction with residue from the distillation of mineral oil or ozokerite—or with any other pitch that is miscible with paraffin—to which is added mineral oil or other oil. The object of the invention is to produce, without any admixture of drying oil or volatile solvent, a paint mass which will become fluid when heated, is of low viscosity, and possesses merely sufficient tackiness to cause it to adhere to the metal, so that it can be distributed by the brush without difficulty.

Walter and Stone's Anti-corrosive Paint.

Tannic acid and some agglutinant substance (gum-arabic dextrin, etc.) are dissolved in water or glycerine and mixed. This mass when applied to iron or steel in the ordinary manner by the brush forms a durable and efficacious coating, mainly insoluble in water and constituting a good substratum for other paint and lacquer.

Matthews' Caoutchouc-graphite Paint.

The mass for this paint, which is intended for metal roofs, and wooden structures of all kinds that are exposed to water, is invented and patented by Matthews of Harrisburg (Pa.), and consists of a linseed oil solution of caoutchouc ground along with graphite to a thickish but readily distributable mixture.

Heald's Anti-corrosive Paint.

Having repeatedly observed in the dismounting of gasometers that, whilst the old iron plate was generally corroded, the inscriptions marked thereon for transit purposes remained entirely unaltered, John Heald, of California, formed the idea of trying a mixture of white lead and turpentine as a rust-preventing coating for iron, and found that by using finely ground white lead in suspension with turpentine spirit the metal neither rusted nor scaled on the parts covered with this preparation.

SUNDRY PAINTS FOR IRON.

1. Twenty-four parts, by weight, of asphalt are dissolved in a flask in 36 parts of benzol at a moderate heat over the sand or water bath, and when this is complete the liquid is left to settle in a warm place (15° to 19° C.), separated from the sediment by decantation, and mixed with a solution of 2 parts of hard elemi resin and 1 part of Copaiba

balsam in benzol, the whole being reduced to the proper consistency by an addition of the same solvent.

(No objection can be raised against the usefulness of this preparation ("Iron lacquer"), but the employment of Copaiba balsam makes it too dear for use on a large scale.)

2. Fifty parts of poppy oil are well boiled, and at once mixed with a mixture of equal parts of litharge and manganese hydrate, the whole being well stirred, incorporated with 25 parts of benzine, and left at rest for twenty-four hours.

(Linseed varnish and benzine would produce the same result at less expense.)

3. A 10 per cent. solution of flowers of sulphur in turpentine is prepared and mixed with half the quantity of linseed varnish, added by instalments. A quantity of graphite equal to the weight of sulphur used is then stirred in along with an amount of dissolved asphalt equivalent to the linseed oil. The preparation should be slightly warmed before use.

(The excessive proportion of linseed varnish is certain to greatly retard drying.)

4. Ten parts of water-free tar, deprived of every trace of acetic acid—or ammonia and its compounds if coal tar be used—are boiled and mixed with 2 parts of graphite and 1 part of red lead. After the whole has been well boiled together, 1 part of flowers of sulphur and 2 parts of calcined pumice powder are thoroughly mixed in by stirring.

(Equal to any good tar paint.)

5. Equal parts of verdigris and white lead are stirred up with 3 parts of linseed oil until a thick pulp is formed, whereupon 1 part of hot turpentine, 1 part of zinc dust, and 1 part of chalk are stirred in.

(A linseed oil paint devoid of any special advantage over others of this class.)

6. Twenty-six parts of paraffin are dissolved in 80 parts of crude petroleum, and added to a mixture of 40 parts of linseed oil, 20 parts of flowers of sulphur, and 36 parts of pine resin.

(The paraffin-benzine solution renders the coating soft and unstable, but is useful for certain purposes.)

7. Equal parts of a 50° Bé. solution of water glass and finely powdered zinc white are well mixed and stirred so as to produce an easy working paint.

(Zinc white will not mix with water glass without coagulating and forming an unworkable mass.)

8. The articles to be treated are placed on a grating in an iron cylinder, the bottom of which contains small coals. On closing the cylinder and raising the lower end to red heat, the articles become covered with a shiny coating which decreases in lustre the longer they are left in the cylinder.

(The method is highly suitable for small articles.)

VARIOUS MEANS FOR PREVENTING RUST.

Fats, Oils and Compositions prepared therefrom.

It has already been mentioned in a previous section that fats and oils afford good protection from rust in cases where such protection is only required to be of a temporary character and no exposure to atmospheric influences is in question. The action of these fats and oils consists in forming an impervious, rust-preventing layer on the iron, which cover, being easily damaged by mechanical influences, can, however, only be of value for objects that are to be kept stored in closed rooms and not used.

When prolonged storage is in question a selection must be made, among the fats and oils, of such as are least susceptible to the influence of atmospheric oxygen, and consequently have the smallest tendency to form fatty acids, because these acids attack the metal and form therewith compounds of a rusty-brown colour. Though tallow is a fat that is often used for greasing ironware, it is one that very soon becomes converted into a rusty-brown mass, and allows the iron to rust. Liquid fats (oils), *e.g.*, olive oil, exhibit a still greater tendency to form rust, though this inconvenience may be minimised by boiling the oil for a short time with anhydrous sodium carbonate, whereby a slightly alkaline reaction is produced. A better result than is obtainable with vegetable oils can be ensured by using mineral oils, either alone or in combination with ozokerite (ceresin), *i.e.*, vaseline, the best of these means, however, being wax and paraffin dissolved in benzine or turpentine. Wax and paraffin being neutral substances and exhibiting no acid reaction cannot, therefore, give rise to the formation of rust on iron.

Preventing Rust by Coating with Oxides.

The formation of oxidised coatings on iron is an old-established practice, and includes the process of "browning"; nevertheless the method has never produced any noteworthy results, since the protection afforded is generally by no means permanent, and is suitable only for small articles, on which it can be frequently renewed, whilst for larger articles the tedious and expensive nature of the operation precludes its employment. For the sake of completeness, however, a few of the methods used are now reproduced.

Bronze-coloured Oxide Coating for Iron.

All the known methods of bronzing or browning iron by painting with acid solutions of copper or iron, drying the same in the air, brushing off the rust thus formed, and repeating the operation, produce nothing more than a light or dark red-brown coating on the surface of the metal. Even the Barff method, and that wherein the iron articles are heated in superheated steam, are merely capable of forming a black film of oxide on the iron. Moreover the two last-named methods present the disadvantage that the film of ferrous oxide soon peels off and affords an opportunity for the formation of rust. Again, though iron goods can be coated with copper or brass by dipping in solutions of copper, etc., or by galvanic methods, the coverings peel off after a short exposure to moist air, particularly if the surface of the iron was not perfectly bright to begin with. With the process now to be described, however, iron goods, especially for artistic purposes, can be easily coated with a fine, bronze-coloured film of oxide. This will resist the influence of moisture in a fairly satisfactory manner, and, moreover, the production of any desired shade of bronze can be effected by simple means. With this object the articles, scoured bright and freed from grease, are exposed for two to five minutes to the fumes of a heated mixture (1 : 1) of concentrated hydrochloric and nitric acids, the heating being continued until the bronze colour is visible on the surface of the goods. Then, after rubbing them over with vaseline, they are heated again until the vaseline begins to decompose, whereupon they are cooled and rubbed over with vaseline a second time. The fumes of these two acids produce a light reddish-brown shade of bronze, but when acetic acid is included in the mixture, the coating of oxide formed on the iron is of a handsome bronze-yellow colour; and all varieties of tone, from dark to light reddish-brown, and from dark yellow brown to light bronze yellow, can be produced by modifying the acid mixture in various ways. Iron T-rods, 5 feet long, for iron coffers, coated with a layer of oxide in this manner, have been found to remain entirely unaffected at the end of ten months, although continuously exposed to the acid fumes impregnating the atmosphere of the laboratory.

Ward's Inoxidation Method.

This method of preserving iron from rusting is based on the conjoint application of silicates and heat. The articles of cast or wrought iron are coated with a siliceous material by brushing or dipping; the coating dries rapidly, and on being exposed to a suitable degree of heat becomes liquefied, is said to "soak into the pores of the metal" (?), and when cold forms a dense and uniform dull black covering, which neither alters on prolonged exposure to the atmosphere, becomes loose, nor peels off. The addition of vitreous pigments to the siliceous material produces very handsome decorative effects far surpassing those obtainable by painting in the ordinary manner.

Thierault's Process.

Thierault has invented a process for colouring iron and steel, which is intended to protect these materials from rust and at the same time improve their appearance: the method is widely used and has proved itself efficient.

The following mixtures are given in the inventor's Patent Specification as suitable for use in the process: Liquid No. 1 contains mercury chloride and sal ammoniac; No. 2 consists of ferric chloride, cupric sulphate, nitric acid, alcohol and water; No. 3 contains ferrous chloride associated with nitric acid and water; and No. 4 is a weak solution of potassium sulphide. The articles, previously cleaned thoroughly and freed from grease, are given two coatings of liquid No. 1 by the aid of a sponge slightly moistened therewith, the second coating not being applied until the crust of oxide produced on the metal has been thoroughly dried, scrubbed over with black oxide of iron and a brush, and dried with a linen cloth. The same procedure is adopted all through.

Several coatings of No. 2 liquid are given and then liquid No. 3 is applied, the sponge being in this case thoroughly soaked in the solution. After drying for ten minutes the articles are transferred to a bath of hot water at 90° to 100° C., where they are left for five or ten minutes according to size. When taken out again and dried they are coated several times with preparation No. 3, followed by a coating of No. 4 and by re-immersion in hot water. They are next rinsed and treated several times more with liquid No. 3 applied by means of carded cotton wool, the liquid being progressively diluted with water. A little olive oil is then brushed over the goods, which are afterwards rinsed, placed in hot water (60° C.), and on removal rubbed well with woollen cloth, a little olive oil being used towards the last. Wrought or cast-iron goods treated in this manner present a handsome black, glossy appearance, especially when they have been finely polished.

Inoxidation Process for Cast Iron.

The cast-iron articles such as gasoliers, water pipes, ornamental pieces, balcony railings, saucepans and the like are laid on an iron slide about twelve feet long and heated to about 600° to 700° C. in a special furnace, an oxidising flame from a gas generator being employed for the first fifteen minutes, followed by a reducing flame for twenty minutes. When taken out and cooled the articles will exhibit a uniform slate-blue appearance and may be easily enamelled and decorated in any convenient way. When enamel is employed the usual pickling with acid is dispensed with, and the enamel consequently sticks on excellently. Many articles treated by this method have been exposed to the atmosphere out of doors for a couple of years without the slightest trace of rust being formed. It has been proved by numerous experiments that the tensile strength of iron is but slightly reduced by this inoxidation treatment, and in fact not more than usually results from heating to redness. With regard to the durability of the superficial layer under a high load, it has been ascertained that in the case of wrought iron chipping-off first occurs at an average tension of about two tons (2012 kilos.), whilst in cast iron it does not loosen even under a breaking load.

Iron Glaze ("Email de fer contre-oxyde").

This coating has been recommended as a cheap way of protecting iron pipes from all the influences to which they are subjected when laid underground. The glaze is compounded of 130 parts of powdered crystal glass, 20·5 parts of soda and 12 parts of boric acid. These ingredients are carefully mixed and fused in crucibles, then quenched in water, and pounded and ground to a very soft powder. The pipes or other iron articles to be glazed are first cleaned in the usual manner by pickling, then dried and covered with a very thin layer of gum-arabic (or other agglutinant), over which the pulverised glaze is afterwards strewn. After driving out all moisture by heating the articles to about 160° C. the temperature is raised to a dull red heat, which fuses the glaze. When the coating is uniform it adheres very strongly to the surface of the iron and resists all external influences. It is therefore particularly suitable for iron pipes that are required to possess special powers of resistance to external influences, but is too expensive for general use.

Honigmann's Ferrous Oxide Method.

To prepare a metallic surface the iron articles are first dipped in a bath of boiling caustic soda (b. p. 140° C.), and then immersed in a second bath containing caustic soda supersaturated with iron oxide (either rust or the precipitated oxide).

De Meritens' Anti-corrosive.

The process consists in immersing the goods in a bath of ordinary or distilled water heated to 70° to 80° C., where they are exposed to an electric current for one to two hours, whereby, through the action of the liberated oxygen, the surface of the metal becomes coated with iron proto-peroxide, which resists the action of the air and protects the underlying metal. The hydrogen collects at the other pole, *i.e.*, the sides of the vessel, or plates of carbon or metal suspended thereon. The current should not be any stronger than is necessary to decompose the water. The coating may be polished with cleaning brushes. For the treatment of steel ordinary service-pipe water will suffice; but with wrought or cast-iron articles the inventor's attempts were unsuccessful until he employed distilled water and allowed the current to act for a while with alternated poles.

Potassium Bichromate as an Anti-corrosive.

This salt is said to be a useful means of preserving iron from rusting. The metal is painted over with a concentrated solution, and the articles when dry are heated for a couple of minutes in a stove or over a wood charcoal fire, whereby the chromic acid is reduced. Heating must be continued until no yellow coloration is observed in the water employed for rinsing the goods. The requisite degree of heat is ascertained by a preliminary experiment; the employment of higher temperatures results in the production of a glossy black coating. A similar coating can also be obtained by proceeding in the above-described manner, but using a solution of 1 part of sal ammoniac and 20 parts of ferrous sulphate in 60 parts of water, in place of the potassium bichromate.

Method of Hardening Steel and Preventing Rust.

The finished and cleaned articles are heated to incipient redness, and, whilst in this condition, strewn with finely powdered caustic potash, whereupon they are reheated to the same degree, cooled down in water, and rubbed dry with a woollen rag. Being now finished they must neither be ground nor polished. The only difficulty is in selecting the right degree of heat to apply, in order to keep the metal from being overhardened. On the other hand, the advantages of the method are: the hardened surfaces offer very prolonged resistance to rust, whilst at the same time the handsome uniform light grey colour is relieving to the eye, and imparts to the articles an appearance of greater strength and sightliness than is the case with polished tools.

METHODS AND APPLIANCES FOR TESTING THE UTILITY OF ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.

(*Drawn up by the Swiss Institute for Testing the Strength of Materials.*)

1. *Determination of Colour.*—The shade of colour is examined after the laying on and drying of the paint.

2. *Chemical Composition.*—All that is required under this head is to ascertain the constituents of the paint: *viz.*, the pigment, vehicle, and any driers present. The quantitative examination of the pigment does not come within the scope of the work, but on the other hand the resistance to acids is determined, 2 per cent. hydrochloric acid or 2 per cent. sulphuric acid being used. Ten grams of the pigmentary matter of a paint, washed clean with carbon bi-sulphide, ether, alcohol, or water, are covered by 100 cc. of the dilute acid for three days, with occasional stirring, then filtered, and the total weight and qualitative composition of the dissolved matter determined.

3. *Alteration of Weight in Drying.*—To obtain information on this head equal weights of the paints are freely exposed in large basins to the air for seventy-two hours in succession at constant temperatures of 50° and 100° C. respectively.

4. *Amount of Paint used in Painting a given Area.*—To

ascertain this factor and the consequent relative cost of painting with different paints, cleaned and weighed plates of black and white metal one foot square are carefully painted with two coats, and weighed three days after each painting. The mean difference in weight obtained from six plates gives the average quantity of paint consumed, and from this the amount per square yard (or metre) can be calculated.

5. *Rate of Drying.*—Uniformly painted sheets of iron about twenty-four inches long by twelve inches wide are used. Notice is taken of the time at which a 9×1 inch strip of smooth writing paper, pressed evenly on the surface of the paint by the aid of a soft roller and immediately removed, ceases to show any stain. Furthermore, the time whereat the paint no longer sticks to the paper strip, or to the dry skin of the finger, is also noted.

6. *Adherence and Toughness of the Paint.*—Plates of black and white sheet iron and zinc, carefully cleaned, and painted without priming, were stored for three months in the physical laboratory of the institute, at a mean temperature of 16° C., and exposed to a uniform circulation of air. At the end of that time one half the plates were placed on end in a drying oven in such a manner as to allow the air to circulate between them, and were heated to a constant temperature of 50° C. for twenty-eight days. Each plate of both sets was then cut in two, and one half exposed fifty times to 16° to 23°(C.) of frost. Finally all were subjected to repeated folding tests, through 180°, until cracks were formed, steel bolts $\frac{2}{5}$ inch in diameter being used.

7. *Covering Power and Resistance to Acids.*—The covering power was tested by covering the surface of iron sheets and basins, either with two coats of the sample of paint under examination, or with two coats over a priming of red lead or iron oxide. The basins, after being left to dry

for three months, were filled with a 5 per cent. sulphuric acid, and examined for three days. In the case of acid-resisting paints of poor covering power the acid forces its way under the paint, liberates bubbles of hydrogen and loosens the paint locally in patches at the bottom of the basin, without, however (in the generality of cases), destroying the constitution of the paint mass itself. Attempts to determine the covering power by photometry failed to yield any satisfactory results.

Official Standard Specifications laid down for Ironwork Paints in Various Countries.

Recognising the importance attaching to the proper painting of iron structures, Provincial, Governmental, Railway, and Naval authorities, *inter alia*, in different countries have laid down certain specifications to be complied with by the paints supplied by their contractors. Whether, however, these conditions really meet the requirements of the case is more than doubtful when we find that one specification prescribes pickling with acid and painting with red lead, while another rejects these altogether, from which it is evident that no unanimity of opinion exists as to the usefulness or the reverse of these methods. In the same way, some enjoin the use of white lead or zinc white oil paint, whilst another prohibits them.

As a matter of general information, the author will now reproduce a series of requirements actually prescribed for paints to be used on iron structures, and will supplement the list by a project of his own for specifications of this kind, which he believes worthy the serious attention of all parties interested in the matter.

In Austria a number of highly divergent anti-corrosive paints are in use, both as regards priming and finishing coats for ironwork. The State and private Railway Companies, and the larger State and Local Authorities, have several specifications with which the bridge-building companies have to comply. In all cases where the use of white lead for priming is not expressly laid down iron oxide is used, zinc white, toned as required, being employed for the finishing coats.

The Imperial Royal Austrian State Railways prescribe the following conditions:—

"All bridges and lattice work, together with sills and fixing screws, shall receive a covering of oil paint, applied in three coatings, each of which must be thoroughly dry before the succeeding one is laid on. All painting in the open air must be postponed until the occurrence of a continuous spell of warm, dry weather. The surfaces to be painted must first be freed from all rust, roughness, and impurities by scouring with wire brushes, and well dried. Surfaces that will be inaccessible when the structure is put together must have been previously covered with a single, durable first coat of red-lead paint, and this paint must also be used for the first coat of all the visible parts of the structure when put together. A stiff brush must be used for laying on this first coat, in order to ensure the penetration of the paint into all irregularities, joints, and cracks. When the bridge is mounted in position, the first coat must be carefully gone over, and made good before the second coat is applied, and the joints, etc., are to be then cemented with a putty made of red lead and linseed oil.

"A thicker paint must be employed for the second and third coatings, the second being carefully gone over and repaired in all defective and weak places before applying the final coat, which latter must be darker in tone than the preceding one, in order that they may be readily distinguishable. If the ironwork is not properly covered by these three coats the contractor is liable to be called upon to apply a fourth free of charge.

"Wherever the wooden sills or sleepers come in contact with the ironwork the latter must be painted a third time before the former are put in position."

There is also an additional clause prohibiting thick paint, even where it is to last for seven or eight years and more, on the grounds that such paints form a tough, coherent skin which masks any underlying cracks or flaws in the material of the structure, and prevents their detection by the inspectors.

The specifications of the Kaiser Ferdinands Nordbahn Railway (Vienna) prescribes:—

"That all contact surfaces of parts of ironwork that are to be riveted together must have been first carefully cleaned from rust and dirt and painted with red lead.

"Bridges and lattice work, with all sills and fixing screws, shall be painted with oil paint.

"Every oil paint must be applied as four coats, none of which may be laid on until the preceding one is thoroughly dry.

"Painting in the open air must be delayed until a continuous spell of warm, dry weather sets in.

"The surfaces to be painted must be first carefully scoured with wire brushes to remove all rust, roughness and impurities, and well dried.

"Surfaces that will be inaccessible when the structure is put together must have been previously covered with a single, durable, first coat of red-lead paint, and this paint must also be used for all the visible parts of the structure when put together.

"The first coat must consist of a thin easy-flowing paint, laid on with a stiff brush, so as to penetrate in all irregularities, joints, and cracks, and when the bridge has been mounted in position a second coat of red-lead paint must be applied.

"When the first coat is thoroughly dry, cementing with a putty composed of red lead, or zinc grey, and linseed oil is proceeded with.

"For the third and final coats a thicker paint, of pure white lead, is to be used, this being toned to grey by the addition of a little black. Before painting with the final coat, the preceding one must be gone over carefully, and all deficiencies and weak places made good. To enable them to be distinguished, the fourth coat must be darker in colour than the third. Should the fourth coat afford insufficient covering to the structure, the contractor may be called upon to provide another coat of paint free of charge.

"All parts of the ironwork that will come in contact with wooden sills or sleepers must have received a fourth coat of paint before the latter are put in position."

A special report with regard to paint for iron bridges, issued by the Building Department of the Municipality of Vienna, states :—

1. To preserve iron bridges either a twofold coating with platinum- or silicate paint is required ; or else a paint made of chemically pure white lead, topping a first coat of red-lead paint. No other addition to the powdered dry metallic pigment than pure unadulterated linseed varnish should be permitted.

2. If tendered at equal prices the platinum- or silicate paints should be accepted in preference to white-lead paint. A single first coating with red lead is a usual preliminary condition to painting with ordinary paints, but in the case of platinum- or silicate paints is radically at variance with the nature of these paints, and should therefore be omitted.

In the special conditions laid down by the Provincial

Government of Lower Austria with regard to the erection of the State road bridges over the Danube at Vienna the question of paint is dealt with as follows :—

The paint must consist of mineral pigments and linseed oil of best quality, finely and smoothly ground, and properly made ; red lead being used for the first coating, and the grey pigments, white lead or zinc white, with an addition of black or zinc dust, for the final coats.

The authorities of the Prussian State Railways prescribe the following conditions for paints in their special contract specifications for the supply of large mounted iron structures :—

As soon as the materials have been made ready, by trimming the edges, and making the rivet- and screw holes, but before the parts are put together or painted, all the iron must be carefully cleaned from rust, dirt, dust, and scale, either by dry scouring with brushes, etc., or by pickling with dilute hydrochloric acid, etc., and at once coated with a layer of paint composed of hot linseed varnish with 10 per cent. of zinc white. If pickling has been performed, the adherent acid must be removed by dipping the parts in lime water, followed by rinsing in clean water and heating to 100° C. in boiling water. Then, after all the adherent water has evaporated, they must be provided with a thick coating of paint consisting of 90 per cent. of good thin, quick-drying linseed varnish, free from water or acid, and 10 per cent. of zinc white, and put away to dry in covered rooms.

After the operation of cleaning and painting, the goods must be offered to the officials for inspection.

Immediately before riveting, the parts to be joined must be cleaned at the contact surfaces, and then painted with red lead and attached so tightly together that they cannot shift while being riveted. If any parts warp or distort in riveting, the connections must be loosened, and after the pieces have been officially inspected must be carefully put right, or replaced by new ones.

Paint.

1. *In the Workshops.*—Until officially inspected and tested the various separate or mounted parts of the structure may not be painted with anything more than the linseed varnish paint. As soon as the inspection is over, the various pieces must be carefully cleaned, the joints of contact surfaces cemented with a stiff putty made of white lead and linseed oil, and the whole painted with red-lead paint.

The first coat must be laid on thin and be allowed to dry thoroughly.

2. *When mounted*, all the defective parts of the paint applied in the workshops must be made good, and the places where rivets have been driven during mounting must be gone over. After cementing all the joints of contact surfaces the whole of the ironwork must receive another coat of pure red-lead paint, followed by at least two coats of good covering oil paint of the colour prescribed by the railway authorities. All interstitial spaces in which water is likely to accumulate must be properly cemented with asphalt putty and painted smoothly. In the case of galvanised parts the first coating of red-lead paint is omitted.

All surfaces coming in contact with earth, stone, sand, mortar or masonry must be coated with warmed wood tar of good quality instead of with oil paint.

In Russia iron oxide is almost exclusively employed for the preliminary coating of iron structures, and, so it is averred, with good results, though a few of the railways use red lead. White lead, suitably shaded, forms the principal covering paint, especially for bridges over railways.

At the present time a paint termed "Iron Protector" is being recommended for the preservation of iron against rusting. This preparation appears to be a kind of armour-scale ("Panzerschuppen") paint with (chiefly) earthy pigments.

The Government of the Netherlands prescribes the following conditions with regard to the painting of iron structures:—

The iron is dipped for twelve hours in a bath consisting of 15 per cent. hydrochloric acid diluted to 6° with water, after which it is fished out with iron hooks or cranes, washed thoroughly with water by scrubbing and then worked about in a bath of lime water. After this it is swilled and freed from rust, to be next immersed in boiling water in a long pan, where it is kept until quite hot, and on removal is painted all over with a drying oil.

Following this treatment the metal is shaped and finally coated with two layers of minium—this can only mean lead minium (red lead), as the specification has been in force a long time. However, according to Kloes, iron oxide has now to a large extent replaced true minium for iron structures, the latter being only rarely met with on bridges, roofs and the like.

The regulations laid down by the Eastern Railway of France (*Chemin de fer de l'Est*) for the painting of ironwork are:—

After being weighed all iron parts are to be cleaned with metal brushes and painted with minium, this coating being touched up after the parts are mounted in position.

The minium paint must consist solely of red lead ground with linseed oil and turpentine substance (essence or spirit is probably meant); the latter materials must be fresh. During the application of the first coating the railway officials will take samples of the materials and subject them to chemical examination. Should the red lead prove to contain more than 2 per cent. of impurities, or extraneous admixtures be detected in the linseed oil or turpentine, the paint will be rejected and must be taken away and replaced by the contractor, even when the results of the analysis are not made known until after the ironwork has been set up in position.

The Italian Mediterranean Railway Company prescribes the following standards for iron paints:—

After the provisional acceptance and weighing of the iron materials all the parts must be carefully cleaned from dirt and oxide, and painted with red lead mixed with pure boiled linseed oil to which 3 per cent. of litharge has been added.

No two pieces may be riveted together until the contact surfaces have been coated with the above paint. All the parts must be cleaned anew before and after mounting and the first coating of red-lead paint touched up, all the interstitial spaces at joints being filled up with minium. Thereupon two coats of white-lead (lead carbonate) paint, prepared in the same way as the preceding paint, must be laid on, the colouring matter for same being determined by the railway authorities.

Each coat of paint must be allowed to dry thoroughly before the next one is applied, and care should be taken to carry on the work under favourable atmospheric conditions. Before laying on the first coat the surface of the iron must be well cleaned, scraped, and, if necessary, scoured with pumice stone. The white lead used must be pure, and therefore free from any admixture of lime, baryta, zinc white, etc.

Section 7 of the normal specifications, for the supply of ironwork for bridges and elevated structures, drawn up by the United Association of German Architects and Engineers, deals with—

Cleaning and Painting.—Before putting together, the various parts must be freed from all impurities, rust and scale, the method of cleaning to be stated by the contractors when tendering, except where any particular method is prescribed by the special conditions, or the contractor desires to deviate from the latter. If chemical means are resorted to for this cleaning, the contractor is liable for any subsequent rusting due to carelessness in removing the acid. The parts (plates, rods, etc.) chemically cleaned must be painted over with thin, quick-drying linseed varnish whilst hot, immediately after cleaning, and kept under cover until the varnish is sufficiently dry. Before the covering paint is applied, notification must be given to the consumer so that he may first examine the ironwork; and it is only after the treatment necessitated by this preliminary acceptance of the goods, and repairing the defects in the coat of varnish, that the first coat of the particular paint stipulated in the contract may be laid on. All surfaces that are to be covered up by others must be painted before the parts are put together.

In the case of all interstitial spaces where water is liable to accumulate, the painting must be very carefully performed, and provision made for the draining away of the water through holes bored for the purpose. If the latter is impracticable, the spaces must be filled up as well as possible with asphalt putty, or some other suitable material.

After the structure is mounted, the heads of all rivets put in during that operation must be freed from rust and primed, and all crevices filled up with putty. Unless specially mentioned in the contract, no other painting need be done.

The Italian Ministry of Public Works has laid down the following conditions regulating the taking over of iron railway bridges from the contractors:—

The contractor must not employ for the paint any materials that have been adulterated or do not comply with the terms of the contract. The pigments must be well ground on the stone, with an addition of linseed oil, the drying of which may be facilitated by an admixture of 3 per cent. of litharge to the warm oil. A further addition of linseed oil and turpentine, in equal parts, is then made to the paint.

The linseed oil must be well refined, clear, inodorous, and of bitter taste; and the white lead (lead carbonate) must not contain any admixture of lime or baryta.

Painting the Metal.

Parts of a structure should never be finally joined up without the contact surfaces having been properly painted with red-lead paint.

The first coating of red lead should be applied in the workshops, after the surfaces have been properly cleansed, scraped, and, if necessary, scoured with pumice, but not until the ironwork has been conditionally passed by the examining official. When the parts have reached the place where they are to be mounted, they must be carefully scraped clean of rust and dirt, especially those surfaces that are to come in contact with others, and the existing first coat of paint must be completely repaired.

The officials may order this first coating to be scraped off altogether, so that they may, on occasion, convince themselves of the quality of the material used in the structure. In such cases the said coat must be carefully renewed.

When the parts are mounted, a second coating with red lead must be applied on all the outer surfaces of the structure, not excluding those that cannot be seen from the outside.

In addition to these two coats, three others must be laid on after the structure is completed, white-lead paint being used along with the necessary toning pigments to produce the required shade.

When, in spite of all precautions, crevices are left between riveted parts, they must be filled up with red lead, after the first coat of white paint, to prevent the intrusion of moisture and consequent oxidation. Each coat of paint must be perfectly dry before the next one is applied. The officials are empowered to fix a period within which the last three coats must be put on.

In the Swiss Railways the following regulations exist for the cleaning and painting of iron structures :—

The surface of the iron must be cleaned by dry scouring with selected sharp fragments of coke, or pickling with dilute (10 per cent.) hydrochloric acid, followed by neutralising with milk of lime and rinsing clean with boiling water. The cleaned parts must then be immediately painted in the workshop with hot linseed oil and afterwards with white-lead paint. Surfaces that will be covered up by others must have a double coat of white-lead paint over the varnish.

No parts must be sent from the shops to destination until the entire surfaces have been carefully primed and the paint has thoroughly dried. After the erection of the structure all fresh rivet heads must be primed, and the first coating must be repaired or renewed wherever defective or injured.

Whether, and to what extent, any further painting is to be done by the contractor depends on the terms of the contract. In any case such work must not be commenced until the first coat is perfectly dry and permission has been given to proceed.

The Swiss North-Eastern Railway has recently discarded red-lead paint in favour of armour-scale (" Panzerschuppen ") paint or Bessemer paint. The following conditions are imposed :—

(a) *Varnish.*

1. Only well-stored, acid-free linseed oil may be used in making the varnish.

2. The density of the varnish must not be below 0·93.

3. When dissolved to an alcoholic soap solution the varnish must not exhibit a milky appearance on the addition of water, though opalescence is permissible.

4. When spread out on glass plates the varnish must dry within twenty-four hours.

(b) *Paint Mass.*

1. Colour: dark grey.

2. When laid on naked or primed iron the paint must be readily distributable, cover well, be tough and remain elastic, without peeling.

3. On being spread out thin the paint must dry within twenty-four hours.

4. The paint mass must be acid-proof, and free from any constituents liable to become soluble in water under the action of sulphuric acid or atmospheric carbon dioxide.

5. No action should be detectable after forty-eight hours' exposure to 5 per cent. sulphuric acid, the paint being applied as a double coat on an unprimed iron basin.

The following general conditions for painting on iron were drawn up by Joan du Kloes (architect):—

All iron parts should, as soon as tested, be painted over with red-lead paint, the exposed portions receiving two coats, whilst for those forming the inner part of the structure one will suffice. The selection of the colour is a question for the customer.

Wherever possible the red lead coating should be applied before any rust has formed, and in no case should the painting begin until all rust has been removed, either by scouring with sandstone or pickling by six to twelve hours' immersion in a bath of 6° Bé. hydrochloric acid; after scrubbing with stiff brushes, plunging in a bath of lime water, and swilling with boiling water, the iron is dried as quickly as possible and painted. The lime water ought to be renewed whenever traces of free acid are detected by test-paper. Du Kloes gives as his reasons for leaving the choice of cleaning methods open, that opinions are divided, and that he finds sometimes one plan is best, sometimes the other. For example, a rolled **T**-girder, when smooth, can be easily scoured with a bit of sandstone, and in this case it is therefore advisable to merely scour and brush, since this plan saves the trouble and care attendant on the wet method. On the other hand, for girders made by riveting iron plates and angle-irons, mechanical cleaning is beset with difficulties, it being impossible to scour the rivet heads and adjacent surfaces sufficiently clean, and in such event, he thinks, pickling is indispensable. The painting of large iron articles before rust has had time to form, *i.e.*, whilst the surface of the iron still remains perfectly blue, is in reality seldom performed, and as a matter of fact would be useless, on account of the various operations of boring, blocking, straightening, riveting, to which the parts have to be subjected. Provided pickling be carried out with care and with proper appliances, the method is less tedious than scouring. The removal of the rust is based less upon actual solution or dissociation than on the liberation of hydrogen; and the chief point is to ensure contact of the acid, lime water, and rinsing water with the whole of the rust particles. Furthermore, the scrubbing must be done vigorously and not merely in a perfunctory manner, and by this means, coupled with a good swilling with hot water, all residual traces of acid, lime water, dissolved rust, and any chloride of lime present must be got rid of. If the water is used very hot the iron will dry of itself on being taken out of the bath, and can then be painted forthwith. This is the only reason for employing heat in the process.

The author has always limited himself to red lead, and considers it advisable to adhere to this course for the first coating. In view of Mulder's researches, he would not offer the slightest objection to the substitution of such pulverulent bodies as iron oxide, powdered roofing tiles, and so forth in the preparation of the topping paint.

For the two first coats of paint white lead should not be used, because of the traces of acetic acid that are developed when this pigment is boiled with linseed oil, and which are likely to prove injurious; but as an external covering there is no objection to white lead being used. Of course, in view of the shades of colour required, it is not always possible to use red lead; and, similarly, it is not always feasible to confine the varnish to boiled linseed alone, because under certain circumstances raw oil must be employed. For example, the German Government specifications prescribe the use of raw and boiled linseed oil, half and half, for mixing with the pigmentary powder. Du Kloes does not assume this proportion to be always the most favourable one; in fact, he inclines to the view that boiled oil should predominate, raw oil being only added to make the paint work more easily and prevent it drying too quickly when exposed to a hot sun.

The author's propositions for carrying out the painting of ironwork are as follow :—

1. Iron should not be painted until perfectly free from rust, the method of cleaning—whether mechanically, by scouring with pumice, coke, or wire brushes; or chemically, by pickling—being dependent on the shape of the metallic object or parts. Wherever possible, pickling should be avoided; but, if the shape of the ironwork precludes other methods, then care should be taken to keep the alkali bath up to a proper degree of strength, and to thoroughly dry the metal at a high temperature after cleansing with water.

2. The iron must be perfectly dry before painting is begun; a rule to be observed at all stages of the operation.

3. The first coating for iron should consist of hot linseed varnish, very carefully applied, so that all parts are covered. On this coating of varnish, which will afford sufficient protection against rust, is applied a first coat of paint composed of pure red lead in good linseed varnish, after the parts of the structure have been put together, all contact surfaces, bored holes, rivet heads and bolts having been painted beforehand.

4. Ground oil paints should alone be used, and these should be applied by the aid of suitable brushes; merely mixing up the pigment and varnish just before use, and without grinding, should not be permitted. Furthermore, the painting must be done by skilled workmen and not by day labourers.

5. After priming, three coats of paint should be laid on at intervals of not less than a week, it being essential that one coat of paint should be quite dry before the next one is applied.

6. After the first coating with red-lead paint all fissures, holes, flaws, etc., must be filled up with red lead and linseed oil putty, the subsequent painting being deferred till the putty has thoroughly hardened.

7. The paint must be easy working, cover well, be free of all turpentine, benzine, or other hydrocarbon diluents, and of all liquid driers, and must dry rain-proof within twelve hours.

8. The constituents of the paint must fulfil the conditions of—(1) *Pigment:* inert and requiring a large proportion of linseed varnish to become workable; (2) *Varnish:* pure linseed varnish of good quality, free from extraneous admixtures.

FINIS.

INDEX.

This Catalogue cancels all former editions.

The Publishers seek to issue thoroughly helpful works. These books in every instance will, they believe, be found of good value. Employers will do well to place copies of these books in the hands of the bright and promising young men in their employ, in order the better to equip them to become increasingly useful as employees. A workman who uses his brains must be preferable to one who does not *think* about his work. Brains require stimulus. These books provide that stimulus.

A Catalogue

OF

Special Technical Works

FOR

MANUFACTURERS, PROFESSIONAL MEN, STUDENTS, COLLEGES AND TECHNICAL SCHOOLS

BY EXPERT WRITERS

FOR THE

OIL, PAINT, COLOUR, VARNISH, SOAP, CHEMICAL, TEXTILE, LEATHER, PAPER, COLLIERY, POTTERY, GLASS, PLUMBING AND DECORATING TRADES AND SCIENTIFIC PROFESSIONS.

PUBLISHED BY

SCOTT, GREENWOOD & CO.,

TECHNICAL LITERATURE AND TRADE JOURNAL EXPERTS,

19 LUDGATE HILL, LONDON, E.C.

Tel. Address: "PRINTERIES, LONDON". **Tel. No. 5403, Bank**

N.B.—*Full Particulars of Contents of any of the following books sent post free on application.*

Messrs. Scott, Greenwood & Co. are open to make offers for the publication of technical works.

Books on Oils, Soaps, Colours, Glue, Varnishes, etc.

THE PRACTICAL COMPOUNDING OF OILS, TALLOW AND GREASE FOR LUBRICATION, ETC.

By AN EXPERT OIL REFINER. 100 pp. 1898. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **Introductory Remarks** on the General Nomenclature of Oils, Tallow and Greases suitable for Lubrication.—II., **Hyrocarbon Oils.**—III., **Animal and Fish Oils.**—IV., **Compound Oils.**—V., **Vegetable Oils.**—VI., **Lamp Oils.**—VII., **Engine Tallow, Solidified Oils and Petroleum Jelly.**—VIII., **Machinery Greases: Loco and Anti-friction.**—IX., **Clarifying and Utilisation of Waste Fats, Oils, Tank Bottoms, Drainings of Barrels and Drums, Pickings Up, Dregs, etc.**—X., **The Fixing and Cleaning of Oil Tanks, etc.**—**Appendix and General Information.**

Press Opinions.

"This work is written from the standpoint of the oil trade, but its perusal will be found very useful by users of machinery and all who have to do with lubricants in any way."—*Colliery Guardian.*

"The properties of the different grades of mineral oil and of the animal and vegetable non-drying oils are carefully described, and the author justly insists that the peculiarities of the machinery on which the lubricants are to be employed must be considered almost before everything else. . . . The chapters on grease and solidified oils, etc., are excellent."—*The Ironmonger.*

"In its ninety-six pages this little work contains a wealth of information; it is written without waste of words on theoretical matters, and contains numerous formulas for a great variety of compounds for the most varied lubricants. In addition there are many practical hints of use in the factory in general, such as of tanks, etc., and altogether the book is worth several times its price in any factory of these compounds."—*American Soap Journal.*

TECHNOLOGY OF PETROLEUM. [*In the Press.*

SOAPS. A Practical Manual of the Manufacture of Domestic, Toilet and other Soaps.

By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. Illustrated with Sixty-six Engravings. 390 pp. 1898. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **Introductory.**—II., **Soap-maker's Alkalies.**—III., **Soap Fats and Oils.**—IV., **Perfumes.**—V., **Water as a Soap Material.**—VI., **Soap Machinery.**—VII., **Technology of Soap-making.**—VIII., **Glycerine in Soap Lyes.**—IX., **Laying out a Soap Factory.**—X., **Soap Analysis.**—**Appendices.**

Press Opinions.

"We think it is the most practical book on these subjects that has come to us from England so far."—*American Soap Journal.*

"Much useful information is conveyed in a convenient and trustworthy manner which will appeal to practical soap-makers."—*Chemical Trade Journal.*

"Works that deal with manufacturing processes, and applied chemistry in particular, are always welcome. Especially is this the case when the material presented is so up-to-date as we find it here."—*Bradford Observer.*

"The best and most reliable methods of analysis are fully discussed, and form a valuable source of reference to any works' chemist. . . . Our verdict is a capitally produced book, and one that is badly needed."—*Birmingham Post.*

"This is a better book on soap-manufacture than any of the same size which have been published for some time. It reads like the 'real thing,' and gives a very complete account of the technique of soap-making, especially of the machinery employed, the different methods and even the arrangement of soap factories. . . . The book is produced well, and is splendidly illustrated."—*Chemist and Druggist.*

ANIMAL FATS AND OILS: Their Practical Production, Purification and Uses for a great Variety of Purposes. Their Properties, Falsification and Examination. A Handbook for Manufacturers of Oil and Fat Products, Soap and Candle Makers, Agriculturists, Tanners, Margarine Manufacturers, etc., etc. By LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. With Sixty-two Illustrations. 240 pp. 1898. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Introduction. Occurrence, Origin, Properties and Chemical Constitution of Animal Fats. Preparation of Animal Fats and Oils. Machinery. Tallow-melting Plant. Extraction Plant. Presses. Filtering Apparatus. Butter: Raw Material and Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Beef Lard or Remelted Butter, Testing. Candle-fish Oil. Mutton-Tallow. Hare Fat. Goose Fat. Neatsfoot Oil. Bone Fat: Bone Boiling, Steaming Bones, Extraction, Refining. Bone Oil. Artificial Butter: Oleomargarine, Margarine Manufacture in France, Grasso's Process, "Kaiser's Butter," Jahr & Münzberg's Method, Filbert's Process, Winter's Method. Human Fat. Horse Fat. Beef Marrow. Turtle Oil. Hog's Lard: Raw Material, Preparation, Properties, Adulterations, Examination. Lard Oil. Fish Oils. Liver Oils. Artificial Train Oil. Wool Fat: Properties, Purified Wool Fat. Spermaceti: Examination of Fats and Oils in General.

Press Opinions.

"The descriptions of technical processes are clear, and the book is well illustrated and should prove useful."—*Manchester Guardian.*

"It is a valuable work, not only for the student, but also for the practical manufacturer of oil and fat products."—*Journal of the American Chemical Society.*

"The work is very fully illustrated, and the style throughout is in strong contrast to that employed in many such treatises, being simple and clear."—*Shoe and Leather Record.*

"An important handbook for the 'fat industry,' now a large one. The explanation of the most scientific processes of production lose nothing of their clearness in the translation."—*Newcastle Chronicle.*

"The latest and most improved forms of machinery are in all cases indicated, and the many advances which have been made during the past years in the methods of producing the more common animal fats—lard, tallow and butter—receive due attention."—*Glasgow Herald.*

VEGETABLE FATS AND OILS: Their Practical Preparation, Purification and Employment for Various Purposes, their Properties, Adulteration and Examination. A Handbook for Oil Manufacturers and Refiners, Candle, Soap and Lubricating Oil Makers, and the Oil and Fat Industry in General. Translated from the German of LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. With Ninety-four Illustrations. 320 pp. 1897. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Statistical Data. General Properties of the Vegetable Fats and Oils. Estimation of the Amount of Oil in Seeds. Table of Vegetable Fats and Oils, with French and German Nomenclature, Source and Origin and Percentage of Fat in the Plants from which they are Derived. The Preparation of Vegetable Fats and Oils: Storing Oil Seeds; Cleaning the Seed. Apparatus for Grinding Oil Seeds and Fruits. Installation of Oil and Fat Works. Extraction Method of Obtaining Oils and Fats. Oil Extraction Installations. Press Moulds. Non-drying Vegetable Oils. Vegetable drying Oils. Solid Vegetable Fats. Fruits Yielding Oils and Fats. Wool-softening Oils. Soluble Oils. Treatment of the Oil after Leaving the Press Improved Methods of Refining with Sulphuric Acid and Zinc Oxide or Lead Oxide. Refining with Caustic Alkalies, Ammonia, Carbonates of the Alkalies, Lime. Bleaching Fats and Oils. Practical Experiments on the Treatment of Oils with regard to Refining and Bleaching. Testing Oils and Fats.

Press Opinions.

"Concerning that and all else within the wide and comprehensive connection involved, this book must be invaluable to every one directly or indirectly interested in the matters it treats of."—*Commerce.*

"The proprietors of the *Oil and Colourman's Journal* have not only placed a valuable and highly interesting book of reference in the hands of the fats and oils industry in general, but have rendered no slight service to experimental and manufacturing chemists."—*Manufacturing Chemist.*

IRON-CORROSION, ANTI-FOULING AND ANTI-CORROSIVE PAINTS.

By LOUIS EDGAR ANDÉS. Sixty-two Illustrations. 275 pp. Translated from the German. 1900. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Ironrust and its Formation—Protection from Rusting by Paint—Grounding the Iron with Linseed Oil, etc.—Testing Paints—Use of Tar for Painting on Iron—Anti-corrosive Paints—Linseed Varnish—Chinese Wood Oil—Lead Pigments—Iron Pigments—Artificial Iron Oxides—Carbon—Preparation of Anti-corrosive Paints—Results of Examination of Several Anti-corrosive Paints—Paints for Ship's Bottoms—Anti-fouling Compositions—Various Anti-corrosive and Ship's Paints—Official Standard Specifications for Ironwork Paints—Index.

Press Opinions.

"This is a very valuable book, translated from the German, discussing in detail anti-fouling and anti-corrosive paints."—*British Mercury.*

"Will be of great service to paint manufacturers, engineering contractors, ironfounders, shipbuilders and others."—*Engineer and Iron Trades Advertiser.*

"The book before us deals with the subject in a manner at once practical and scientific, and is well worthy of the attention of all builders, architects and engineers."—*The Builder.*

"The book is very readable and full of valuable information, and bearing in mind the importance of the subject treated, it is one which engineers will be well advised to procure at an early date."—*Railway Engineer.*

"The author goes fully into his subject, and the translator has been successful in reproducing in another language what he has to say. There are given in the text numerous illustrations of the rusting of iron, prepared in the course of a series of personal experiments on the formation of rust."—*Journal of Gas Lighting.*

"This work is a very elaborate and useful record of the various phenomena in connection with the corrosion of iron and its protection against corrosion. . . . The book is an exceedingly useful record of what has been done in connection with iron preservation, and will undoubtedly prove to be of much value to railway engineers, shipowners, etc."—*Fairplay.*

"Herr Andés' book, written purely from a scientific standpoint, will be particularly useful to iron manufacturers, shipbuilders and shipowners. . . . The book is beautifully printed on good paper, and its appearance does credit to the publishers; the work of translation has been remarkably well done, the language bearing none of those irritating traces of Teutonism which disfigure so many English versions of German technical works."—*The Ironmonger.*

"This knowledge is conveyed with characteristic German thoroughness in this useful work of Herr Andés, which loses nothing of clearness in Mr. Salter's excellent translation. The causes of rust formation are examined, the proper methods of cleansing the ironwork detailed, and the constitution and application of suitable preventative coverings explained. . . . The book is a welcome contribution to technological literature, and will be found worthy of the careful study of all who are professionally engaged in the arrangement or superintendence of the class of work dealt with."—*Western Daily Mercury.*

"The author explains the nature of rust and its formation, and the text is illustrated from about fifty photographs. An immense amount of carefully arranged information follows as to the best methods of applying anti-corrosive substances and the various pigments most efficacious for use under all circumstances. The author has evidently thoroughly investigated and mastered the subject of iron corrosion, its cause and its prevention; and we regard his book as of the greatest importance to bridge-builders and makers and users of structural iron and steel. The book is illustrated throughout and is admirably indexed and arranged."—*Iron and Steel Trades Journal.*

"It is of the utmost importance to have reliable information on the various so-called infallible anti-corrosive paints which flood the market, and the large experience which evidently had been gained by the author in relation to the subject enables him to present in the work under notice an important contribution towards the solution of the problem involved, which is bound to prove extremely serviceable not only to paint manufacturers, but to engineers, contractors, ironfounders, shipbuilders and others. The subject is thoroughly dealt with in all its various phases, and the vast fund of information afforded not only regarding rust formation and its prevention, but in reference to paints, varnishes, oils and pigments generally, should prove very valuable to the large class interested, while additional importance is given to the book by the numerous illustrations which were prepared by the author in the course of a series of personal experiments on the formation of rust."—*Builders' Reporter.*

PRACTICAL PAINT GRINDING.

[*In the Press.*

SULPHATES OF ALUMINIUM AND IRON AND ALUM.

By Lucien Geschwind. Translated from the French. A Theoretical Study of Aluminium and Iron, their Manufacture, Industrial Applications, Analysis, Proportions and Methods of Analysis. About 400 pp. 195 Illustrations. Royal 8vo. [*In the Press.*

DICTIONARY OF RAW PRODUCTS USED IN THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINTS, COLOURS, VARNISHES, ETC. [*In the Press.*

LUBRICATING OILS, FATS AND GREASES: Their Origin, Preparation, Properties, Uses and Analyses. A Handbook for Oil Manufacturers, Refiners and Merchants, and the Oil and Fat Industry in General. By George H. Hurst, F.C.S. Sixty-five Illustrations. 313 pp. 1896. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **Introductory.** Oils and Fats, Fatty Oils and Fats, Hydrocarbon Oils, Uses of Oils.—II., **Hydrocarbon Oils.** Distillation, Simple Distillation, Destructive Distillation, Products of Distillation, Hydrocarbons, Paraffins, Olefins, Napthenes.—III., **Scotch Shale Oils.** Scotch Shales, Distillation of Scotch Oils, Shale Retorts, Products of Distilling Shales, Separating Products, Treating Crude Shale Oil, Refining Shale Oil, Shale Oil Stills, Shale Naphtha Burning Oils, Lubricating Oils, Wax.—IV., **Petroleum.** Occurrence, Geology, Origin, Composition, Extraction, Refining, Petroleum Stills, Petroleum Products, Cylinder Oils, Russian Petroleum, Deblooming Mineral Oils.—V., **Vegetable and Animal Oils.** Introduction, Chemical Composition of Oils and Fats, Fatty Acids, Glycerine, Extraction of Animal and Vegetable Fats and Oils, Animal Oils, Vegetable Oils, Rendering, Pressing, Refining, Bleaching, Tallow, Tallow Oil, Lard Oil, Neatsfoot Oil, Palm Oil, Palm Nut Oil, Cocoanut Oil, Castor Oil, Olive Oil, Rape and Colza Oils, Arachis Oil, Niger Seed Oil, Sperm Oils, Whale Oil, Seal Oil, Brown Oils, Lardine, Thickened Rape Oil.—VI., **Testing and Adulteration of Oils.** Specific Gravity, Alkali Tests, Sulphuric Acid Tests, Free Acids in Oils, Viscosity Tests, Flash and Fire Tests, Evaporation Tests, Iodine and Bromide Tests, Elaidin Test, Melting Point of Fat, Testing Machines.—VII., **Lubricating Greases.** Rosin Oil, Anthracene Oil, Making Greases, Testing and Analysis of Greases.—VIII., **Lubrication.** Friction and Lubrication, Lubricant, Lubrication of Ordinary Machinery, Spontaneous Combustion of Oils, Stainless Oils, Lubrication of Engine Cylinders, Cylinder Oils.—**Appendices.** A. Table of Baume's Hydrometer—B. Table of Thermometric Degrees—C. Table of Specific Gravities of Oils—**Index.**

Press Opinions.

"The book is well printed, and is a credit alike to author, printer and publisher."—*Textile Mercury.*

"It will be a valuable addition to the technical library of every steam user's establishment."—*Machinery Market.*

"Mr. Hurst has in this work supplied a practical treatise which should prove of especial value to oil dealers, and also, though in a less degree, to oil users."—*Textile Manufacturer.*

"This is a clear and concise treatment of the method of manufacturing and refining lubricating oils. . . . The book is one which is well worthy the attention of readers who are users of oil."—*Textile Recorder.*

"We have no hesitation in saying that in our opinion this book ought to be very useful to all those who are interested in oils, whether as manufacturers or users of lubricants, or to those chemists or engineers whose duty it may be to report upon the suitability of the same for any particular class of work."—*Engineer.*

"The author is widely known and highly respected as an authority on the chemistry of oils and the technics of lubrication, and it is safe to say that no work of similar interest or equal value to the general oil-selling and consuming public has heretofore appeared in the English language."—*Drugs, Oils and Paints,* U.S.A.

"This valuable and useful work, which is both scientific and practical, has been written with a view of supplying those who deal in and use oils, etc., for the purpose of lubrication with some information respecting the special properties of the various products which cause these various oils to be of value as lubricants."—*Industries and Iron.*

"A mere glance at the table of contents is sufficient to show how various are the conditions to which these materials have to be applied, how much knowledge is required for the selection of the right kind for each particular purpose, and how by processes of mixture or manufacture the requisite qualities are obtained in each case."—*Manchester Guardian.*

THE MANUFACTURE OF VARNISHES, OIL REFINING AND BOILING, AND KINDRED INDUSTRIES. Describing the Manufacture of Spirit Varnishes and Oil Varnishes; Raw Materials: Resins, Solvents and Colouring Principles; Drying Oils: their Properties, Applications and Preparation by both Hot and Cold Processes; Manufacture, Employment and Testing of Different Varnishes. Translated from the French of ACH. LIVACHE, Ingénieur Civil des Mines. Greatly Extended and Adapted to English Practice, with numerous Original Recipes. By JOHN GEDDES MCINTOSH, Lecturer on Oils, Colours and Varnishes, Regent Street Polytechnic. Twenty-seven Illustrations. 400 pp. 1899. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

I. Resins: Gum Resins, Oleo Resins and Balsams, Commercial Varieties, Source, Collection, Characteristics, Chemical Properties, Physical Properties, Hardness, Adulterations Appropriate Solvents, Special Treatment, Special Use.—II. Solvents: Natural, Artificial, Manufacture, Storage, Special Use.—III. Colouring: Principles, (1) Vegetable, (2) Coal Tar, (3) Coloured Resinates, (4) Coloured Oleates and Linoleates.—Gum Running: Furnaces, Bridges, Flues, Chimney Shafts, Melting Pots, Condensers, Boiling or Mixing Pans, Copper Vessels, Iron Vessels (Cast), Iron Vessels (Wrought), Iron Vessels (Silvered), Iron Vessels (Enamelled), Steam Superheated Plant, Hot-air Plant.—Spirit Varnish Manufacture: Cold Solution Plant, Mechanical Agitators, Hot Solution Plant, Jacketted Pans, Mechanical Agitators, Clarification and Filtration, Bleaching Plant, Storage Plant.—Manufacture, Characteristics and Uses of the Spirit Varnishes yielded by: Amber, Copal, Dammar, Shellac, Mastic, Sandarac, Rosin, Asphalt, India Rubber, Gutta Percha, Collodion, Celluloid, Resinates, Oleates.—Manufacture of Varnish Stains.—Manufacture of Lacquers.—Manufacture of Spirit Enamels.—Analysis of Spirit Varnishes.—Physical and Chemical Constants of Resins. —Table of Solubility of Resins in different Menstrua.—Systematic qualitative Analysis of Resins, Hirschop's tables.—Drying Oils: Oil Crushing Plant, Oil Extraction Plant, Individual Oils, Special Treatment of Linseed Oil, Poppyseed Oil, Walnut Oil, Hempseed Oil, Llamantia Oil, Japanese Wood Oil, Gurjun Balsam, Climatic Influence on Seed and Oil.—Oil Refining Processes, Thenard's, Liebig's, Filtration, Storage, Old Tanked Oil.—Oil Boiling: Fire Boiling Plant, Steam Boiling Plant, Hot-Air Plant, Air Pumps, Mechanical Agitators, Vincent's Process, Hadfield's Patent, Storer's Patent, Walton's Processes, Continental Processes, Pale Boiled Oil, Double Boiled Oil, Hartley and Blenkinsop's Process.—Driers: Manufacture, Special Individual Use of (1) Litharge, (2) Sugar of Lead, (3) Red Lead, (4) Lead Borate, (5) Lead Linoleate, (6) Lead Resinate, (7) Black Oxide of Manganese, (8) Manganese Acetate, (9) Manganese Borate, (10) Manganese Resinate, (11) Manganese Linoleate, Mixed Resinates and Linoleates, Manganese and Lead, Zinc Sulphate, Terebine, Liquid Driers.—Solidified Boiled Oil.—Manufacture of Linoleum.—Manufacture of India Rubber Substitutes.—Printing Ink Manufacture.—Lithographic Ink Manufacture.—Manufacture of Oil Varnishes.—Running and Special Treatment of Amber, Copal, Kauri, Manilla.—Addition of Oil to Resin.—Addition of Resin to Oil.—Mixed Processes.—Solution in Cold of previously Fused Resin.—Dissolving Resins in Oil, etc., under pressure.—Filtration.—Clarification.—Storage.—Ageing.—Coachmakers' Varnishes and Japans.—Oak Varnishes.—Japanners' Stoving Varnishes.—Japanners' Gold Size.—Brunswick Black.—Various Oil Varnishes.—Oil-Varnish Stains.—Varnishes for "Enamels".—India Rubber Varnishes.—Varnishes Analysis: Processes, Matching.—Faults in Varnishes: Cause, Prevention.—Experiments and Exercises.

Press Opinions.

"There is no question that this is a useful book."—*Chemist and Druggist.*

"The different formulæ which are quoted appear to be far more 'practical' than such as are usually to be found in text-books; and assuming that the original was published two or three years ago, and was only slightly behindhand in its information, the present volume gives a fair insight into the position of the varnish industry."—*The Ironmonger.*

Letter from the Teacher of a Technical Class.

"As a teacher, I have often been consulted as to the best work on Varnish Manufacture and kindred industries, and have been at a loss in recommending a really practical one. It is therefore with pleasure that I can now testify as to the merits of the book on these subjects by A. Livache and J. G. McIntosh recently published by Messrs. Scott, Greenwood & Co. In my opinion *no* varnish maker ought to be without it; moreover, it is the best text-book that could be put into the hands of trade students or beginners. It has also the merits of being thoroughly up-to-date and of possessing a remarkably comprehensive index. I can conscientiously recommend it to my students and trade friends."—CHARLES HARRISON, Lecturer on the Manufacture of Painters' Oils, Colours and Varnishes, Borough Polytechnic, Borough Road, S.E.

"*23rd May*, 1899."

THE MANUFACTURE OF LAKE PIGMENTS FROM ARTIFICIAL COLOURS.

By FRANCIS H. JENNISON, F.I.C., F.C.S. Fifteen Plates with coloured patterns. 135 pp. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Introduction.—II., The Groups of the Artificial Colouring Matters.—III., The Nature and Manipulation of Artificial Colours.—IV., Lake-forming Bodies for Acid Colours.—V., Lake-forming Bodies' Basic Colours.—VI., Lake Bases.—VII., The Principles of Lake Formation.—VIII., Red Lakes.—IX., Orange, Yellow, Green, Blue, Violet and Black Lakes.—X., The Production of Insoluble Azo Colours in the Form of Pigments.—XI., The General Properties of Lakes Produced from Artificial Colours.—XII., Washing, Filtering and Finishing.—XIII., Matching and Testing Lake Pigments.—Index.

Press Opinion.

"The book is well written and full of just such information as will enable a young man to put 'brains' into his work. The various classes of colouring matters are carefully described and the process by which the lakes are produced fully discussed."—*Northern Daily Telegraph.*

THE TESTING AND VALUATION OF RAW MATERIALS USED IN PAINT AND COLOUR MANUFACTURE.

By M. W. JONES, F.C.S. A Book for the Laboratories of Colour Works. 88 pp. 1900. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Aluminium Compounds. China Clay. Iron Compounds. Potassium Compounds. Sodium Compounds. Ammonium Hydrate. Acids. Chromium Compounds. Tin Compounds. Copper Compounds. Lead Compounds. Zinc Compounds. Manganese Compounds. Arsenic Compounds. Antimony Compounds. Calcium Compounds. Barium Compounds. Cadmium Compounds. Mercury Compounds. Ultramarine. Cobalt and Carbon Compounds. Oils Index.

Press Opinions.

"Though this excellent little work can appeal only to a limited class, the chemists in colour works, yet it will appeal to them very strongly indeed, for it will put them on the track of short, rapid, and yet approximately, accurate methods of testing the comparative value of competing samples of raw material used in paint and colour manufacture."—*North British Daily Mail.*

"This little text-book is intended to supplement the larger and more comprehensive works on the subject, and it embodies the result of Mr. Jones' experiments and experiences, extending over a long period. It gives, under separate headings, the principal ingredients and impurities found in the raw materials, and is a handy work of reference for ascertaining what is valuable or detrimental in the sample under examination."—*Blackburn Times.*

"There is no attempt at literary adornment nor straining after literary effect, but the lessons are imparted in simple and concise language. This is just what a text-book should be. . . . The treatise is certainly most useful, and bears internal evidence of being the results of actual work in a busy manufactory and not of ephemeral cramming in a technical school. The chapter arrangement is good, the index satisfactory, and the book is altogether one which the practical chemist should keep as accessible as his crucibles and filter paper."—*Manchester Courier.*

THE CHEMISTRY OF ESSENTIAL OILS AND ARTIFICIAL PERFUMES.

By ERNEST J. PARRY, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S. Illustrated with Twenty Engravings. 400 pp. 1899. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **The General Properties of Essential Oils.**—II., **Compounds occurring in Essential Oils.**—III., **The Preparation of Essential Oils.**—IV., **The Analysis of Essential Oils.**—V., **Systematic Study of the Essential Oils.**—VI., **Terpeneless Oils.**—VII., **The Chemistry of Artificial Perfumes.**—**Appendix:** Table of Constants.

Press Opinions.

"There can be no doubt that the publication will take a high place in the list of scientific text-books."—*London Argus.*

"We can heartily recommend this volume to all interested in the subject of essential oils from the scientific or the commercial standpoint."—*British and Colonial Druggist.*

"Mr. Parry has done good service in carefully collecting and marshalling the results of the numerous researches published in various parts of the world."—*Pharmaceutical Journal.*

"A most useful appendix is inserted, giving a table of constants for the more important essential oils. . . . This, in itself, is of sufficient importance and use to warrant the publication of the book, and, added to the very complete classification and consideration of the essential oils which precedes it, the volume becomes of great value to all interested."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"At various times monographs have been printed by individual workers, but it may safely be said that Mr. Parry is the first in these latter days to deal with the subject in an adequate manner. His book is well conceived and well written. . . . He is known to have sound practical experience in analytical methods, and he has apparently taken pains to make himself *au fait* with the commercial aspects of the subject."—*Chemist and Druggist.*

"Mr. Parry's reputation as a scientist is fully established, and we can therefore accept any work emanating from his pen as being of the greatest practical value. We have perused the work before us with much care, and are convinced that the contents will be found most serviceable and its publication most opportune. . . . He avoids unnecessary details, but includes everything that is essential to systematic treatment, while he attempts no more 'than to give an outline of the principles involved'. . . . We congratulate Mr. Parry on the scientific value of his work, and hope that if the progress of the colonies in the manufacture of essential oils and perfumes equals what we are justified in expecting, it will become an Australian hand-book, everywhere appreciated."—*The Australian Brewers' Journal.*

DRYING OILS, BOILED OIL AND SOLID AND LIQUID DRIERS. By L. E. Andés. Forty-two Illustrations. A Practical Work for Manufacturers of Oils, Varnishes, Printing Inks, Oilcloth and Linoleum, Oilcakes, Paints, etc. Expressly Written for this Series of Special Technical Books, and the Publishers hold the Copyright for English and Foreign Editions. [*In the Press*

Contents.

Chapters I., General Chemical and Physical Properties of the Drying Oils; Cause of the Drying Property; Absorption of Oxygen; Behaviour towards Metallic Oxides, etc.—II., The Properties of and Methods for obtaining the Drying Oils.—III., Production of the Drying Oils by Expression and Extraction; Refining and Bleaching; Oil Cakes and Meal; The Refining and Bleaching of the Drying Oils; The Bleaching of Linseed Oil.—IV., The Manufacture of Boiled Oil; The Preparation of Drying Oils for Use in the Grinding of Paints and Artists' Colours and in the Manufacture of Varnishes by Heating over a Fire or by Steam, by the Cold Process, by the Action of Air, and by Means of the Electric Current; The Driers used in Boiling Linseed Oil; The Manufacture of Boiled Oil and the Apparatus therefor; Livache's Process for Preparing a Good Drying Oil and its Practical Application.—V., The Preparation of Varnishes for Letterpress, Lithographic and Copperplate Printing, for Oilcloth and Waterproof Fabrics; The Manufacture of Thickened Linseed Oil, Burnt Oil, Stand Oil by Fire Heat, Superheated Steam, and by a Current of Air.—VI., Behaviour of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oils towards Atmospheric Influences, Water, Acids and Alkalies.—VII., Boiled Oil Substitutes.—VIII., The Manufacture of Solid and Liquid Driers from Linseed Oil and Rosin; Linolic Acid Compounds of the Driers.—IX., The Adulteration and Examination of the Drying Oils and Boiled Oil.

GLUE AND GLUE TESTING. By Samuel Rideal, D.Sc. Lond., F.I.C. Fourteen Engravings. 144 pp. 1900. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **Constitution and Properties:** Definitions and Sources, Gelatine, Chondrin and Allied Bodies, Physical and Chemical Properties, Classification, Grades and Commercial Varieties.—II., **Raw Materials and Manufacture:** Glue Stock, Lining, Extraction, Washing and Clarifying, Filter Presses, Water Supply, Use of Alkalies, Action of Bacteria and of Antiseptics, Various Processes, Cleansing, Forming, Drying, Crushing, etc., Secondary Products.—III., **Uses of Glue:** Selection and Preparation for Use, Carpentry, Veneering, Paper-Making, Bookbinding, Printing Rollers, Hectographs, Match Manufacture, Sandpaper, etc., Substitutes for other Materials, Artificial Leather and Caoutchouc.—IV., **Gelatine:** General Characters, Liquid Gelatine, Photographic Uses, Size, Tanno-, Chrome and Formo-Gelatine, Artificial Silk, Cements, Pneumatic Tyres, Culinary, Meat Extracts, Isinglass, Medicinal and other Uses, Bacteriology.—V., **Glue Testing:** Review of Processes, Chemical Examination, Adulteration, Physical Tests, Valuation of Raw Materials.—VI., **Commercial Aspects.**

Press Opinions.

"This work is of the highest technical character, and gives not only a full and practical account of the raw materials and manufacture of glues, gelatines and similar substances, but gives many hints and information on the use of such substances in veneering, carpentry and many other purposes. Many tests are given for glue in different stages of the progress of its manufacture, and the commercial value of a commodity so much in general use is exemplified by statistics and figures. It is certainly a valuable treatise upon an article for which very little literature in any form has previously been obtainable."—*Carpenter and Builder.*

"Books on the art of glue making are more than usually scarce, and users of that article, as well as those who may be tempted to embark in the industry, should therefore welcome this book by Dr. Samuel Rideal, a Fellow of the Institute of Chemistry, and a leading authority. In this book he has collected the more important facts connected with the manufacture of glue and allied products, and stated the experience he has gained in examining various commercial samples during the past ten years. . . . Dr. Rideal's book must be regarded as a valuable contribution to other technical literature, which manufacturers, merchants and users may study with profit."—*British Trade Journal.*

"This volume is the latest addition to the excellent series of special technical works for manufacturers and professional and commercial men issued by the well-known publishers of *The Oil and Colourman's Journal.* The volume in every way fully maintains the high standard of excellence of the whole series, and deals with the subject of glue making and glue testing in a thoroughly exhaustive manner. Chapters are given on the constitution and properties, and raw material and manufacture, and of the uses of glue, and in this latter respect it will doubtless be information to many readers to learn to what extent glue enters into the manufacture of many commercial products not apparently associated with glue. Exhaustive chapters on the processes and methods of glue testing, and on its commercial aspects, complete this useful and most carefully prepared volume."—*Carriage Builders' Journal.*

RESINS AND BALSAMS.

[*In the Press.*

PURE AIR, OZONE AND WATER. A Practical Treatise of their Utilisation and Value in Oil, Grease, Soap, Paint, Glue and other Industries. By W. B. COWELL. Twelve Illustrations. 1900. Price 5s.; India and Colonies, 5s. 6d.; Other Countries, 6s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Atmospheric Air; Lifting of Liquids; Suction Process; Preparing Blown Oils; Preparing Siccative Drying Oils.—II., Compressed Air; Whitewash.—III., Liquid Air; Retrocession.—IV., Purification of Water; Water Hardness.—V., Fleshings and Bones.—VI., Ozonised Air in the Bleaching and Deodorising of Fats, Glues, etc.; Bleaching Textile Fibres.—Appendix: Air and Gases; Pressure of Air at Various Temperatures; Fuel; Table of Combustibles; Saving of Fuel by Heating Feed Water; Table of Solubilities of Scale Making Minerals; British Thermal Units Tables; Volume of the Flow of Steam into the Atmosphere; Temperature of Steam.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"This is a valuable work in little space. . . . In arrangement it is a commendable work, and its value is increased by the index which brings the little volume to a close."—*Newcastle Daily Journal.*

"The book is written solely for manufacturers, who, without doubt, will find it exceedingly practical and useful. The volume contains an appendix wherein is given a great many tables, etc., which manufacturers in the trades referred to will find of inestimable value."—*Blackburn Times.*

THE MANUFACTURE OF MINERAL AND LAKE PIGMENTS. Containing Directions for the Manufacture of all Artificial, Artists and Painters' Colours, Enamel, Soot and Metallic Pigments. A Text-book for Manufacturers, Merchants, Artists and Painters. By Dr. JOSEF BERSCH. Translated from the Second Revised Edition by ARTHUR C. WRIGHT, M.A. (Oxon.), B.Sc. (Lond.), formerly Assistant Lecturer and Demonstrator in Chemistry at the Yorkshire College, Leeds. Forty-three Illustrations. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

[*Nearly Ready.*

[*See next Page*

Contents.

Chapters I., Introduction.—II., Physico-chemical Behaviour of Pigments.—III., Raw Materials Employed in the Manufacture of Pigments.—IV., Assistant Materials.—V., Metallic Compounds.—VI., The Manufacture of Mineral Pigments.—VII., The Manufacture of White Lead.—VIII., Enamel White.—IX., Washing Apparatus.—X., Zinc White.—XI., Yellow Mineral Pigments.—XII., Chrome Yellow.—XIII., Lead Oxide Pigments.—XIV., Other Yellow Pigments.—XV., Mosaic Gold.—XVI., Red Mineral Pigments.—XVII., The Manufacture of Vermilion.—XVIII., Antimony Vermilion.—XIX., Ferric Oxide Pigments.—XX., Other Red Mineral Pigments.—XXI., Purple of Cassius.—XXII., Blue Mineral Pigments.—XXIII., Ultramarine.—XXIV., Manufacture of Ultramarine.—XXV., Blue Copper Pigments.—XXVI., Blue Cobalt Pigments.—XXVII., Smalts.—XXVIII., Green Mineral Pigments.—XXIX., Emerald Green.—XXX., Verdigris.—XXXI., Chromium Oxide.—XXXII., Other Green Chromium Pigments.—XXXIII., Green Cobalt Pigments.—XXXIV., Green Manganese Pigments.—XXXV., Compounded Green Pigments.—XXXVI., Violet Mineral Pigments.—XXXVII., Brown Mineral Pigments.—XXXVIII., Brown Decomposition Products.—XXXIX., Black Pigments.—XL., Manufacture of Soot Pigments.—XLI., Manufacture of Lamp Black.—XLII., The Manufacture of Soot Black without Chambers.—XLIII., Indian Ink.—XLIV., Enamel Colours.—XLV., Metallic Pigments.—XLVI., Bronze Pigments.—XLVII., Vegetable Bronze Pigments.

Pigments of Organic Origin.—Chapters XLVIII., Lakes.—XLIX., Yellow Lakes.—L., Red Lakes.—LI., Manufacture of Carmine.—LII., The Colouring Matter of Lac.—LIII., Safflower or Carthamine Red.—LIV., Madder and its Colouring Matters.—LV., Madder Lakes.—LVI., Manjit (Indian Madder).—LVII., Lichen Colouring Matters.—LVIII., Red Wood Lakes.—LIX., The Colouring Matters of Sandal Wood and Other Dye Woods.—LX., Blue Lakes.—LXI., Indigo Carmine.—LXII., The Colouring Matter of Log Wood.—LXIII., Green Lakes.—LXIV., Brown Organic Pigments.—LXV., Sap Colours.—LXVI., Water Colours.—LXVII., Crayons.—LXVIII., Confectionery Colours.—LXIX., The Preparation of Pigments for Painting.—LXX., The Examination of Pigments.—LXXI., Examination of Lakes.—LXXII., The Testing of Dye-Woods.—LXXIII., The Design of a Colour Works.—LXXIV.—Commercial Names of Pigments.—Appendix: Conversion of Metric to English Weights and Measures.—Centigrade and Fahrenheit Thermometer Scales.—Index.

THE RISKS AND DANGERS OF VARIOUS OCCUPATIONS AND THEIR PREVENTION.

By Leonard A. Parry, M.D., B.S. (Lond.). 196 pp., demy 8vo. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Occupations which are Accompanied by the Generation and Scattering of Abnormal Quantities of Dust.—II., Trades in which there is Danger of Metallic Poisoning.—III., Certain Chemical Trades.—IV., Some Miscellaneous Occupations.—V., Trades in which Various Poisonous Vapours are Inhaled.—VI., General Hygienic Considerations.—Index.

This book contains valuable information for the following trades—Aërated Water Manufacture, Alkali Manufacture, Aniline Manufacture, Barometer Making, Brass Founders, Bromine Manufacture, Bronze Moulders, Brush Making, Builders, Cabinet Makers, Calico Printing, Chloride of Lime Manufacture, Coal Miners, Cocoa-nut Fibre Making, Colour Grinders, Copper Miners, Cotton Goods Manufacture, Cotton Yarn Dyeing, Cutlery Trades, Dry Cleaning, Electricity Generating, Electroplaters, Explosives Manufacture, File Making, Flint Milling, Floor Cloth Makers, Furriers, Fustian Clothing Making, Galvanised Iron Manufacture, Gassing Process, Gilders, Glass Making, Glass Paper Making, Glass Polishing and Cutting, Grinding Processes, Gunpowder Manufacturing, Gutta-percha Manufacture, Hat Makers, Hemp Manufacture, Horn Goods Making, Horse-hair Making, Hydrochloric Acid Manufacture, India-rubber Manufacture, Iodine Manufacture, Ivory Goods Making, Jewellers, Jute Manufacture, Knife Grinders, Knife Handle Makers, Lace Makers, Lacquering, Lead Melters, Lead Miners, Leather Making, Linen Manufacture Linoleum Making, Lithographic Printing and Bronzing, Lithographing, Masons, Match Manufacture, Melanite Making, Mirror Making, Needle Grinders, Needle Making, Nitro-benzole Making, Nitro-glycerine Making, Paint Makers, Paper Making, Philosophical Instrument Makers, Photographers, Picric Acid Making, Portland Cement Making, Pottery Manufacture, Printers, Quicksilver Mining, Rag Pickers, Razor Grinders, Red Lead Making, Rope Making, Sand Paper Making, Saw Grinders, Scissors Grinders, Shoddy Manufacture, Shot Making, Silk Making, Silver Mining, Skinners, Slag, Wood Manufacture, Steel Makers, Steel Pen Making, Stereotypers, Stone Masons, Straw Hat Makers, Sulphuric Acid Manufacture, Sweeps, Table-knife Grinders, Tanners, Telegraphists, Textile Industries, Tin Miners, Turners, Type Founders, Umbrella Makers, Wall Paper Making, White Lead Making, Wood Working, Woollen Manufacture, Wool Sorters, Zinc Oxide Manufacture, Zinc Working, etc., etc.

[*See next Page.*

Press Opinions.

"The language used is quite simple, and can be understood by any intelligent person engaged in the trades dealt with."—*The Clarion.*

"This is an appalling book. It shows that there is scarcely a trade or occupation that has not a risk or a danger attached to it."—*Local Government Journal.*

"Dr. Parry has not only pointed out the 'risks and dangers of various occupations'; he has suggested means for their prevention. The work is primarily a practical one."—*Colliery Manager.*

"This is a most useful book which should be in the hands of all employers of labour, foremen, and intelligent workmen, and is one of great utility to sanitary inspectors, and even on occasion to medical men."—*Health.*

"The writer has succeeded in collecting a large amount of information, and though one could wish he had presented it in a rather more attractive style, he has certainly condensed it into a very small space."—*Physician and Surgeon.*

"The little book before us is one which will be found exceedingly useful to manufacturers and even factory inspectors. . . . No attempt is made to show how diseases when originated are to be cured, but, acting on the sound principle that prevention is better than cure, means are stated how to avoid the harm."—*Bristol Mercury.*

"The author has endeavoured to treat the question in simple rather than in technical language, and he has lucidly catalogued the most dangerous trades and their symptoms, and in each case specified the best methods of dealing with them. . . . To those for whom the volume is specially designed, Dr. Parry's treatise should be a useful handbook."—*Sheffield Independent.*

"A very useful manual for employers of labour, foremen, intelligent workmen, and, in spite of the author's modesty, for medical men. We have the peculiar risks and dangers of all the dangerous trades carefully described; the mode of action of various chemicals, etc., used in different industries given, with full directions how to minimise unavoidable risks."—*Leeds Mercury.*

"Most of the trades in the country are alluded to, and upon those that are dangerous the necessary attention is bestowed, and means are recommended whereby danger may be prevented or lessened. The author has evidently studied his subject with care, and has made full use of the experience of others who have had a larger insight into the industries of the country." —*British Medical Journal.*

"The work is well written and printed, and its verbiage such as to be comprehensible to the workman no less than to the master. The careful and general perusal of a work of this nature cannot but be attended by beneficial results of a far-reaching nature, and we therefore heartily recommend the book to our readers. Medical Officers of Health and Sanitary Inspectors especially should find the work of great interest."—*Sanitary Record.*

"It is written in simple language, and its instructions can be easily followed. . . . There are some employers, at any rate, who are more ignorant of, than indifferent to, the slow murder of their workpeople, and if the facts so succinctly set forth in this book were brought to their notice, and if the Trade Unions made it their business to insist on the observance of the better conditions Dr. Parry described, much might be done to lessen the workman's peril."—*Weekly Times and Echo.*

DRYING BY MEANS OF AIR AND STEAM. Explanations, Formulæ, and Tables for Use in Practice. Translated from the German of E. HAUSBRAND. Two Diagrams and Thirteen Tables. [*In the Press.*

Contents.

Preface.—Chapters I., Introduction.—II., Estimation of the Maximum Weight of Saturated Aqueous Vapour which can be contained in 1 kilo. of Air at Different Pressure and Temperatures.—III., Calculation of the Necessary Weight and Volume of Air, and of the Least Expenditure of Heat, per Drying Apparatus with Heated Air, at the Atmospheric Pressure: *A*, With the Assumption that the Air is *Completely Saturated* with Vapour both before Entry and after Exit from the Apparatus.—*B*, When the Atmospheric Air is Completely Saturated *before entry*, but at its *exit* is *only* ¾, ½ or ¼ Saturated.—*C*, When the Atmospheric Air is *not* Saturated with Moisture before Entering the Drying Apparatus.—IV., Drying Apparatus, in which, in the Drying Chamber, a Pressure is Artificially Created, Higher or Lower than that of the Atmosphere.—V., Drying by Means of Superheated Steam, without Air.—VI., Heating Surface, Velocity of the Air Current, Dimensions of the Drying Room, Surface of the Drying Material, Losses of Heat.

BONE PRODUCTS AND MANURES. By THOS. LAMBERT. Illustrated by Twenty Plans and Diagrams. [*In the Press.*

Contents.

Analysis of Raw and Finished Products. Skin and Bone Gelatine. Uses and Analysis of Glue, Gelatine, and Size. *Natural and Artificial Manures.* Raw Phosphates, Guanos and Guano Phosphates. Mineral Manures. Prepared Nitrogenous Manures. Superphosphates, Special or Mixed Manures. Valuation of Manures. Analysis of Manures, and Tables.

Leather Trades.

THE LEATHER WORKER'S MANUAL. Being a Compendium of Practical Recipes and Working Formulæ for Curriers, Bootmakers, Leather Dressers, Blacking Manufacturers, Saddlers, Fancy Leather Workers, and all Persons engaged in the Manipulation of Leather. By H. C. STANDAGE. 165 pp. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Blackings, Polishes, Glosses, Dressings, Renovators, etc., for Boot and Shoe Leather.—II., Harness Blackings, Dressings, Greases, Compositions, Soaps, and Boot-top Powders and Liquids, etc., etc.—III., Leather Grinders' Sundries.—IV., Currier's Seasonings, Blacking Compounds, Dressings, Finishes, Glosses, etc.—V., Dyes and Stains for Leather.—VI., Miscellaneous Information.—VII., Chrome Tannage.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"The book being absolutely unique, is likely to be of exceptional value to all whom it concerns, as it meets a long-felt want."—*Birmingham Gazette.*

"This is a valuable collection of practical receipts and working formulæ for the use of those engaged in the manipulation of leather. We have no hesitation in recommending it as one of the best books of its kind, an opinion which will be endorsed by those to whom it appeals."—*Liverpool Mercury.*

"We think we may venture to state, so far as the opinion of the leather trade under the Southern Cross is concerned, that it will be one of approval. As practical men, having a long and wide experience of the leather trade in Australia, we are certain that there are many tanners and curriers carrying on business in remote townships of the colonies to whom such a manual of practical recipes will be invaluable. . . . This manual is not a mere collection of recipes for the various purposes to which they may be applied, but it is also replete with instructions concerning the nature of the materials recommended to be used in making up the recipes. . . . We think every intelligent leather man should avail himself of the manual. It is undoubtedly a valuable contribution to the technology of the leather trade."—*Australian Leather Journal and Boot and Shoe Recorder.*

PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE LEATHER INDUSTRY. By A. M. VILLON. A Translation of Villon's "Traité Pratique de la Fabrication des cuirs et du Travail des Peaux". By FRANK T. ADDYMAN, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C., F.C.S.; and Corrected by an Eminent Member of the Trade. 500 pp., royal 8vo. 1901. 123 Illustrations. Price 21s.; India and Colonies, 22s.; Other Countries, 23s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Preface—Translator's Preface—List of Illustrations.

Part I., **Materials used in Tanning**—Chapter I., Skins: I., Skin and its Structure; II., Skins used in Tanning; III., Various Skins and their Uses—Chapter II., Tannin and Tanning Substances: I., Tannin; II., Barks (Oak); III., Barks other than Oak; IV., Tanning Woods; V., Tannin-bearing Leaves; VI., Excrescences; VII., Tan-bearing Fruits; VIII., Tan-bearing Roots and Bulbs; IX., Tanning Juices; X., Tanning Substances used in Various Countries; XI., Tannin Extracts; XII., Estimation of Tannin and Tannin Principles.

Part II., **Tanning**—Chapter I., The Installation of a Tannary: I., Tan Furnaces; II., Chimneys, Boilers, etc.; III., Steam Engines—Chapter II., Grinding and Trituration of Tanning Substances: I., Cutting up Bark; II., Grinding Bark; III., The Grinding of Tan Woods; IV., Powdering Fruit, Galls and Grains; V., Notes on the Grinding of Bark—Chapter III., Manufacture of Sole Leather: I., Soaking; II., Sweating and Unhairing; III., Plumping and Colouring; IV., Handling; V., Tanning; VI., Tanning Elephants' Hides; VII., Drying; VIII., Striking or Pinning—Chapter IV., Manufacture of Dressing Leather: I., Soaking; II., Depilation; III., New Processes for the Depilation of Skins; IV., Tanning; V., Cow Hides; VI., Horse Hides; VII., Goat Skins; Manufacture of Split Hides—Chapter V., On Various Methods of Tanning: I., Mechanical Methods; II., Physical Methods III., Chemical Methods; IV., Tanning with Extracts—Chapter VI., Quantity and Quality: I., Quantity; II., Net Cost; III., Quality of Leather—Chapter VII., Various Manipulations of Tanned Leather: I., Second Tanning; II., Grease Stains; III., Bleaching Leather; IV., Waterproofing Leather; V., Weighting Tanned Leather; VI., Preservation of Leather—Chapter VIII., Tanning Various Skins.

Part III., **Currying**—Chapter I., Waxed Calf: I., Preparation; II., Shaving; III., Stretching or Slicking; IV., Oiling the Grain; V., Oiling the Flesh Side; VI., Whitening and Graining; VII., Waxing; VIII., Finishing; IX., Dry Finishing; X., Finishing in Colour; XI., Cost—Chapter II., White Calf: I., Finishing in White—Chapter III., Cow Hide for Upper Leathers: I., Black Cow Hide; II., White Cow Hide; III., Coloured Cow Hide.—Chapter IV., Smooth Cow Hide—Chapter V., Black Leather—Chapter VI., Miscellaneous Hides: I., Horse; II., Goat; III., Waxed Goat Skin; IV., Matt Goat Skin—Chapter VII., Russia Leather: I., Russia Leather; II., Artificial Russia Leather.

Part IV., **Enamelled, Hungary and Chamoy Leather, Morocco, Parchment, Furs and Artificial Leather**—Chapter I., Enamelled Leather: I., Varnish Manufacture; II., Application of the Enamel; III., Enamelling in Colour—Chapter II., Hungary Leather: I., Preliminary; II., Wet Work or Preparation; III., Aluming; IV., Dressing or Loft Work; V., Tallowing; VI., Hungary Leather from Various Hides—Chapter III., Tawing: I., Preparatory Operations; II., Dressing; III., Dyeing Tawed Skins; IV., Rugs—Chapter IV., Chamoy Leather—Chapter V., Morocco: I., Preliminary Operations; II., Morocco Tanning; III., Mordants used in Morocco Manufacture; IV., Natural Colours used in Morocco Dyeing; V., Artificial Colours; VI., Different Methods of Dyeing; VII., Dyeing with Natural Colours; VIII., Dyeing with Aniline Colours; IX., Dyeing with Metallic Salts; X., Leather Printing; XI., Finishing Morocco; XII., Shagreen; XIII., Bronzed Leather—Chapter VI., Gilding and Silvering: I., Gilding; II., Silvering; III., Nickel and Cobalt—Chapter VII., Parchment—Chapter VIII., Furs and Furriery: I., Preliminary Remarks; II., Indigenous Furs; III., Foreign Furs from Hot Countries; IV., Foreign Furs from Cold Countries; V., Furs from Birds' Skins; VI., Preparation of Furs; VII., Dressing; VIII., Colouring; IX., Preparation of Birds' Skins; X., Preservation of Furs—Chapter IX., Artificial Leather: I., Leather made from Scraps; II., Compressed Leather; III., American Cloth; IV., Papier Mâché; V., Linoleum; VI., Artificial Leather.

Part V., **Leather Testing and the Theory of Tanning**—Chapter I., Testing and Analysis of Leather: I., Physical Testing of Tanned Leather; II., Chemical Analysis—Chapter II., The Theory of Tanning and the other Operations of the Leather and Skin Industry: I., Theory of Soaking; II., Theory of Unhairing; III., Theory of Swelling; IV., Theory of Handling; V. Theory of Tanning; VI., Theory of the Action of Tannin on the Skin; VII., Theory of Hungary Leather Making; VIII., Theory of Tawing; IX., Theory of Chamoy Leather Making; X., Theory of Mineral Tanning.

Part VI., **Uses of Leather**—Chapter I., Machine Belts: I., Manufacture of Belting; II., Leather Chain Belts; III., Various Belts; IV., Use of Belts—Chapter II., Boot and Shoemaking: I., Boots and Shoes; II., Laces—Chapter III., Saddlery: I., Composition of a Saddle; II., Construction of a Saddle—Chapter IV., Harness: I., The Pack Saddle; II., Harness—Chapter V., Military Equipment—Chapter VI., Glove Making—Chapter VII., Carriage Building—Chapter VIII., Mechanical Uses.

Appendix, **The World's Commerce in Leather**—I., Europe; II., America; III., Asia; IV., Africa; Australasia—Index

Books on Pottery, Glass, etc.

THE MANUAL OF PRACTICAL POTTING.

Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. 200 pp. 1897. Price 17s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 18s. 6d.; Other Countries, 20s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Introduction. The Rise and Progress of the Potter's Art.—Chapters I., **Bodies.** China and Porcelain Bodies, Parian Bodies, Semi-porcelain and Vitreous Bodies, Mortar Bodies, Earthenwares Granite and C.C. Bodies, Miscellaneous Bodies, Sagger and Crucible Clays, Coloured Bodies, Jasper Bodies, Coloured Bodies for Mosaic Painting, Encaustic Tile Bodies, Body Stains, Coloured Dips.—II., **Glazes.** China Glazes, Ironstone Glazes, Earthenware Glazes, Glazes without Lead, Miscellaneous Glazes, Coloured Glazes, Majolica Colours.—III., **Gold and Cold Colours.** Gold, Purple of Cassius, Marone and Ruby, Enamel Coloured Bases, Enamel Colour Fluxes, Enamel Colours, Mixed Enamel Colours, Antique and Vellum Enamel Colours, Underglaze Colours, Underglaze Colour Fluxes, Mixed Underglaze Colours, Flow Powders, Oils and Varnishes.—IV., **Means and Methods.** Reclamation of Waste Gold, The Use of Cobalt, Notes on Enamel Colours, Liquid or Bright Gold.—V., **Classification and Analysis.** Classification of Clay Ware, Lord Playfair's Analysis of Clays, The Markets of the World, Time and Scale of Firing, Weights of Potter's Material, Decorated Goods Count.—VI., Comparative Loss of Weight of Clays.—VII., Ground Felspar Calculations.—VIII., The Conversion of Slop Body Recipes into Dry Weight.—IX., The Cost of Prepared Earthenware Clay.—X., **Forms and Tables.** Articles of Apprenticeship, Manufacturer's Guide to Stocktaking, Table of Relative Values of Potter's Materials, Hourly Wages Table, Workman's Settling Table, Comparative Guide for Earthenware and China Manufacturers in the use of Slop Flint and Slop Stone, Foreign Terms applied to Earthenware and China Goods, Table for the Conversion of Metrical Weights and Measures on the Continent of South America. **Index.**

CERAMIC TECHNOLOGY: Being some Aspects of Technical Science as Applied to Pottery Manufacture. Edited by Charles F. Binns. 100 pp. 1897. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Preface.—Introduction.—Chapters I., The Chemistry of Pottery.—II., Analysis and Synthesis.—III., Clays and their Components.—IV., The Biscuit Oven.—V., Pyrometry.—VI., Glazes and their Composition.—VII., Colours and Colour-making.—Index.

RECIPES FOR FLINT GLASS MAKING. By a British Glass Master and Mixer. Sixty Recipes. Being Leaves from the Mixing Book of several experts in the Flint Glass Trade, containing up-to-date recipes and valuable information as to Crystal, Demi-crystal and Coloured Glass in its many varieties. It contains the recipes for cheap metal suited to pressing, blowing, etc., as well as the most costly crystal and ruby. British manufacturers have kept up the quality of this glass from the arrivals of the Venetians to Hungry Hill, Stourbridge, up to the present time. The book also contains remarks as to the result of the metal as it left the pots by the respective metal mixers, taken from their own memoranda upon the originals. 1900. Price for United Kingdom, 10s. 6d.; Abroad, 15s.; United States, $4; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Ruby—Ruby from Copper—Flint for using with the Ruby for Coating—A German Metal—Cornelian, or Alabaster—Sapphire Blue—Crysophis—Opal—Turquoise Blue—Gold Colour—Dark Green—Green (common)—Green for Malachite—Blue for Malachite—Black for Melachite—Black—Common Canary Batch—Canary—White Opaque Glass—Sealing-wax Red—Flint—Flint Glass (Crystal and Demi)—Achromatic Glass—Paste Glass—White Enamel—Firestone—Dead White (for moons)—White Agate—Canary—Canary Enamel—Index.

COLOURING AND DECORATION OF CERAMIC WARE. By Alex. Brongniart. With Notes and Additions by Alphonse Salvetat. Translated from the French. 200 pp. 1898. Price 7s. 6d.; Abroad, 8s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

The Pastes, Bodies or Ceramic Articles Capable of being Decorated by Vitrifiable Colours—The Chemical Preparation of Vitrifiable Colours—Composition and Preparation of Vitrifiable Colours—The Oxides—Preparation of Oxides—Preparation of Chromates—Preparation of other Colours—Composition and Preparation of Fluxes—Muffle Colours—Recipes for Colours—Use of Metals—Lustres—Preparation and Application of Colours—Composition of Coloured Pastes—Underglaze Colours—Colours in the Glaze—Overglaze Colours—Painting in Vitrifiable Colours—Gilding—Burnishing—Printing—Enlarging and Reducing Gelatine Prints—Muffle Kilns for Vitrifiable Colours—Influence of the Material on the Colour—Changes Resulting from the Actions of the Fire—Alterations Resulting from the Colours—Alterations in Firing.

HOW TO ANALYSE CLAY. Practical Methods for Practical Men. By Holden M. Ashby, Professor of Organic Chemistry, Harvey Medical College, U.S.A. Twenty Illustrations. 1898. Price 2s. 6d.; strictly net, post free, home or abroad.

Contents.

List of Apparatus—List of Atomic Weights—Use of Balance, and Burette, Sand Bath, and Water Bath—Dessicator—Drying Oven—Filtering—Fusion—Determination of Water, Organic Matter, Iron, Calcium, Alkalies, Limestone, Silica, Alumina, Magnesium, etc.—Mechanical Analysis—Rational Analysis—Standard Solutions—Volumetric Analysis—Standards for Clay Analysis—Sampling.

Architectural Pottery.

ARCHITECTURAL POTTERY. Bricks, Tiles, Pipes, Enamelled Terra-cottas, Ordinary and Incrusted Quarries, Stoneware Mosaics, Faïences and Architectural Stoneware. By LEON LEFÊVRE. With Five Plates. 950 Illustrations in the Text, and numerous estimates. 500 pp., royal 8vo. 1900. Translated from the French by K. H. BIRD, M.A., and W. MOORE BINNS. Price 15s.; India and Colonies, 16s.; Other Countries, 17s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Part I. **Plain Undecorated Pottery.**—Chapter I., Clays: § 1, Classification, General Geological Remarks.—Classification, Origin, Locality; § 2, General Properties and Composition: Physical Properties, Contraction, Analysis, Influence of Various Substances on the Properties of Clays; § 3, Working of Clay-Pits—I. Open Pits: Extraction, Transport, Cost—II. Underground Pits—Mining Laws. Chapter II., Preparation of the Clay: Weathering, Mixing, Cleaning, Crushing and Pulverising—Crushing Cylinders and Mills, Pounding Machines—Damping: Damping Machines—Soaking, Shortening, Pugging: Horse and Steam Pug-Mills, Rolling Cylinders—Particulars of the Above Machines. Chapter III., Bricks: § 1, Manufacture—(1) Hand and Machine Moulding.—I. Machines Working by Compression: on Soft Clay, on Semi-Firm Clay, on Firm Clay, on Dry Clay.—II. Expression Machines: with Cylindrical Propellers, with Screw Propellers—Dies—Cutting-tables—Particulars of the Above Machines—General Remarks on the Choice of Machines—Types of Installations—Estimates—Plenishing, Hand and Steam Presses, Particulars—(2) Drying, by Exposure to Air, Without Shelter, and Under Sheds—Drying-rooms in Tiers, Closed Drying-rooms, in Tunnels, in Galleries—Detailed Estimates of the Various Drying-rooms, Comparison of Prices—Transport from the Machines to the Drying-rooms, Barrows, Trucks, Plain or with Shelves, Lifts—(3) Firing—I. In Clamps—II. In Intermittent Kilns. *A*, Open: *a*, using Wood; *b* Coal; *b'*, in Clamps; *b''*, Flame—*B*, Closed: *c*, Direct Flame; *c'*, Rectangular; *c''*, Round; *d*, Reverberatory—III. Continuous Kilns: *C*, with Solid Fuel: Round Kiln, Rectangular Kiln, Chimneys (Plans and Estimates)—*D*, With Gas Fuel, Fillard Kiln (Plans and Estimates), Schneider Kiln (Plans and Estimates), Water-gas Kiln—Heat Production of the Kilns; § 2, Dimensions, Shapes, Colours, Decoration, and Quality of Bricks—Hollow Bricks, Dimensions and Prices of Bricks, Various Shapes, Qualities—Various Hollow Bricks, Dimensions, Resistance, Qualities; § 3, Applications—History—Asia, Africa, America, Europe: Greek, Roman, Byzantine, Turkish, Romanesque, Gothic, Renaissance, Architecture—Architecture of the Nineteenth Century: in Germany, England, Belgium, Spain, Holland, France, America—Use of Bricks—Walls, Arches, Pavements, Flues, Cornices—Facing with Coloured Bricks—Balustrades. Chapter IV., Tiles: § 1, History; § 2, Manufacture—(1) Moulding, by Hand, by Machinery: Preparation of the Clay, Soft Paste, Firm Paste, Hard Paste—Preparation of the Slabs, Transformation into Flat Tiles, into Jointed Tiles—Screw, Cam and Revolver Presses—Particulars of Tile-presses—(2) Drying—Planchettes, Shelves, Drying-barrows and Trucks—(3) Firing—Divided Kilns—Installation of Mechanical Tileworks—Estimates; § 3, Shapes, Dimensions and Uses of the Principal Types of Tile—Ancient Tiles: Flat, Round, Roman, Flemish—Modern Tiles—With Vertical Interrupted Join: Gilardoni's, Martin's; Hooked, Boulet's Villa; with Vertical Continuous Join: Muller's, Alsace, Pantile—Foreign Tiles—Special Tiles—Ridge Tiles, Coping Tiles, Border Tiles, Frontons, Gutters, Antefixes, Membron, Angular—Roofing Accessories: Chimney-pots, Mitrons, Lanterns, Chimneys—Qualities of Tiles—Black Tiles—Stoneware Tiles—Particulars of Tiles. Chapter V., Pipes: I. Conduit Pipes—Manufacture—Moulding: Horizontal Machines, Vertical Machines, Worked by Hand and Steam—Particulars of these Machines—Drying—Firing—II. Chimney Flues—Ventiducts and "Boisseaux," "Waggons"—Particulars of these Products. Chapter VI., Quarries: I, Plain Quarries of Ordinary Clay; 2, of Cleaned Clay—Machines, Cutting, Mixing, Polishing—Drying and Firing—Applications—Particulars of Quarries. Chapter VII., Terra-cotta: History—Manufacture—Application: Balustrades, Columns, Pilasters, Capitals, Friezes, Frontons, Medallions, Panels, Rose-windows, Ceilings—Appendix: Official Methods of Testing Terra-cottas.

Part II. **Made-up or Decorated Pottery.**—Chapter I., General Remarks on the Decoration of Pottery: Dips—Glazes: Composition, Colouring, Preparation, Harmony with Pastes—Special Processes of Decoration—Enamels, Opaque, Transparent, Colours, Under-

[*See next Page.*

glaze, Over-glaze—Other Processes: Crackling, Mottled, Flashing, Metallic Iridescence, Lustres. Chapter II., Glazed and Enamelled Bricks—History: Glazing—Enamelling—Applications: Ordinary Enamelled Bricks, Glazed Stoneware, Enamelled Stoneware—Enamelled Tiles. Chapter III., Decorated Quarries: I. Paving Quarries—1, Decorated with Dips—2, Stoneware: *A*, Fired to Stoneware; *a*, of Slag Base—Applications; *b*, of Melting Clay—Applications—*B*, Plain or Incrusted Stoneware; *a*, of Special Clay (Stoke-on-Trent)—Manufacture—Application—*b*, of Felspar Base—Colouring, Manufacture, Moulding, Drying, Firing—Applications.—II. Facing Quarries—1, in Faïence—*A*, of Limestone Paste—*B*, of Silicious Paste—*C*, of Felspar Paste—Manufacture, Firing—2, of Glazed Stoneware—3, of Porcelain—Applications of Facing Quarries.—III. Stove Quarries—Preparation of the Pastes, Moulding, Firing, Enamelling, Decoration—Applications—Faïences for Fireplaces. Chapter IV., Architectural Decorated Pottery: § 1, Faïences; § 2, Stoneware; § 3, Porcelain. Chapter V., Sanitary Pottery: Stoneware Pipes: Manufacture, Firing—Applications—Sinks—Applications—Urinals, Seats and Pans—Applications—Drinking-fountains, Washstands. Index.

Press Opinions.

"The work is profusely illustrated, and contains a large amount of useful information, and should be of great value to manufacturers."—*Burton Chronicle*.

"Should have a huge sale amongst those interested in enamelled terra cottas, ordinary and incrusted quarries, stoneware mosaics, faiences, and architectural stoneware."—*Newark Advertiser*.

"The fame of M. Lefevre's monumental work has already reached this country, and the capable translation now produced will be cordially welcomed. Apart from its technical value, the incitement which the work will give to architectural pottery is a factor that should not be ignored. . . . The chief value of the work is that all modern processes advocated are not only clearly explained, but are shown to have justified themselves. In other words, they represent the survival of the fittest."—*Manchester Courier*.

THE ART OF RIVETING GLASS, CHINA AND EARTHENWARE. By J. Howarth. Second Edition. 1900. Price 1s. net; by post, home or abroad, 1s. 2d.

Contents.

Tools and Materials Required—Wire Used for Rivets—Soldering Solution—Preparation for Drilling—Commencement of Drilling—Cementing—Preliminaries to Riveting—Rivets to Make—To Fix the Rivets—Through-and-through Rivets—Soldering—Tinning a Soldering-Iron—Perforated Plates, Handles, etc.—Handles of Ewers, etc.—Vases and Comports—Marble and Alabaster Ware—Decorating—How to Loosen Fast Decanter Stoppers—China Cements.

PAINTING ON GLASS AND PORCELAIN AND ENAMEL PAINTING. A Complete Introduction to the Preparation of all the Colours and Fluxes used for Painting on Porcelain, Enamel, Faïence and Stoneware, the Coloured Pastes and Coloured Glasses, together with a Minute Description of the Firing of Colours and Enamels. On the Basis of Personal Practical Experience of the Condition of the Art up to Date. By Felix Hermann, Technical Chemist. With Eighteen Illustrations. 300 pp. Translated from the German. Second and Enlarged Edition. 1897. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

History of Glass Painting.—Chapters I., The Articles to be Painted: Glass, Porcelain, Enamel, Stoneware, Faïence.—II., Pigments: 1, Metallic Pigments: Antimony Oxide, Naples Yellow, Barium Chromate, Lead Chromate, Silver Chloride, Chromic Oxide.—III., Fluxes: Fluxes, Felspar, Quartz, Purifying Quartz, Sedimentation, Quenching, Borax, Boracic Acid, Potassium and Sodium Carbonates, Rocaille Flux.—IV., Preparation of the Colours for Glass Painting.—V., The Colour Pastes.—VI., The Coloured Glasses.—VII., Composition of the Porcelain Colours.—VIII., The Enamel Colours: Enamels for Artistic Work.—IX., Metallic Ornamentation: Porcelain Gilding, Glass Gilding.—X., Firing the Colours: 1, Remarks on Firing: Firing Colours on Glass, Firing Colours on Porcelain; 2, The Muffle.—XI., Accidents occasionally Supervening during the Process of Firing.—XII., Remarks on the Different Methods of Painting on Glass, Porcelain, etc.—Appendix: Cleaning Old Glass Paintings.

[*See next Page*

Press Opinions.

"Mr. Hermann, by a careful division of his subject, avoids much repetition, yet makes sufficiently clear what is necessary to be known in each art. He gives very many formulæ; and his hints on the various applications of metals and metallic lustres to glass and porcelains will be found of much interest to the amateur."—*Art Amateur*, New York.

"For the unskilled and amateurs the name of the publishers will be sufficient guarantee for the utility and excellence of Mr. Hermann's work, even if they are already unacquainted with the author. . . . The whole cannot fail to be both of service and interest to glass workers and to potters generally, especially those employed upon high-class work."—*Staffordshire Sentinel.*

"In *Painting on Glass and Porcelain* the author has dealt very exhaustively with the technical as distinguished from the artistic side of his subject, the work being entirely devoted to the preparation of the colours, their application and firing. For manufacturers and students it will be a valuable work, and the recipes which appear on almost every page form a very valuable feature. The author has gained much of his experience in the celebrated Sevres manufactory, a fact which adds a good deal of authority to the work."—*Builders Journal.*

"The compiler displays that painstaking research characteristic of his nation, and goes at length into the question of the chemical constitution of the pigments and fluxes to be used in glass-painting, proceeding afterwards to a description of the methods of producing coloured glass of all tints and shades. . . . Very careful instructions are given for the chemical and mechanical preparation of the colours used in glass-staining and porcelain-painting; indeed, to the china painter such a book as this should be of permanent value, as the author claims to have tested and verified every recipe he includes, and the volume also comprises a section devoted to enamels both opaque and translucent, and another treating of the firing of porcelain, and the accidents that occasionally supervene in the furnace."—*Daily Chronicle.*

"In Dr. Hermann's hand-book—if such a term is fitting for so erudite and masterly a treatise—the student is first delighted by an interesting historical introduction, after which an exhaustive description follows of the metallic oxides and salts, the earths and earthy bodies and the free metals used in the composition of the pigments. All who take an interest in the colouring properties of matter will not fail to be instructed in this section of the work. . . . Exhaustive recipes are given in separate chapters for the composition of the colours and fluxes for every shade and tint in the painting of glass, porcelain, enamel, faïence, and stoneware, for the preparation of coloured pastes, for the application of metallic ornamentation, for the colouring of the foundation in the 'frit' or 'charge' stage, and for the encaustic operations in the kiln. . . . In every district of England where art porcelain and glass is manufactured, this treatise should be widely circulated, and its contents made familiar to all engaged, in whatever capacity, in the trade."—*Leeds Mercury.*

A Reissue of

THE HISTORY OF THE STAFFORDSHIRE POTTERIES; AND THE RISE AND PROGRESS OF THE MANUFACTURE OF POTTERY AND PORCELAIN.

With References to Genuine Specimens, and Notices of Eminent Potters. By SIMEON SHAW. (Originally Published in 1829.) 265 pp. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Introductory Chapter showing the position of the Pottery Trade at the present time (1899).—Chapters I., **Preliminary Remarks.**—II., **The Potteries**, comprising Tunstall, Brownhills, Greenfield and New Field, Golden Hill, Latebrook, Green Lane, Burslem, Longport and Dale Hall, Hot Lane and Cobridge, Hanley and Shelton, Etruria, Stoke, Penkhull, Fenton, Lane Delph, Foley, Lane End.—III., **On the Origin of the Art**, and its Practice among the early Nations.—IV., **Manufacture of Pottery**, prior to 1700.—V., **The Introduction of Red Porcelain** by Messrs. Elers, of Bradwell, 1690.—VI., **Progress of the Manufacture** from 1700 to Mr. Wedgwood's commencement in 1760.—VII., **Introduction of Fluid Glaze.**—Extension of the Manufacture of Cream Colour.—Mr. Wedgwood's Queen's Ware.—Jasper, and Appointment of Potter to Her Majesty.—Black Printing.—VIII., **Introduction of Porcelain.** Mr. W. Littler's Porcelain.—Mr. Cookworthy's Discovery of Kaolin and Petuntse, and Patent.—Sold to Mr. Champion—resold to the New Hall Com.—Extension of Term.—IX., **Blue Printed Pottery.** Mr. Turner, Mr. Spode (1), Mr. Baddeley, Mr. Spode (2), Messrs. Turner, Mr. Wood, Mr. Wilson, Mr. Minton.—Great Change in Patterns of Blue Printed.—X., **Introduction of Lustre Pottery.** Improvements in Pottery and Porcelain subsequent to 1800.

Press Opinions.

"There is much curious and useful information in the work, and the publishers have rendered the public a service in reissuing it."—*Burton Mail.*

"Copies of the original work are now of considerable value, and the facsimile reprint now issued cannot but prove of considerable interest to all interested in the great industry."—*Derby Mercury.*

"The book will be especially welcomed at a time when interest in the art of pottery manufacture commands a more widespread and general interest than at any previous time."—*Wolverhampton Chronicle.*

"This work is all the more valuable because it gives one an idea of the condition of affairs existing in the north of Staffordshire before the great increase in work and population due to modern developments."—*Western Morning News.*

". . . The History gives a graphic picture of North Staffordshire at the end of the last and the beginning of the present century, and states that in 1829 there was 'a busy and enterprising community' in the Potteries of fifty thousand persons. . . . We commend it to our readers as a most entertaining and instructive publication."—*Staffordshire Sentinel.*

A Reissue of

THE CHEMISTRY OF THE SEVERAL NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL HETEROGENEOUS COMPOUNDS USED IN MANUFACTURING PORCELAIN, GLASS AND POTTERY.

By SIMEON SHAW. (Originally published in 1837.) 750 pp. 1900. Price 14s.; India and Colonies, 15s.; Other Countries, 16s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

PART I., ANALYSIS AND MATERIALS.—Chapters I., **Introduction**: Laboratory and Apparatus; **Elements**: Combinative Potencies, Manipulative Processes for Analysis and Reagents, Pulverisation, Blow-pipe Analysis, Humid Analysis, Preparatory Manipulations, General Analytic Processes, Compounds Soluble in Water, Compounds Soluble only in Acids, Compounds (Mixed) Soluble in Water, Compounds (Mixed) Soluble in Acids, Compounds (Mixed) Insoluble, Particular Analytic Processes.—II., **Temperature**: Coal, Steam Heat for Printers' Stoves.—III., **Acids and Alkalies**: Boracic Acid, Muriatic Acid, Nitric Acid, Sulphuric Acid, Potash, Soda, Lithia, Calculation of Chemical Separations.—IV., **The Earths**: Alumine, Clays, Silica, Flint, Lime, Plaster of Paris, Magnesia, Barytes, Felspar, Grauen (or China Stone), China Clay, Chert.—V., **Metals**: Reciprocal Combinative Potencies of the Metals, Antimony, Arsenic, Chromium, Green Oxide, Cobalt, Chromic Acid, Humid Separation of Nickel from Cobalt, Arsenite of Cobalt, Copper, Gold, Iron, Lead, Manganese, Platinum, Silver, Tin, Zinc.

PART II., SYNTHESIS AND COMPOUNDS.—Chapters I., Sketch of the Origin and Progress of the Art.—II., **Science of Mixing**: Scientific Principles of the Manufacture, Combinative Potencies of the Earths.—III., **Bodies**: Porcelain—Hard, Porcelain—Fritted Bodies, Porcelain—Raw Bodies, Porcelain—Soft, Fritted Bodies, Raw Bodies, Stone Bodies, Ironstone, Dry Bodies, Chemical Utensils, Fritted Jasper, Fritted Pearl, Fritted Drab, Raw Chemical Utensils, Raw Stone, Raw Jasper, Raw Pearl, Raw Mortar, Raw Drab, Raw Brown, Raw Fawn, Raw Cane, Raw Red Porous, Raw Egyptian, Earthenware, Queen's Ware, Cream Colour, Blue and Fancy Printed, Dipped and Mocha, Chalky, Rings, Stilts, etc.—IV., **Glazes**: Porcelain—Hard Fritted, Porcelain—Soft Fritted, Porcelain—Soft Raw, Cream Colour Porcelain, Blue Printed Porcelain, Fritted Glazes, Analysis of Fritt, Analysis of Glaze, Coloured Glazes, Dips, Smears and Washes; **Glasses**: Flint Glass, Coloured Glasses, Artificial Garnet, Artificial Emerald, Artificial Amethyst, Artificial Sapphire, Artificial Opal, Plate Glass, Crown Glass, Broad Glass, Bottle Glass, Phosphoric Glass, British Steel Glass, Glass-Staining and Painting, Engraving on Glass, Dr. Faraday's Experiments.—V., **Colours**: Colour Making, Fluxes or Solvents, Components of the Colours; **Reds, etc., from Gold**, Carmine or Rose Colour, Purple, Reds, etc., from Iron, Blues, Yellows, Greens, Blacks, White, Silver for Burnishing, Gold for Burnishing, Printer's Oil, Lustres.

PART III., TABLES OF THE CHARACTERISTICS OF CHEMICAL SUBSTANCES.—Preliminary Remarks, Oxygen (Tables), Sulphur and its Compounds, Nitrogen ditto, Chlorine ditto, Bromine ditto, Iodine ditto, Fluorine ditto, Phosphorous ditto, Boron ditto, Carbon ditto, Hydrogen ditto, Observations, Ammonium and its Compounds (Tables), Thorium ditto, Zirconium ditto, Aluminium ditto, Yttrium ditto, Glucinum ditto, Magnesium ditto, Calcium ditto, Strontium ditto, Barium ditto, Lithium ditto, Sodium and its Compounds, Potassium ditto, Observations, Selenium and its Compounds (Tables), Arsenic ditto, Chromium ditto, Vanadium ditto, Molybdenum ditto, Tungsten ditto, Antimony ditto, Tellurium ditto, Tantalum ditto, Titanium ditto, Silicium ditto, Osmium ditto, Gold ditto, Iridium ditto, Rhodium ditto, Platinum ditto, Palladium ditto, Mercury ditto, Silver ditto, Copper ditto, Uranium ditto. Bismuth and its Compounds, Tin ditto, Lead ditto, Cerium ditto, Cobalt ditto, Nickel ditto, Iron ditto, Cadmium ditto, Zinc ditto, Manganese ditto, Observations, Isomorphous Groups, Isomeric ditto, Metameric ditto, Polymeric ditto, Index.

Press Opinions.

"The atomic weights have been more accurately determined, and experiments in synthetic chemistry have given us readier methods of producing certain materials requisite, but the fundamental principles were always discovered, and for all practical purposes the book is as valuable now as when first published."—*Longton Times and Echo.*

"This interesting volume has been kept from the pencil of the modern editor and reprinted in its entirety by the enterprising publishers of *The Pottery Gazette* and other trade journals. . . . There is an excellent historical sketch of the origin and progress of the art of pottery which shows the intimate knowledge of classical as well as (the then) modern scientific literature possessed by the late Dr. Shaw; even the etymology of many of the Staffordshire place-names is given."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"The historical sketch of the origin and progress of pottery is very interesting and instructive. The science of mixing is a problem of great importance, and the query how the natural products, alumina and silica can be compounded to form the best wares may be solved by the aid of chemistry instead of by guesses, as was formerly the case. This portion of the book may be most suggestive to the manufacturer, as also the chapters devoted to the subject of glazes, glasses and colours."—*Birmingham Post.*

"Messrs. Scott, Greenwood & Co. are doing their best to place before the pottery trades some really good books, likely to aid the Staffordshire manufacturers, and their spirited enterprise is worthy of encouragement, for the utility of technical literature bearing upon the practical side of potting goes without saying. . . . They are to be congratulated on their enterprise in republishing it, and we can only hope that they will meet with the support they deserve. It seems to be a volume that is worth looking through by both manufacturers and operatives alike, and all local institutions, at any rate, should secure copies."—*Staffordshire Sentinel.*

Paper Making.

THE DYEING OF PAPER PULP. A Practical Treatise for the use of Papermakers, Paperstainers, Students and others. By JULIUS ERFURT, Manager of a Paper Mill. Translated into English and Edited with Additions by JULIUS HÜBNER, F.C.S., Lecturer on Papermaking at the Manchester Municipal Technical School. With Illustrations and 157 patterns of paper dyed in the pulp. Royal 8vo, 180 pp. 1901. Price 15s.; Abroad, 20s.; strictly net, post free. Limited edition.

Contents.

I., **Behaviour of the Paper Fibres during the Process of Dyeing, Theory of the Mordant**—Cotton; Flax and Hemp; Esparto; Jute; Straw Cellulose; Chemical and Mechanical Wood Pulp; Mixed Fibres; Theory of Dyeing.—II., **Colour Fixing Mediums (Mordants)**—Alum; Aluminium Sulphate; Aluminium Acetate; Tin Crystals (Stannous Chloride); Copperas (Ferrous Sulphate); Nitrate of Iron (Ferric Sulphate); Pyrolignite of Iron (Acetate of Iron); Action of Tannic Acid; Importance of Materials containing Tannin; Treatment with Tannic Acid of Paper Pulp intended for dyeing; Blue Stone (Copper Sulphate); Potassium Bichromate; Sodium Bichromate; Chalk (Calcium Carbonate); Soda Crystals (Sodium Carbonate); Antimony Potassium Tartrate (Tartar Emetic).—III., **Influence of the Quality of the Water Used.**—IV., **Inorganic Colours**—1. Artificial Mineral Colours: Iron Buff; Manganese Bronze; Chrome Yellow (Chromate of Lead); Chrome Orange (Basic Chromate of Lead); Red Lead; Chrome Green; Blue with Yellow Prussiate; Prussian Blue; Method for Producing Prussian Blue free from Acid; Ultramarine—2. Natural Mineral Colours (Earth

[*See next Page.*

Colours): Yellow Earth Colours; Red Earth Colours; Brown Earth Colours; Green, Grey and Black Earth Colours; White Earth Colours; White Clay (China Clay): White Gypsum; Baryta; Magnesium Carbonate; Talc, Soapstone.—V., **Organic Colours**—1. Colours of Vegetable and Animal Origin: (*a*) *Substantive* (*Direct Dyeing*) *Colouring Matters:* Annatto; Turmeric; Safflower; (*b*) *Adjective* (*Indirect Dyeing*) *Colouring Matters:* Redwood; Cochineal; Weld; Persian Berries; Fustic Extract; Quercitron; Catechu (Cutch); Logwood Extract—2. Artificial Organic (Coal Tar) Colours: Acid Colours; Basic Colours; Substantive (Direct Dyeing) Colours; Dissolving of the Coal Tar Colours; Auramine°°; Naphthol Yellow S°; Quinoline Yellow°; Metanil Yellow°; Paper Yellow°; Azoflavine RS°, S°; Cotton Yellow Gxx and Rxx; Orange II°; Chrysoïdine A°°, RL°°; Vesuvine Extra°°; Vesuvine BC°°; Fast Brown°, Naphthylamine Brown°; Water Blue IN°; Water Blue TB°; Victoria Blue B°°; Methylene Blue MD°°; Nile Blue R°°; New Blue S°°; Indoïne Blue BB°°; Eosine 442 Nx; Phloxine BB N; Rhodamine B°°; Rhodamine 6 G°°; Naphthylamine Red G°; Fast Red A°; Cotton Scarlet°; Erythrine RR°; Erythrine X°; Erythrine P°; Ponceau 2 R°; Fast Ponceau G° and B°; Paper Scarlet P°°; Saffranine PP°°; Magenta Powder A°°; Acetate of Magenta°°; Cerise D 10°°; Methyl Violet BB°°; Crystal Violet°°; Acid Violet 3 BN°, 4 R°; Diamond Green B°°; Nigrosine WL°; Coal Black°°; Brilliant Black B°.—VI., **Practical Application of the Coal Tar Colours according to their Properties and their Behaviour towards the Different Paper Fibres**—Coal Tar Colours, which rank foremost, as far as their fastness to light is concerned; Colour Combinations with which colourless or nearly colourless Backwater is obtained; Colours which do not bleed into White Fibres, for Blotting and Copying Paper Pulp; Colours which produce the best results on Mechanical Wood and on Unbleached Sulphite Wood; Dyeing of Cotton, Jute and Wool Half-stuff for Mottling White or Light Coloured Papers; Colours suitable for Cotton; Colours specially suitable for Jute Dyeing; Colours suitable for Wool Fibres.—VII., **Dyed Patterns on Various Pulp Mixtures**—Placard and Wrapping Papers; Black Wrapping and Cartridge Papers; Blotting Papers; Mottled and Marbled Papers made with Coloured Linen, Cotton and Union Rags, or with Cotton, Jute, Wool and Sulphite Wood Fibres, dyed specially for this purpose: Mottling with Dark Blue Linen; Mottling with Dark Blue Linen and Dark Blue Cotton; Mottling with Dark Blue Cotton; Mottling with Dark Blue and Red Cotton; Mottling with Dark Red Cotton; Mottling of Bleached Stuff, with 3 to 4 per cent. of Dyed Cotton Fibres; Mottling with Dark Blue Union (Linen and Wool or Cotton Warp with Wool Weft); Mottling with Blue Striped Red Union; Mottling of Bleached Stuff with 3 to 4 per cent. of Dyed Wool Fibres; Mottling of Bleached Stuff with 3 to 4 per cent. of Dyed Jute Fibres; Mottling of Bleached Stuff with 3 to 4 per cent. of Dyed |Sulphite Wood Fibres; Wall Papers; Packing Papers.—VIII., **Dyeing to Shade**—Index.

Enamelling on Metal.

ENAMELS AND ENAMELLING. An Introduction to the Preparation and Application of all Kinds of Enamels for Technical and Artistic Purposes. For Enamel Makers, Workers in Gold and Silver, and Manufacturers of Objects of Art. By PAUL RANDAU. Translated from the German. With Sixteen Illustrations. 180 pp. 1900. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

I., Introduction.—II., Composition and Properties of Glass.—III., Raw Materials for the Manufacture of Enamels.—IV., Substances Added to Produce Opacity.—V., Fluxes.—VI., Pigments.—VII., Decolorising Agents.—VIII., Testing the Raw Materials with the Blow-pipe Flame.—IX., Subsidiary Materials.—X., Preparing the Materials for Enamel Making.—XI., Mixing the Materials.—XII., The Preparation of Technical Enamels, The Enamel Mass.—XIII., Appliances for Smelting the Enamel Mass.—XIV., Smelting the Charge.—XV., Composition of Enamel Masses.—XVI., Composition of Masses for Ground Enamels.—XVII., Composition of Cover Enamels.—XVIII., Preparing the Articles for Enamelling.—XIX., Applying the Enamel.—XX., Firing the Ground Enamel.—XXI., Applying and Firing the Cover Enamel or Glaze.—XXII., Repairing Defects in Enamelled Ware.—XXIII., Enamelling Articles of Sheet Metal.—XXIV., Decorating Enamelled Ware.—XXV., Specialities in Enamelling.—XXVI., Dial-plate Enamelling.—XXVII., Enamels for Artistic Purposes, Recipes for Enamels of Various Colours.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"Should prove of great service to all who are either engaged in or interested in the art of enamelling."—*Jewellers and Watchmakers' Trade Advertiser.*

"I must inform you that this is the best book ever I have come across on enamels, and it is worth double its cost."—J. Minchin, Jr., Porto, Portugal, *22nd July*, 1900.

"This is a very useful and thoroughly practical treatise, and deals with every branch of the enameller's art. The manufacture of enamels of various colours and the methods of their application are described in detail. Besides the commoner enamelling processes, some of the more important special branches of the business, such as cloisonné work are dealt with. The work is well got up, and the illustrations of apparatus are well executed. The translator is evidently a man well acquainted both with the German language and the subject-matter of the book."—*Invention.*

"This is a most welcome volume, and one for which we have long waited in this country. For years we have been teaching design applied to enamelling as well as to several other crafts, but we have not risen to the scientific side of the question. Here is a handbook dealing with the composition and making of enamels for application to metals for the most part, but also for other allied purposes. It is written in a thoroughly practical way, and its author—Paul Randau—has made its subject a very particular study. The result, like almost all things which come from the German chemical expert, is a model of good workmanship and arrangement, and no one who is in search of a handbook to enamelling, no matter whether he is a craftsman producing his beautiful translucent colours on gold, silver and copper, or the hollow-ware manufacturer making enamelled saucepans and kettles, can wish for a more useful practical manual."—*Birmingham Gazette.*

THE ART OF ENAMELLING ON METAL. By W. Norman Brown. Twenty-eight Illustrations. 60 pp. 1900. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., History—Cloisonné—Champs Levé—Translucent Enamel—Surface Painted Enamels.—II., Cloisonné—Champs Levés—Translucent—Painted.—III., Painted Enamel—Apparatus—Furnaces and Muffles for Firing.—IV., The Copper Base or Plate—Planishing—Cloisons—Champ Leve Plates.—V., Enamels—Trituration—Washing—Coating a Plate with Enamel—Firing Ordinary Plaques for Painting—Designing—Squaring off.—VI., Designs for Cloisonné—Designs for Painted Enamels—Technical Processes—Brushes, etc.,—Colours—Grisaille—Full-coloured Designs.

Press Opinion.

"The information conveyed in *The Art of Enamelling on Metal* is as complete as can be expected in a manual of ordinary length, and is quite ample in all respects to start students in a most interesting branch of decorative art. All necessary requisites are fully described and illustrated, and the work is one, indeed, which any one may pursue with interest, for those who are interested artistically in enamels are a numerous body."—*Hardware Metals and Machinery.*

Books on Textile and Dyeing Subjects.

THE TECHNICAL TESTING OF YARNS AND TEXTILE FABRICS. With Reference to Official Specifications. Translated from the German of Dr. J. HERZFELD. Sixty-nine Illustrations. 200 pp. 1898. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Yarn Testing. III., Determining the Yarn Number.—IV., Testing the Length of Yarns.—V., Examination of the External Appearance of Yarn.—VI., Determining the Twist of Yarn and Twist.—VII., Determination of Tensile Strength and Elasticity.—VIII., Estimating the Percentage of Fat in Yarn.—IX., Determination of Moisture (Conditioning).—**Appendix.**

Press Opinions.

"It would be well if our English manufacturers would avail themselves of this important addition to the extensive list of German publications which, by the spread of technical information, contribute in no small degree to the success, and sometimes to the supremacy, of Germany in almost every branch of textile manufacture."—*Manchester Courier.*

"This is probably the most exhaustive book published in English on the subject dealt with. . . . We have great confidence in recommending the purchase of this book by all manufacturers of textile goods of whatever kind, and are convinced that the concise and direct way in which it is written, which has been admirably conserved by the translator, renders it peculiarly adapted for the use of English readers."—*Textile Recorder.*

"A careful study of this book enables one to say with certainty that it is a standard work on the subject. Its importance is enhanced greatly by the probability that we have here, for the first time in our own language, in one volume, a full, accurate, and detailed account, by a practical expert, of the best technical methods for the testing of textile materials, whether in the raw state or in the more or less finished product."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"The author has endeavoured to collect and arrange in systematic form for the first time all the data relating to both physical and chemical tests as used throughout the whole of the textile industry, so that not only the commercial and textile chemist, who has frequently to reply to questions on these matters, but also the practical manufacturer of textiles and his subordinates, whether in spinning, weaving, dyeing, and finishing, are catered for. . . . The book is profusely illustrated, and the subjects of these illustrations are clearly described."—*Textile Manufacturer.*

DECORATIVE AND FANCY TEXTILE FABRICS. With Designs and Illustrations. By R. T. LORD. A Valuable Book for Manufacturers and Designers of Carpets, Damask, Dress and all Textile Fabrics. 200 pp. 1898. 132 Designs and Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics.—II., A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued).—III., A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued).—IV., A Few Hints on Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics (continued).—V., Hints for Ruled-paper Draughtsmen.—VI., The Jacquard Machine.—VII., Brussels and Wilton Carpets.—VIII., Tapestry Carpets.—IX., Ingrain Carpets.—X., Axminster Carpets.—XI., Damask and Tapestry Fabrics.—XII., Scarf Silks and Ribbons.—XIII., Silk Handkerchiefs.—XIV., Dress Fabrics.—XV., Mantle Cloths.—XVI., Figured Plush.—XVII., Bed Quilts.—XVIII., Calico Printing.

Press Opinions.

"The book can be strongly recommended to students and practical men."—*Textile Colourist*

"Those engaged in the designing of dress, mantle tapestry, carpet and other ornamental textiles will find this volume a useful work of reference."—*Leeds Mercury.*

"The book is to be commended as a model manual, appearing at an opportune time, since every day is making known a growing desire for development in British industrial art."—*Dundee Advertiser.*

"Designers especially, who desire to make progress in their calling, will do well to take the hints thrown out in the first four chapters on 'Designing Ornamental Textile Fabrics'."—*Nottingham Daily Guardian.*

"The writer's avocation is that of a designer for the trade, and he therefore knows what he is writing about. . . . The work is well printed and abundantly illustrated, and for the author's share of the work we have nothing but commendation. It is a work which the student designer will find thoroughly useful."—*Textile Mercury.*

POWER-LOOM WEAVING AND YARN NUMBERING,

According to Various Systems, with Conversion Tables. An Auxiliary and Text-book for Pupils of Weaving Schools, as well as for Self-Instruction and for General Use by those engaged in the Weaving Industry. Translated from the German of ANTHON GRUNER. With Twenty-two Diagrams in Colours. 150 pp. 1900. Crown 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

I., **Power-Loom Weaving in General.** Various Systems of Looms.—II., **Mounting and Starting the Power-Loom.** English Looms.—Tappet or Treadle Looms.—Dobbies.—III., **General Remarks on the Numbering, Reeling and Packing of Yarn.—Appendix.—Useful Hints.** Calculating Warps.—Weft Calculations.—Calculations of Cost Price in Hanks.

Press Opinions.

"A long-felt want in the weaving industry has been supplied by the issue of a cheap volume dealing with the subject."—*Belfast Evening Telegraph.*

"The work has been clearly translated from the German and published with suitable illustrations. . . . The author has dealt very practically with the subject."—*Bradford Daily Telegraph.*

"The book, which contains a number of useful coloured diagrams, should prove invaluable to the student, and its handy form will enable it to become a companion more than some cumbrous work."—*Cotton Factory Times.*

"The book has been prepared with great care, and is most usefully illustrated. It is a capital text-book for use in the weaving schools or for self-instruction, while all engaged in the weaving industry will find its suggestions helpful."—*Northern Daily Telegraph.*

"The various systems are treated in a careful manner; also the different looms and their manufacture, as well as the whole processes of the work. Yarn numbering according to various systems, with conversion tables and numerous coloured diagrams, materially assist to a clear comprehension of the subject."—*Northern Whig.*

"It will be found most useful by those who have not time to go through the large standard work, and the volume may be aptly described as a nutshell of power-loom weaving. Yarn numbering according to various systems is dealt with, and conversion tables included, and we have no hesitation in commending the book to our readers."—*Oldham Standard.*

"The 'inside' managers of our textile mills in which the work is complex or greatly varied, and where yarns of different materials are in use, will find this work convenient for reference in case of novelty or difficulty. We may also say the same in relation to the textile student. Its description of the parts of the loom and their functions will be of use to the latter, being of the most elementary kind."—*Textile Mercury.*

"The author attempts to fill a gap in weaving literature caused by the neglect of many obscure points connected with the industry. A short review is given of the power-loom as a whole, followed by a description of the different parts of the machinery with their advantages and defects. . . . The book is severely technical, but must on that account be very valuable to the pupil who is determined to master this industrial art."—*Cheshire County News.*

"It is clear and concise, and gives just that knowledge in quality and amount which any student of the weaving industry ought to consider as a minimum necessary for his thorough comprehension of his future profession. The handiness and variety of the information comprised in Section III., dealing with the numbering and reeling of yarns employed in the various systems in different countries, struck us as particularly useful."—*North British Daily Mail.*

"This work brings before weavers who are actually engaged in the various branches of fabrics, as well as the technical student, the different parts of the general run of power-looms in such a manner that the parts of the loom and their bearing to each other can be readily understood. . . . The work should prove of much value, as it is in every sense practical, and is put before the reader in such a clear manner that it can be easily understood."—*Textile Industries.*

"The book under notice is intended as an instructor to those engaged in power-loom weaving, and, judging by its compilation, the author is a thorough master of the craft. It is not overloaded with details, and he manages to compress in a book of some 150 pages all that one can possibly wish to know about the different parts of the machinery, whether of English or foreign make, and for whatever kind of cloth required. A comprehensive summary is also included of the various yarns and methods of numbering them, as well as a few useful hints and a number of coloured diagrams for mandarin weavings. The book is printed in bold, legible type, on good paper, has a copious index, and is well and strongly bound."—*Ashton-under-Lyne Herald.*

"In dealing with the complicated parts of various classes of power-looms, the writer, who is one of the professors at the Royal Weaving School of Asch, brings to the work a thorough knowledge of the subject, and, what is of great value, he has the gift of communicating his knowledge in a way which is easily understood. The smallest details of loom-setting are entered into, and a full explanation of problems, which are a source of anxiety to many engaged in overlooking, is given. Students will find the work an admirable text-book, and all who are interested in weaving will see in it a valuable addition to the literature on this subject. . . . The book is in small compass, and is crowded with valuable information."—*Bradford Observer.*

"A short and valuable review is given of the power-loom as a whole, and this is followed by a description of the mounting of the different parts of the machinery, with their advantages and defects. In preference to illustrations—the readers being presumed to already possess a suitable acquaintance with the subject—the various systems of numbering yarn are explained, together with certain calculations useful in weaving. . . . How power-loom weaving has advanced in recent years is explained at some length in this book, which will prove invaluable to intending students of practical weaving, and will also be found very useful to those whose knowledge of the subject is more advanced, to whom the calculations, which give evidence of careful study, will frequently come in handy."—*Stockport Advertiser.*

COLOUR: A HANDBOOK OF THE THEORY OF COLOUR. By GEORGE H. HURST, F.C.S. With Ten Coloured Plates and Seventy-two Illustrations. 160 pp. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., **Colour and Its Production**. Light, Colour, Dispersion of White Light Methods of Producing the Spectrum, Glass Prism and Diffraction Grating Spectroscopes, The Spectrum, Wave Motion of Light, Recomposition of White Light, Hue, Luminosity, Purity of Colours, The Polariscope, Phosphorescence, Fluorescence, Interference.—II., **Cause of Colour in Coloured Bodies.** Transmitted Colours, Absorption Spectra of Colouring Matters.—III., **Colour Phenomena and Theories.** Mixing Colours, White Light from Coloured Lights, Effect of Coloured Light on Colours, Complementary Colours, Young-Helmholtz Theory, Brewster Theory, Supplementary Colours, Maxwell's Theory, Colour Photography.—IV., **The Physiology of Light.** Structure of the Eye, Persistence of Vision, Subjective Colour Phenomena, Colour Blindness.—V., **Contrast.** Contrast, Simultaneous Contrast, Successive Contrast, Contrast of Tone, Contrast of Colours, Modification of Colours by Contrast, Colour Contrast in Decorative Design.—VI., **Colour in Decoration and Design.** Colour Harmonies, Colour Equivalents, Illumination and Colour, Colour and Textile Fabrics, Surface Structure and Colour.—VII., **Measurement of Colour.** Colour Patch Method, The Tintometer, Chromometer.

Press Opinions.

"This useful little book possesses considerable merit, and will be of great utility to those for whom it is primarily intended."—*Birmingham Post.*

"It will be found to be of direct service to the majority of dyers, calico printers and colour mixers, to whom we confidently recommend it."—*Chemical Trade Journal.*

"It is thoroughly practical, and gives in simple language the why and wherefore of the many colour phenomena which perplex the dyer and the colourist."—*Dyer and Calico Printer.*

"We have found the book very interesting, and can recommend it to all who wish to master the different aspects of colour theory, with a view to a practical application of the knowledge so gained."—*Chemist and Druggist.*

"Mr. Hurst's *Handbook on the Theory of Colour* will be found extremely useful, not only to the art student, but also to the craftsman, whose business it is to manipulate pigments and dyes."—*Nottingham Daily Guardian.*

"This is a workmanlike technical manual, which explains the scientific theory of colour in terms intelligible to everybody. . . . It cannot but prove both interesting and instructive to all classes of workers in colour."—*Scotsman.*

THE COLOUR PRINTING OF CARPET YARNS.

A Useful Manual for Colour Chemists and Textile Printers. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. Seventeen Illustrations. 132 pp. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Structure and Constitution of Wool Fibre.—II., Yarn Scouring.—III., Scouring Materials.—IV., Water for Scouring.—V., Bleaching Carpet Yarns.—VI., Colour Making for Yarn Printing.—VII., Colour Printing Pastes.—VIII., Colour Recipes for Yarn Printing.—IX., Science of Colour Mixing.—X., Matching of Colours.—XI., "Hank" Printing.—XII., Printing Tapestry Carpet Yarns.—XIII., Yarn Printing.—XIV., Steaming Printed Yarns.—XV., Washing of Steamed Yarns.—XVI., Aniline Colours Suitable for Yarn Printing.—XVII., Glossary of Dyes and Dye-wares used in Wood Yarn Printing.—Appendix.

Press Opinions.

"The book is worthy the attention of the trade."—*Worcester Herald.*

"The treatise is arranged with great care, and follows the processes described in a manner at once clear and convincing."—*Glasgow Record.*

"A most useful manual dealing in an intelligible and interesting manner with the colour printing of carpet yarns."—*Kidderminster Times.*

"An eminent expert himself, the author has evidently strained every effort in order to make his work the standard guide of its class."—*Leicester Post.*

"The book, which is admirably printed and illustrated, should fulfil the need of a practical guide in the colour printing of carpet yarns.—*Nottingham Express.*

"The subject is very exhaustively treated in all its branches. . . . The work, which is very well illustrated with designs, machines, and wool fibres, will be a useful addition to our textile literature."—*Northern Whig.*

"It gives an account of its subject which is both valuable and instructive in itself, and likely to be all the more welcome because books dealing with textile fabrics usually have little or nothing to say about this way of decorating them."—*Scotsman.*

"The work shows a thorough grasp of the leading characteristics as well as the minutæ of the industry, and gives a lucid description of its chief departments. . . . As a text-book in technical schools where this branch of industrial education is taught, the book is valuable, or it may be perused with pleasure as well as profit by any one having an interest in textile industries."—*Dundee Courier.*

"The book bears every mark of an extensive practical knowledge of the subject in all its bearings, and supplies a real want in technical literature. Chapters IX. and X., on the science of colour mixing and colour matching respectively, are especially good, and we do not remember to have seen the bearing of various kinds of light, and of the changes from one kind of light to another on the work of the colourist, so well treated elsewhere."—*Dyer and Calico Printer.*

"It is thoroughly practical, and contains much information which has not hitherto appeared in book form. It is pleasing to note that the practical part is not crowded out with purely 'practical recipes'. A few typical examples are given, and the rest is left to the common sense and judgment of the printer or works' chemist. Another pleasing feature is the accounts given here and there of the author's own researches on the subject. The work will be of interest to printers of wool generally, and to those engaged in the dyeing of this fibre."—*Journal of the Society of Dyers and Colourists.*

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE BLEACHING OF LINEN AND COTTON YARN AND FABRICS.

By L. TAILFER, Chemical and Mechanical Engineer. Translated from the French by JOHN GEDDES MCINTOSH, Lecturer on Chemical Technology, London. 1901. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapter I. General Considerations on Bleaching. Chapter II. Steeping. Chapter III. Washing: Its End and Importance—Roller Washing Machines—Wash Wheel (Dash Wheel)—Stocks or Wash Mill—Squeezing. Chapter IV. Lye Boiling—Lye Boiling with Milk of Lime—Lye Boiling with Soda Lyes—Description of Lye Boiling Keirs—Operations of Lye Boiling—Concentration of Lyes. Chapter V. Mather and Platt's Keir—Description of the Keir—Saturation of the Fabrics—Alkali used in Lye Boiling—Examples of Processes. Chapter VI. Soap—Action of Soap in Bleaching—Quality and Quantity of Soaps to use in the Lye—Soap

Lyes or Scalds—Soap Scouring Stocks. Chapter VII. Bleaching on Grass or on the Bleaching Green or Lawn. Chapter VIII. Chemicking—Remarks on Chlorides and their Decolourising Action—Chemicking Cisterns—Chemicking—Strengths, etc. Chapter IX. Sours—Properties of the Acids—Effects Produced by Acids—Souring Cisterns. Chapter X. Drying—Drying by Steam—Drying by Hot Air—Drying by Air. Chapter XI. Damages to Fabrics in Bleaching—Yarn Mildew—Fermentation—Iron Rust Spots—Spots from Contact with Wood—Spots incurred on the Bleaching Green—Damages arising from the Machines. Chapter XII. Examples of Methods used in Bleaching—Linen—Cotton. Chapter XIII. The Valuation of Caustic and Carbonated Alkali (Soda) and General Information Regarding these Bodies—Object of Alkalimetry—Titration of Carbonate of Soda—Comparative Table of Different Degrees of Alkalimetrical Strength—Five Problems relative to Carbonate of Soda—Caustic Soda, its Properties and Uses—Mixtures of Carbonated and Caustic Alkali—Note on a Process of Manufacturing Caustic Soda and Mixtures of Caustic and Carbonated Alkali (Soda). Chapter XIV. Chlorometry—Titration—Wagner's Chlorometric Method—Preparation of Standard Solutions—Apparatus for Chlorine Valuation—Alkali in Excess in Decolourising Chlorides. Chapter XV. Chlorine and Decolourising Chlorides—Synopsis—Chlorine—Chloride of Lime—Hypochlorite of Soda—Brochoki's Chlorozone—Various Decolourising Hypochlorites—Comparison of Chloride of Lime and Hypochlorite of Soda. Chapter XVI. Water—Qualities of Water—Hardness—Dervaux's Purifier—Testing the Purified Water—Different Plant for Purification—Filters. Chapter XVII. Bleaching of Yarn—Weight of Yarn—Lye Boiling—Chemicking—Washing—Bleaching of Cotton Yarn. Chapter XVIII. The Installation of a Bleach Works—Water Supply—Steam Boilers—Steam Distribution Pipes—Engines—Keirs—Washing Machines—Stocks—Wash Wheels—Chemicking and Souring Cisterns—Various—Buildings. Chapter XIX. Addenda—Energy of Decolourising Chlorides and Bleaching by Electricity and Ozone—Energy of Decolourising Chlorides—Chlorides—Production of Chlorine and Hypochlorites by Electrolysis—Lunge's Process for increasing the intensity of the Bleaching Power of Chloride of Lime—Trilfer's Process for Removing the Excess of Lime or Soda from Decolourising Chlorides—Bleaching by Ozone.

THE SCIENCE OF COLOUR MIXING. A Manual intended for the use of Dyers, Calico Printers and Colour Chemists. By David Paterson, F.C.S. Forty-one Illustrations, Five Coloured Plates, and Four Plates showing Eleven Dyed Specimens of Fabrics. 1900. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Colour a Sensation; Colours of Illuminated Bodies; Colours of Opaque and Transparent Bodies; Surface Colour.—II., Analysis of Light; Spectrum; Homogeneous Colours; Ready Method of Obtaining a Spectrum.—III., Examination of Solar Spectrum; The Spectroscope and Its Construction; Colourists' Use of the Spectroscope.—IV.. Colour by Absorption; Solutions and Dyed Fabrics; Dichroic Coloured Fabrics in Gaslight.—V., Colour Primaries of the Scientist *versus* the Dyer and Artist; Colour Mixing by Rotation and Lye Dyeing; Hue, Purity, Brightness; Tints; Shades, Scales, Tones, Sad and Sombre Colours.—VI., Colour Mixing; Pure and Impure Greens, Orange and Violets; Large Variety of Shades from few Colours; Consideration of the Practical Primaries: Red, Yellow and Blue.—VII., Secondary Colours; Nomenclature of Violet and Purple Group; Tints and Shades of Violet; Changes in Artificial Light.—VIII., Tertiary Shades; Broken Hues; Absorption Spectra of Tertiary Shades.—Appendix: Four Plates with Dyed Specimens Illustrating Text.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"The work has evidently been prepared with great care, and, as far as we can judge, should be very useful to the dyer and colourist."—*Halifax Courier.*

"The volume, which is clearly and popularly written, should prove of the utmost service to all who are concerned with the practical use of colours, whether as dyers or painters."—*Scotsman.*

"To the practical colourist, and also to technical students, Mr. Paterson's new work will be very welcome We are often asked to recommend books on different subjects, and have no hesitation in advising the purchase of the present volume by dyers and calico printers, as containing a mass of most useful information at a nominal price."—*Irish Textile Journal.*

"Mr. Paterson's work not only clearly deals with the theory of colour, but supplies lucid directions for the practical application of the theory. His work will be found exceedingly helpful, not only to the practical colourist, but also to students in our textile colleges, by forming a useful complement to their class lectures. There are several exquisitely coloured plates and a large number of other illustrations of theory and practice in colour blending, and also a series of plates with specimens of dyed fabrics attached, in explication of the author's views."—*Wakefield Express.*

"Mr. Paterson has little to say upon the experimental aspect or on its æsthetics, but much upon the theory of colour, especially as it bears upon the question—an all-important one to dyers, calico printers and artists, who have to produce such a variety of shades and tints—of the admixture of one colour upon another. . . . The author is a dyer, and in his concluding chapters keeps well before him the special wants and requirements of dyers. He writes pleasantly and lucidly, and there is no difficulty in following him, although here and there a lapse into ambiguousness occurs. The book is well printed, generously supplied with coloured plates, very nicely if not brightly got up; and the dyed patterns at the end enhance the value of the book to the dyer."—*Textile Mercury.*

"For some time the proprietors of *The Oil and Colourman's Journal* have been engaged in the publication of a series of practical handbooks intended for the use of those interested in certain branches of technology, and the present volume is the latest addition to their list. The feature which the works have in common—and it is an all-important one in treatises of this sort—is their eminently practical character. The primary aim of the publishers is to provide scientific text-books which will be helpful to those who are either actively engaged in the practice of the arts in question, or who are studying with that immediate end in view. . . . Mr. Paterson speaks with that assured knowledge of an expert, and in the present volume, as in that which he has already contributed to the same series, he sets forth the true foundation of the art of colouring in a manner at once comprehensive and judicious. . . . For dyers, calico printers and colourists in general, whose desire it is to work with accuracy in their respective branches, the treatise will prove an invaluable guide-book, provided the principles and methods it describes are studied with intelligence and care. To this end, every encouragement has been given that well-chosen examples, carefully executed plates and diagrams, and an exhaustive index can supply."—*Glasgow Herald.*

COLOUR MATCHING ON TEXTILES. [*In the Press.*

Books for Mining Engineers and Steam Users.

RECOVERY WORK AFTER PIT FIRES. A Description of the Principal Methods Pursued, especially in Fiery Mines, and of the Various Appliances Employed, such as Respiratory and Rescue Apparatus, Dams, etc. By ROBERT LAMPRECHT, Mining Engineer and Manager. Translated from the German. Illustrated by Six large Plates, containing Seventy-six Illustrations. 175 pp., demy 8vo. 1901. Price 10s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 11s.; Other Countries, 12s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Preface.—I., **Causes of Pit Fires:** 1, Fires Resulting from the Spontaneous Ignition of Coal; 2, Fires Caused by Burning Timber; 3, Fires Caused by Fire-damp Explosions.—II., **Preventive Regulations:** 1, The Outbreak and Rapid Extension of a Shaft Fire can be most reliably prevented by Employing little or no Combustible Material in the Construction of the Shaft; 2, Precautions for Rapidly Localising an Outbreak of Fire in the Shaft; 3, Precautions to be Adopted in case those under 1 and 2 Fail or Prove Inefficient. Precautions against Spontaneous Ignition of Coal. Precautions for Preventing Explosions of Fire-damp and Coal Dust. Employment of Electricity in Mining, particularly in Fiery Pits. Experiments on the Ignition of Fire-damp Mixtures and Clouds of Coal Dust by Electricity.—III., **Indications of an Existing or Incipient Fire.**—IV., **Appliances for Working in Irrespirable Gases:** 1, Respiratory Apparatus; 2, Apparatus with Air Supply Pipes, (*a*) The Bremen Smoke Helmet, (*b*) The Müller Smoke Helmet, (*c*) The Stolz Rescue Mask; 3, Reservoir Apparatus; 4, Oxygen Apparatus. The Schwann Respiratory Apparatus. The Fleuss Respiratory Apparatus. The Improved Walcher-Gärtner Pneumatophor, (*a*) The Single Bottle Apparatus, Instructions for Using the Pneumatophor, Taking to Pieces and Resetting the Apparatus ready for Use; (*b*) Two Bottle Apparatus (Shamrock Type). The Neupert Rescue Apparatus (The Mayer-Pilar System).—V. **Extinguishing Pit Fires:** (*a*) Chemical Means; (*b*) Extinction with Water. Dragging down the Burning Masses and Packing with Clay; (*c*) Insulating the Seat of the Fire by Dams. Dam Building. Dam Work in the Fiery Pits of Southern Hungary: (*a*) Cross-dams of Clay; (*b*) Masonry Dams, Gallery Linings. Wagner's Portable Safety Dam. Analyses of Fire Gases. Isolating the Seat of a Fire with Dams: Working in Irrespirable

Gases ("Gas-diving"): 1, Air-Lock Work (Horizontal Advance) on the Mayer System as Pursued at Karwin in 1894; 2, Air-Lock Work (Horizontal Advance) by the Mauerhofer Modified System. Vertical Advance. Mayer System. Complete Isolation of the Pit. Flooding a Burning Section isolated by means of Dams. Wooden Dams: (*a*) Upright Balk Dams; (*b*) Horizontal Balk Dams; (*c*) Wedge Dams, Masonry Dams. Examples of Cylindrical and Dome-shaped Dams. Dam Doors: Flooding the Whole Pit.—VI., **Rescue Stations:** (*a*) Stations above Ground; (*b*) Underground Rescue Stations.—VII., **Spontaneous Ignition of Coal in Bulk.**—Index.

Illustrations.

Sheet I., **Respiratory and Rescue Appliances—Precautions against Fire.** Figs. 1, Smoke Helmet; 2, Müller's Smoke Helmet; 3, Low-pressure Respiration Apparatus; 4, High-pressure Respiration Apparatus; 5, The Stolz Mask for Rescue Work; 6, Precautions against Fire.—Sheet II., **Respiratory and Rescue Apparatus.** Figs. 1, Recovery Work with Müller's Smoke Helmet after a Fire; 2-8, The Fleuss Respiration Apparatus; 9, The Walcher-Gärtner Pneumatophor; 10-12, Pneumatophor (Shamrock Type).—Sheet III., **Respiratory and Rescue Apparatus—Stretchers.** Figs. 1-8, Rescue Apparatus manufactured by O. Neupert's Successor (Mayer-Pilar System); 1, Front View; 2, Section through Bag and Mask; 3, Rear View; 4, Apparatus and Mask laid out Flat (view from above); 5, Apparatus and Mask laid out Flat (view from below); 6, Locking Device for Closing Bag; 7, Apparatus Complete, Mounted for Rescue Work; 8, Improved Valve in the Respiration Tubes; 9-12, **Stretchers.** Fig. 9, Stretcher Covered with Brown Canvas; 10, Stretcher Covered with Brown Canvas, fitted with Adjustable Head-rest; 11, Folding Stretcher Covered with Brown Canvas; 12, Rupprecht's Stretcher Covered with Brown Canvas; 13, Dr. Rühlmann's Stretcher.—Sheet IV., **Dams.** Figs. 1-7, R. Wagner's Portable Safety Dam.—Sheet V., **Signalling Appliances—Dam Construction—Cable Laying.** Figs. 1-3, Signalling Appliances: 1, Small Induction Apparatus for Pit Work; 2, Bell Signal for Pit Work; 3, Pit Telephone; 4-18, **Dam Construction;** 4, 5, Upright Timber Dam; 6, 7, Timber Dam with Wooden Door; 8, 9, Dome-shaped Dams; 10, 11, Dome-shaped Dam with Iron Door; 12, 13, The Wenker and Berninghaus Locking Device for Dam Doors; 14-17, Dam Construction; 18, Damming a Gallery Lined with Iron; 19, Support for Cable.—Sheet VI., **Working with Diving Gear in Irrespirable Gases—Gallery Work.** Figs. 1-4, Air-Lock Work (Mayer System); 5-7, Air-Lock (Mauerhofer's Modification of the Mayer System); 8-11, Construction of Dams at the Pluto Shaft.—Sheet VII., **Working with Diving Gear in Irrespirable Gases (Mayer System)—Appliances in the Shaft.** Figs. 1, 2, Sections of Shaft and Air Apparatus; 3, Salzmann Reducing Valve for Reserve Air Supply; 4, 5, L. v. Bremen's Respiration Apparatus with Karwin Reserve Appliance; 6, Cross Section of the Franziska Shaft; 7, Method of Supplying Air to Main Pipe and Winding same on Drum; 8, Clamp.

Press Opinions.

"This book is, in a manner, unique. The literature of mining accidents is fairly extensive, but it consists largely of departmental Blue Books."—*Sheffield Daily Telegraph.*

"A concise and lucid description of the principal methods pursued, especially in fiery mines, and of the various appliances employed, such as respiratory and rescue apparatus, dams, etc."—*Staffs Advertiser.*

"The prevention of spontaneous combustion in collieries and the extinction of underground fires are duties that fall heavily on many colliery managers. They should, therefore, welcome this translation of Mr. Lamprecht's German treatise."—*Ironmonger.*

"The book under notice supplies the needed full description, drawings, and mode of using these new appliances in actual fires, and should be studied by every colliery manager, seeing that even our best managed collieries have not been free from fires, more or less disastrous to life and property.—*Colliery Manager.*

"Herr Lamprecht has collated such a vast mass of useful information that it can never fail to be of utility to the mine manager, even though, on occasion, it should only be in the direction of inducing measures to prevent a recurrence of similar calamities."—*Newcastle Chronicle.*

"It is the only existing work which deals exclusively with the branch of the miner's art indicated by its title. . . . The author presents his subject in a clear, practical manner, and seems to leave nothing unexplained that is necessary to make the book a thoroughly useful and easily assimilated authority, on which pit managers and others may rely for guidance in case of catastrophe."—*Wigan Examiner.*

GAS AND COAL DUST FIRING. A Critical Review of the Various Appliances Patented in Germany for this purpose since 1885. By ALBERT PÜTSCH. 130 pp., demy 8vo. 1901. Translated from the German. With 103 Illustrations. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

[*See next Page.*

Contents.

Generators—Generators Employing Steam—Stirring and Feed Regulating Appliances—Direct Generators—Burners—Regenerators and Recuperators—Glass Smelting Furnaces—Metallurgical Furnaces—Pottery Furnace—Coal Dust Firing.

Press Opinions.

"It has been a pleasure to read this little book. . . . The volume forms a useful aid to the would-be inventor of generators, as it warns him what to avoid and gives some hints as to what to aim at."—*Gas World.*

"The German author has long followed the development of various systems of gas firing, and in the present treatise he discusses the merits of appliances patented since 1885. His text and the numerous illustrations indispensable to it will be found useful by all who are engaged in practical work in the same field."—*North British Daily Mail.*

Books on Plumbing, Decorating, Metal Work, etc., etc.

EXTERNAL PLUMBING WORK. A Treatise on Lead Work for Roofs. By John W. Hart, R.P.C. 180 Illustrations. 270 pp. 1896. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Cast Sheet Lead.—II., Milled Sheet Lead.—III., Roof Cesspools.—IV., Socket Pipes.—V., Drips.—VI., Gutters.—VII., Gutters (continued).—VIII., Breaks.—IX., Circular Breaks.—X., Flats.—XI., Flats (continued).—XII., Rolls on Flats.—XIII., Roll Ends.—XIV., Roll Intersections.—XV., Seam Rolls.—XVI., Seam Rolls (continued).—XVII., Tack Fixings.—XVIII., Step Flashings.—XIX., Step Flashings (continued).—XX., Secret Gutters.—XXI., Soakers.—XXII., Hip and Valley Soakers.—XXIII., Dormer Windows.—XXIV., Dormer Windows (continued).—XXV., Dormer Tops.—XXVI., Internal Dormers.—XXVII., Skylights.—XXVIII., Hips and Ridging.—XXIX., Hips and Ridging (continued).—XXX., Fixings for Hips and Ridging.—XXXI., Ornamental Ridging.—XXXII., Ornamental Curb Rolls.—XXXIII., Curb Rolls.—XXXIV., Cornices.—XXXV., Towers and Finials.—XXXVI., Towers and Finials (continued).—XXXVII., Towers and Finials (continued).—XXXVIII., Domes.—XXXIX., Domes (continued).—XL., Ornamental Lead Work.—XLI., Rain Water Heads.—XLII., Rain Water Heads (continued).—XLIII., Rain Water Heads (continued).

Press Opinions.

"This is an eminently practical and well-illustrated volume on the management of external lead work."—*Birmingham Daily Post.*

"It is thoroughly practical, containing many valuable hints, and cannot fail to be of great benefit to those who have not had large experience."—*Sanitary Journal.*

"Works on sanitary plumbing are by no means rare, but treatises dealing with external plumbing work are sufficiently scarce to ensure for Mr. Hart's new publication a hearty reception."—*The Ironmonger.*

"With Mr. Hart's treatise in his hands the young plumber need not be afraid of tackling outside work. He would do well to study its pages at leisure, so that he may be ready for it when called upon."—*Ironmongery.*

"The publication of this book will do much to stimulate attention and study to external plumbing work, for it is a book which we can heartily recommend to every plumber, both old and young, who desires to make himself proficient in the several branches of his trade. We can heartily recommend the book to plumbers and architects."—*Sanitary Record.*

HINTS TO PLUMBERS ON JOINT WIPING, PIPE BENDING AND LEAD BURNING. Third Edition, Revised and Corrected. By John W. Hart, R.P.C. 184 Illustrations. 300 pp. 1901. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

[*See next Page.*

Contents.

Introduction.—Chapters I., Pipe Bending.—II., Pipe Bending (continued).—III., Pipe Bending (continued).—IV., Square Pipe Bendings.—V., Half-circular Elbows.—VI., Curved Bends on Square Pipe.—VII., Bossed Bends.—VIII., Curved Plinth Bends.—IX., Rain-water Shoes on Square Pipe.—X., Curved and Angle Bends.—XI., Square Pipe Fixings.—XII., Joint-wiping.—XIII., Substitutes for Wiped Joints.—XIV., Preparing Wiped Joints.—XV., Joint Fixings.—XVI., Plumbing Irons.—XVII., Joint Fixings.—XVIII., Use of "Touch" in Soldering.—XIX., Underhand Joints.—XX., Blown and Copper Bit Joints.—XXI., Branch Joints.—XXII., Branch Joints (continued).—XXIII., Block Joints.—XXIV., Block Joints (continued).—XXV., Block Fixings.—XXVI., Astragal Joints—Pipe Fixings.—XXVII., Large Branch Joints.—XXVIII., Large Underhand Joints.—XXIX., Solders.—XXX., Autogenous Soldering or Lead Burning.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"Rich in useful diagrams as well as in hints."—*Liverpool Mercury.*

"The papers are eminently practical, and go much farther into the mysteries they describe than the title 'Hints' properly suggests."—*Scotsman.*

"The articles are apparently written by a thoroughly practical man. As a practical guide the book will doubtless be of much service."—*Glasgow Herald.*

"A well got-up and well-done practical book. It is freely illustrated and is a reliable help in respect of some of the most awkward work the young plumber has to perform."—*The Ironmonger.*

"So far as the practical hints in this work are concerned, it will be useful to apprentices and students in technical schools, as it deals mainly with the most important or difficult branches of the plumber's craft, *viz.*, joint wiping, pipe bending and lead burning. . . . 'Hints' are the most useful things to an apprentice, and there are many in this work which are not to be found in some of the text-books."—*English Mechanic.*

"It is a book for the intelligent operative first of all, not a mere manual of instruction for the beginner, nor yet a scientific treatise on the whole art of sanitary plumbing, The special subject with which it deals is joint-making, the most important branch of the operative's work, and into this topic the author goes with a thoroughness that is full of suggestion to even the most experienced workman. There is no one who has to do with plumbing but could read the book with profit."—*Ironmongery.*

"22 Pryme Street, Hull, 24*th November*, 1894.

"Gentlemen,—Your books to hand for which accept my best thanks, also for circulars. I myself got one of J. W. Hart's books on Plumbing from your traveller, and having looked through the same I can safely recommend it as being the best book I have seen. Mr. J. W. Hart treats exhaustively upon soldering and pipe bending, which are two of the most essential branches in the plumbing trade."

THE PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE OF DIPPING, BURNISHING, LACQUERING AND BRONZING BRASS WARE. By W. Norman Brown. 35 pp. 1900.

Price 2s.; Abroad, 2s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Cleansing and Dipping; Boiling up and Cleansing; Dipping.—II., Scratch-brushing and Burnishing; Polishing; Burnishing.—III., Lacquering; Tools; Lacquers.—IV., Bronzing; Black Bronzing; Florentine Red Bronzing; Green Bronzing.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"Mr. Brown is clearly a master of his craft, and has also the immense advantage of being able to convey his instructions in a manner at once clear and concise."—*Leicester Post.*

"A thoroughly practical little treatise on the subject in all its branches, and one which should be in the hands of every tradesman or amateur who has lacquering to do."—*Irish Builder.*

"A successful endeavour has been made to show in the course of four chapters of comparatively few words the most scientific and economical methods of treating brass ware. . . . The book is prefaced with a contents list, and concludes with a complete index. It is substantially bound, and should prove invaluable to gasfitters, decorators and ironmongers in country towns, who at spring time and during the redecorating of a house undertake the work of renovating the brass fittings."—*Hardwareman.*

HOUSE DECORATING AND PAINTING. By W. NORMAN BROWN. Eighty-eight Illustrations. 150 pp. 1900. Price 3s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 4s.; Other Countries, 4s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Tools and Appliances.—II., Colours and Their Harmony.—III., Pigments and Media.—IV., Pigments and Media.—V., Pigments and Media.—VI., Pigments and Media.—VII., Preparation of Work, etc.—VIII., Application of Ordinary Colour.—IX., Graining.—X., Graining.—XI., Graining.—XII., Gilding.—XIII., Writing and Lettering.—XIV., Sign Painting.—XV., Internal Decoration.—Index.

Press Opinion.

"The author is evidently very thoroughly at home in regard to the technical subjects he has set himself to elucidate, from the mechanical rather than the artistic point of view, although the matter of correctness of taste is by no means ignored. Mr. Brown's style is directness itself, and there is no tyro in the painting trade, however mentally ungifted, who could fail to carry away a clearer grasp of the details of the subject after going over the performance."—*Building Industries.*

A HISTORY OF DECORATIVE ART. By W. NORMAN BROWN. Thirty-nine Illustrations. 96 pp. 1900. Price 2s. 6d.; Abroad, 3s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Primitive and Prehistoric Art.—II., Egyptian Art.—III., Assyrian Art.—IV., The Art of Asia Minor.—V., Etruscan Art.—VI., Greek Art.—VII., Roman Art.—VIII., Byzantine Art.—IX., Lombard or Romanesque Art.—X., Gothic Art.—XI., Renaissance Art.—XII., The Victorian Period.—Index.

Press Opinion.

"In the course of a hundred pages with some forty illustrations Mr. Brown gives a very interesting and comprehensive survey of the progress and development of decorative art. It cannot, of course, be pretended that in the limited space named the subject is treated exhaustively and in full detail, but it is sufficiently complete to satisfy any ordinary reader; indeed, for general purposes, it is, perhaps, more acceptable than a more elaborate treatise."—*Midland Counties Herald.*

THE PRINCIPLES OF HOT WATER SUPPLY. By JOHN W. HART, R.P.C. With 129 Illustrations. 1900. 177 pp., demy 8vo. Price 7s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 8s.; Other Countries, 8s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Chapters I., Water Circulation.—II., The Tank System.—III., Pipes and Joints.—IV., The Cylinder System.—V., Boilers for the Cylinder System.—VI., The Cylinder System.—VII., The Combined Tank and Cylinder System.—VIII., Combined Independent and Kitchen Boiler.—IX., Combined Cylinder and Tank System with Duplicate Boilers.—X., Indirect Heating and Boiler Explosions.—XI., Pipe Boilers.—XII., Safety Valves.—XIII., Safety Valves.—XIV., The American System.—XV., Heating Water by Steam.—XVI., Steam Kettles and Jets.—XVII., Heating Power of Steam.—XVIII., Covering for Hot Water Pipes.—Index.

Press Opinion.

"If all plumbers were to read this book, and if they followed the instructions given, there would, we are sure, be fewer accidents from household boiler explosions, and many lives might be saved. No doubt the majority of householders know or care little about the subject, but any one who wishes to adopt the most up-to-date system of supplying hot water throughout his house will be able to do so if he reads Mr. Hart's book and follows the instruction given. It is a work that all who have charge of domestic water supply should study. It is a practical and profitable book."—*Wigan Observer.*

Brewing and Botanical.

HOPS IN THEIR BOTANICAL, AGRICULTURAL AND TECHNICAL ASPECT, AND AS AN ARTICLE OF COMMERCE. By Emmanuel Gross, Professor at the Higher Agricultural College, Tetschen-Liebwerd. Translated from the German. Seventy-eight Illustrations. 1900. 340 pp. Price 12s. 6d.; India and Colonies, 13s. 6d.; Other Countries, 15s.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

PART I., HISTORY OF THE HOP.

PART II., THE HOP PLANT. Introductory.—The Roots.—The Stem and Leaves.—Inflorescence and Flower: Inflorescence and Flower of the Male Hop; Inflorescence and Flower of the Female Hop.—The Fruit and its Glandular Structure: The Fruit and Seed.—Propagation and Selection of the Hop.—Varieties of the Hop: (*a*) Red Hops; (*b*) Green Hops; (*c*) Pale Green Hops.—Classification according to the Period of Ripening: 1. Early August Hops; 2. Medium Early Hops; 3. Late Hops.—Injuries to Growth: Malformations; Diseases Produced by Conditions of Soil and Climate: 1. Leaves Turning Yellow, 2. Summer or Sunbrand, 3. Cones Dropping Off, 4. Honey Dew, 5. Damage from Wind, Hail and Rain; Vegetable Enemies of the Hop; Animal Enemies of the Hop.—Beneficial Insects on Hops.

PART III., CULTIVATION. The Requirements of the Hop in Respect of Climate, Soil and Situation: Climate; Soil; Situation.—Selection of Variety and Cuttings.—Planting a Hop Garden: Drainage; Preparing the Ground; Marking-out for Planting; Planting; Cultivation and Cropping of the Hop Garden in the First Year.—Work to be Performed Annually in the Hop Garden: Working the Ground; Cutting; The Non-cutting System; The Proper Performance of the Operation of Cutting: I. Method of Cutting: Close Cutting, Ordinary Cutting, The Long Cut, The Topping Cut; II. Proper Season for Cutting: Autumn Cutting, Spring Cutting; Manuring; Training the Hop Plant: Poled Gardens, Frame Training; Principal Types of Frames; Pruning, Cropping, Topping, and Leaf Stripping the Hop Plant; Picking, Drying and Bagging.—Principal and Subsidiary Utilisation of Hops and Hop Gardens.—Life of a Hop Garden; Subsequent Cropping.—Cost of Production, Yield and Selling Prices.

PART IV.—Preservation and Storage.—Physical and Chemical Structure of the Hop Cone.—Judging the Value of Hops.

PART V.—Statistics of Production.—The Hop Trade.—Index.

Press Opinions.

"The subject is dealt with fully in every little detail; consequently, even the veriest tyro can take away some useful information from its pages."—*Irish Farming World.*

"Farmers are but little given to reading; but nowadays brewers have to study their trade and keep abreast of its every aspect, and as far as regards our trade, to them this book especially appeals, and will be especially useful."—*Licensed Victuallers' Gazette.*

"Like an oasis in the desert comes a volume upon the above subject, by the Professor at the Higher Agricultural College, Tetschen-Liebwerd, Germany, who has been fortunate enough to obtain an excellent translator from the German in the person of Mr. Charles Salter. The paucity of works upon the history and cultivation of hops is surprising considering the scope it gives for an interesting and useful work."—*Hereford Times.*

"We can safely say that this book deals more comprehensively and thoroughly with the subject of hops than any work previously published in this country. . . . No one interested in the hop industry can fail to extract a large amount of information from Professor Gross's pages, which, although primarily intended for Continental readers, yet bear very closely on what may be termed the cosmopolitan aspects of the science of hop production."—*South Eastern Gazette.*

"This is, in our opinion, the most scholarly and exhaustive treatise on the subject of hops, their culture and preservation, etc., that has been published, and to the hop grower especially will its information and recommendations prove valuable. Brewers, too, will find the chapter devoted to 'Judging the Value of Hops' full of useful hints, while the whole scope and tenor of the book bear testimony to the studious and careful manner in which its contents have been elaborated."—*Brewers' Journal.*

[*See next Page.*

"Considering the extent to which this country draws its hop supplies from abroad, this translation of Professor Gross's volume will prove an interesting and instructive addition to the library of any brewer or brewers' chemist, the more so as the work of translation has been admirably carried out in simple and vigorous English. . . . The volume is one of a valuable series of special technical works for trades and professions the publishers are issuing, and is the first so far dealing with the brewing industry."—*Burton Mail.*

"A work upon the above subject must be welcomed if for no other reason than the dearth of books dealing with so interesting a theme, but fortunately apart from this the book will afford excellent reading to all interested in hops and their culture. Professor Gross takes one over the whole field, by commencing with the earliest history of the plant—so far back as the days of ancient Greece—and from both practical, theoretical and scientific standpoints, deals with the cultivation, classification and formation of the hop. . . . In speaking of the production of new varieties sound information is given, and should be of value to those who are always in search of improvements."—*Hereford Journal.*

"This work is, without doubt, the most thorough and extensive compilation on hops ever yet offered to the public. and for this reason should be warmly welcomed and appreciated by men interested in the subject. Although primarily written for those engaged in the industry abroad, and mainly Continental in theory and practice, it nevertheless appeals to those connected with the hop growing and brewing business in England, not only by way of a comparison, but also as an instruction. The volume is at once practical and scientific, is well got up, and teems with illustrations and statistics. In a word, it is a book that should find its way into the hands of all who are occupied in hop production and distribution at home; and it also contains valuable information and suggestions for the brewers themselves."—*Brewers' Guardian.*

"The value of a comprehensible and reliable text-book must be clearly apparent to every scientific hop grower, and in this county of Kent—the chief hop-producing district of England, for over 400,000 cwts. were grown here last season alone—its advice regarding the cultivation, preservation and storage of the cones will be found extremely useful. Year by year scientific education is becoming more and more essential to the training—in common with the remainder of agriculturalists—of the hop planter. Continental and American competition, the higher price and scarcity of hand labour and many other causes make it necessary that the utmost should be extracted from a limited area of land. To accomplish this end all sorts of devices must be resorted to in the matter of cultivation. The lesson imparted in this treatise deals exhaustively with these 'devices'. And therein lies the basis of its value: whereas one man's life is 'made up of fails and successes,' here is to be found the collective successes, tabulated results and logical inferences drawn from sources extending over the whole hop-growing area of the world."—*Kentish Gazette.*

Public Libraries.

BRITISH LIBRARY YEAR BOOK, 1900-1901. A Record of Library Progress and Work. 54 Illustrations. Crown 8vo, 345 pp. 1900. Edited by THOMAS GREENWOOD. Price 3s.; abroad, 3s. 6d.; strictly net, post free.

Contents.

Notes for Library Committees. Contributed Articles: The Library Rate. Some Points in Library Planning—Mr. Burgoyne. Library Classification—Mr. Jast. Developments in Library Cataloguing—Mr. Quinn. Children and Public Libraries—Mr. Ballinger. Fire Prevention and Insurance—Mr. Davis. The Educational Work of the Library Association—Mr. Roberts. The Library Assistants' Association—Mr. Chambers. British Municipal Libraries established under the various Public Libraries or Special Acts, and those supported out of Municipal Funds, giving particulars of Establishment, Organisation, Staff, Methods and Librarians. Table showing the Rate, Income, Work and Hours of the Rate-supported Libraries. Statistical Abstracts. British non-Municipal Libraries, Endowed, Collegiate, Proprietary and others, showing date of Establishment, number of Volumes, Particulars of Administration, and Librarians. Library Associations and Kindred Societies.

Press Opinions.

"The book promises to be a really useful compendium of information which ought to be of importance to everybody."—*Athenæum.*

"This valuable reference book is in every respect what a year book should be. . . . The production of the volume is excellent."—*Newsagent, Bookseller and Stationer.*

"This is a handbook which tells the reader everything about public libraries, great and small, in the United Kingdom. . . . The book is decidedly one of the best arranged volumes ever published, and there is no doubt that the editor has been at great pains to obtain the latest and most accurate information from all places. County, district and parish councils, ministers of religion, and schoolmasters everywhere should make themselves acquainted with its contents. Its perusal cannot fail to serve the ends of the library movement. The illustrations, of which there is a large number, are very good."—*Western* (*Cardiff*) *Mail.*

WORKS IN PREPARATION.

AGRICULTURAL CHEMISTRY. By Herbert Ingle, of the Yorkshire College, Leeds.

PRACTICAL PAINT GRINDING. By J. Cruickshank Smith, B.Sc. [*In the Press.*

TREATISE ON CLOTH FINISHING. By Robert Beaumont, of Yorkshire College, Leeds.

INDIA-RUBBER; GUTTA PERCHA.

THE EXAMINATION OF MATERIALS USED IN DYEING. By P. Heermann.

EVAPORATION, CONDENSATION AND COOLING. Calculations of Dimensions of Apparatus. By E. Hausbrand. Tables. For Chemists, Chemical and Mechanical Engineers.

THE CHEMISTRY OF SPINNING. Spinning, Washing, Bleaching, Dyeing, Printing and Finishing. By Dr. G. von Georgievics.

A TREATISE ON THE CERAMIC INDUSTRY. By Emille Bourry. Translated and Edited by Wilton P. Rix, Ceramic Specialist. [*In the Press.*

WEAVING MACHINERY. Three Vols. By Harry Nisbet.

COTTON COMBING MACHINES AND ALLIED PROCESSES. By Thos. Thornley.

COTTON SPINNING. Series of Questions and Answers. With Notes. By THOS. THORNLEY.

THE CHEMISTRY OF PIGMENTS. By E. J. PARRY B.Sc., etc.

COLOUR MATCHING ON TEXTILES. A Manual intended for the use of Students of Colour Chemistry, Dyeing and Textile Printing. By DAVID PATERSON, F.C.S. *[In the Press.*

DICTIONARY OF CHEMICALS AND RAW PRODUCTS USED IN THE MANUFACTURE OF PAINTS, COLOURS, VARNISHES, AND ALLIED PREPARATIONS. G. H. HURST. *[Nearly ready.*

TECHNOLOGY OF PETROLEUM. By NEUBURGER and NOALHAT. *[In the Press.*

TEXTILE RAW MATERIALS AND THEIR PREPARATION FOR SPINNING.

THE RONTJEN RAYS IN MEDICAL PRACTICE. *[In the Press.*

RESINS AND BALSAMS. *[In the Press.*

WRINKLES FOR PAINTERS, DECORATORS, PAPERHANGERS AND OTHERS. By W. N. BROWN.

The Publishers will advise when any of the above books are ready to firms sending their addresses.